2016

LS 600h L

OWNER'S MANUAL

LS600hL_U(OM50F12U)

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Your Lexus dealer

Your Lexus dealer will provide quality maintenance and any other assistance you may require.
If there is not a Lexus dealer near you, please call the following number:

■ U.S. OWNERS

- In the U.S. mainland or Canada:
  Lexus Roadside Assistance
  1-800-25-LEXUS or 1-800-255-3987 (Toll-Free)
- In Hawaii:
  Servco Automotive Roadside Assistance/Customer Services
  1-800-25-LEXUS or 1-800-255-3987 (Toll-Free)

■ CANADIAN OWNERS

- In Canada or the U.S. mainland:
  Lexus Roadside Assistance/Customer Service
  1-800-26-LEXUS or 1-800-265-3987 (Toll-Free)

Please access our **websites** for further information.

- The U.S. mainland: www.lexus.com
- Hawaii: www.servcolexus.com
- Canada : www.lexus.ca

©2015 TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION
All rights reserved. This material may not be reproduced or copied, in whole or in part, without the written permission of Toyota Motor Corporation.

LS600hL_U(OM50F12U)

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

	Pictorial index	Search by illustration
1	**For safety and security**	Make sure to read through them
2	**Instrument cluster**	How to read the gauges and meters, the variety of warning lights and indicators, etc.
3	**Operation of each component**	Opening and closing the doors and windows, adjustment before driving, etc.
4	**Driving**	Operations and advice which are necessary for driving
5	**Interior features**	Usage of the interior features, etc.
6	**Maintenance and care**	Caring for your vehicle and maintenance procedures
7	**When trouble arises**	What to do in case of malfunction or emergency
8	**Vehicle specifications**	Vehicle specifications, customizable features, etc.
9	**For owners**	Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners, and seat belt, SRS airbag and headlight aim instructions for Canadian owners
	Index	Search by symptom
		Search alphabetically

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

For your information 8
Reading this manual 14
How to search 15
Pictorial index 16

1 For safety and security

1-1. For safe use
Before driving 32
For safety drive 34
Seat belts 36
SRS airbags 42
Front passenger occupant classification system 55
Safety information for children 61
Child restraint systems 62
Installing child restraints 66
Exhaust gas precautions 75

1-2. Hybrid system
Hybrid system features 76
Hybrid system precautions 81

1-3. Theft deterrent system
Immobilizer system 88
Alarm 90

2 Instrument cluster

2. Instrument cluster
Warning lights and indicators 94
Gauges and meters 99
Multi-information display 105
Energy monitor/ consumption screen 112

3 Operation of each component

3-1. Key information
Keys 122

3-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk
Smart access system with push-button start 127
Wireless remote control 143
Doors 147
Trunk 151

3-3. Adjusting the seats
Front seats 158
Power rear seat 164
Driving position memory 174
Rear seat position memory 179
Head restraints 181

3-4. Adjusting the steering wheel and mirrors
Steering wheel 184
Inside rear view mirror 185
Outside rear view mirrors 187

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

3-5. Opening, closing the windows and moon roof
Power windows....191
Moon roof....195

4 Driving

4-1. Before driving
Driving the vehicle....200
Cargo and luggage....211
Vehicle load limits....215
Trailer towing....216
Dinghy towing....217

4-2. Driving procedures
Power (ignition) switch....218
EV drive mode....223
Hybrid transmission....225
Turn signal lever....229
Parking brake....230
Brake Hold....233
Horn....235

4-3. Operating the lights and wipers
Headlight switch....236
Automatic High Beam....240
Fog light switch....245
Windshield wipers and washer....246
Headlight cleaner switch....250

4-4. Refueling
Opening the fuel tank cap....251

4-5. Using the driving support systems
Cruise control....255
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range....259
LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist)....275
Driving mode select switch....285
Electronically modulated air suspension....287
Driving assist systems....289
PCS (Pre-Collision System)....296
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor)....309
• The Blind Spot Monitor function....313
• The Rear Cross Traffic Alert function....316
Lexus night view....319

4-6. Driving tips
Hybrid vehicle driving tips....324
Winter driving tips....326

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

5 Interior features

5-1. Remote Touch screen

Remote Touch 332
12.3-inch display 336

5-2. Lexus Climate Concierge

Lexus Climate Concierge..... 339

5-3. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

Front automatic air conditioning system..... 340
Rear air conditioning system..... 355
Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers..... 362
Windshield wiper de-icer..... 363

5-4. Using the interior lights

Interior lights list..... 364
• Interior lights..... 365
• Personal lights..... 366

5-5. Using the storage features

List of storage features..... 368
• Glove box..... 370
• Coin holder..... 371
• Door pockets..... 371
• Cup holders..... 372
• Console box..... 373
• Auxiliary boxes..... 375
Trunk features..... 377

5-6. Other interior features

Sun visors and vanity mirrors..... 380
Clock..... 382
Ashtrays..... 383
Cigarette lighters..... 384
Power outlets..... 386
Heated steering wheel..... 389
Climate control seats..... 391
Armrest..... 396
Retractable table..... 397
Rear sunshade..... 399
Rear door sunshades..... 402
Coat hooks..... 405
Assist grips..... 406
Garage door opener..... 407
LEXUS Enform Safety Connect..... 414

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

6 Maintenance and care

6-1. Maintenance and care

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior 422

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior 426

6-2. Maintenance

Maintenance requirements 429

General maintenance 432

Emission inspection and maintenance (I/M) programs 436

6-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Do-it-yourself service precautions 437

Hood 440

Positioning a floor jack 441

Engine compartment 443

12-volt battery 455

Tires 459

Tire inflation pressure 470

Wheels 473

Air conditioning filter 475

Electronic key battery 478

Checking and replacing fuses 480

Headlight aim 485

Light bulbs 487

7 When trouble arises

7-1. Essential information

Emergency flashers 490

If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency 491

7-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If your vehicle needs to be towed 492

If you think something is wrong 498

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds 499

If a warning message is displayed 509

If you have a flat tire (vehicles with a spare tire) 513

If you have a flat tire (vehicles with run-flat tires) 522

If the hybrid system will not start 524

If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P 526

If the parking brake cannot be released 527

If the electronic key does not operate properly 531

If the 12-volt battery is discharged 534

If your vehicle overheats 538

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

If the vehicle becomes stuck 543

8 Vehicle specifications

8-1. Specifications

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.) 546

Fuel information 557

Tire information 560

8-2. Customization

Customizable features 571

9 For owners

Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners 582

Seat belt instructions for Canadian owners (in French) 583

SRS airbag instructions for Canadian owners (in French) 585

Headlight aim instructions for Canadian owners (in French) 594

Index

What to do if... (Troubleshooting) 598

Alphabetical index 604

For information regarding the equipment listed below, refer to "NAVIGATION AND MULTIMEDIA SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".

- Navigation system
- Audio/visual system
- Rear seat entertainment system
- Intuitive parking assist
- Lexus parking assist monitor

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

For your information

Main Owner's Manual

Please note that this manual applies to all models and explains all equipment, including options. Therefore, you may find some explanations for equipment not installed on your vehicle.

All specifications provided in this manual are current at the time of printing. However, because of the Lexus policy of continual product improvement, we reserve the right to make changes at any time without notice.

Depending on specifications, the vehicle shown in the illustrations may differ from your vehicle in terms of color and equipment.

Noise from under vehicle after turning off the hybrid system

Approximately five hours after the hybrid system is turned off, you may hear sound coming from under the vehicle for several minutes. This is the sound of a fuel evaporation leakage check and, it does not indicate a malfunction.

Accessories, spare parts and modification of your Lexus

A wide variety of non-genuine spare parts and accessories for Lexus vehicles are currently available in the market. You should know that Toyota does not warrant these products and is not responsible for their performance, repair, or replacement, or for any damage they may cause to, or adverse effect they may have on, your Lexus vehicle.

This vehicle should not be modified with non-genuine Lexus products. Modification with non-genuine Lexus products could affect its performance, safety or durability, and may even violate governmental regulations. In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from the modification may not be covered under warranty.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Installation of a mobile two-way radio system

The installation of a mobile two-way radio system in your vehicle could affect electronic systems such as:

- Hybrid system
- Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system
- Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range
- Cruise control system
- Anti-lock brake system
- Vehicle dynamics integrated management
- SRS airbag system
- Seat belt pretensioner system

Be sure to check with your Lexus dealer for precautionary measures or special instructions regarding installation of a mobile two-way radio system.

High voltage parts and cables on the hybrid vehicles emit approximately the same amount of electromagnetic waves as the conventional gasoline powered vehicles or home electronic appliances despite of their electromagnetic shielding.

Unwanted noise may occur in the reception of the mobile two-way radio.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Vehicle data recordings

Your Lexus is equipped with several sophisticated computers that will record certain data, such as:

- Engine speed
- Electric motor speed (traction motor speed)
- Accelerator status
- Brake status
- Vehicle speed
- Shift position
- Hybrid battery (traction battery) status

The recorded data varies according to the vehicle grade level and options with which it is equipped. Furthermore, these computers do not record conversations, sounds or pictures.

● Data usage

Lexus may use the data recorded in these computers to diagnose malfunctions, conduct research and development, and improve quality.

Lexus will not disclose the recorded data to a third party except:

- With the consent of the vehicle owner or with the consent of the lessee if the vehicle is leased
- In response to an official request by the police, a court of law or a government agency
- For use by Lexus in a law suit
- For research purposes where the data is not tied to a specific vehicle or vehicle owner

● Usage of data collected through Safety Connect / Lexus Enform (U.S. mainland only)

If your Lexus has Safety Connect or Lexus Enform and if you have subscribed to those services, please refer to the Safety Connect / Lexus Enform Telematics Subscription Service Agreement for information on data collected and its usage.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Event data recorder

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

NOTE: EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.
To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

● Disclosure of the EDR data

Lexus will not disclose the data recorded in an EDR to a third party except when:

- An agreement from the vehicle's owner (or the lessee for a leased vehicle) is obtained
- In response to an official request by the police, a court of law or a government agency
- For use by Lexus in a law suit

However, if necessary, Lexus may:

- Use the data for research on vehicle safety performance
- Disclose the data to a third party for research purposes without disclosing information about the specific vehicle or vehicle owner

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Scrapping of your Lexus

The SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner devices in your Lexus contain explosive chemicals. If the vehicle is scrapped with the airbags and seat belt pretensioners left as they are, this may cause an accident such as fire. Be sure to have the systems of the SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner removed and disposed of by a qualified service shop or by your Lexus dealer before you scrap your vehicle.

Perchlorate Material

Special handling may apply, See www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate.

Your vehicle has components that may contain perchlorate. These components may include airbag, seat belt pretensioners, and wireless remote control batteries.

⚠ CAUTION

■ General precautions while driving

Driving under the influence: Never drive your vehicle when under the influence of alcohol or drugs that have impaired your ability to operate your vehicle. Alcohol and certain drugs delay reaction time, impair judgment and reduce coordination, which could lead to an accident that could result in death or serious injury.

Defensive driving: Always drive defensively. Anticipate mistakes that other drivers or pedestrians might make and be ready to avoid accidents.

Driver distraction: Always give your full attention to driving. Anything that distracts the driver, such as adjusting controls, talking on a cellular phone or reading can result in a collision with resulting death or serious injury to you, your occupants or others.

■ General precaution regarding children's safety

Never leave children unattended in the vehicle, and never allow children to have or use the key.

Children may be able to start the vehicle or shift the vehicle into neutral. There is also a danger that children may injure themselves by playing with the windows, the moon roof, or other features of the vehicle. In addition, heat build-up or extremely cold temperatures inside the vehicle can be fatal to children.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Reading this manual

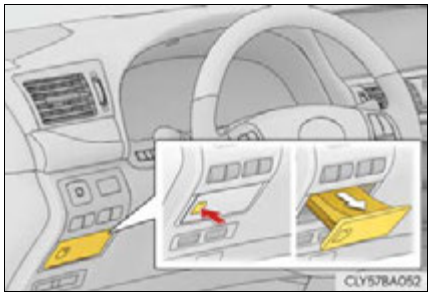
CAUTION:
Explains something that, if not obeyed, could cause death or serious injury to people.

NOTICE:
Explains something that, if not obeyed, could cause damage to or a malfunction in the vehicle or its equipment.

1 2 3 ··· Indicates operating or working procedures. Follow the steps in numerical order.

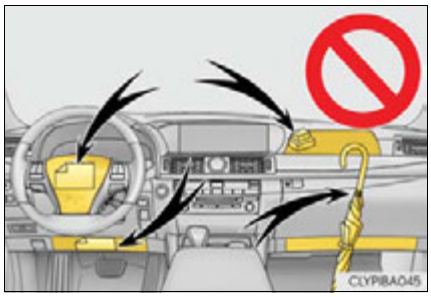
Indicates the action (pushing, turning, etc.) used to operate switches and other devices.

Indicates the outcome of an operation (e.g. a lid opens).



Indicates the component or position being explained.

Means "Do not", "Do not do this", or "Do not let this happen".

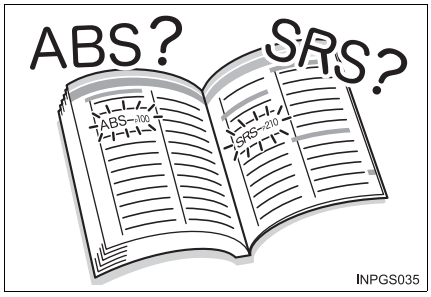


DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

How to search

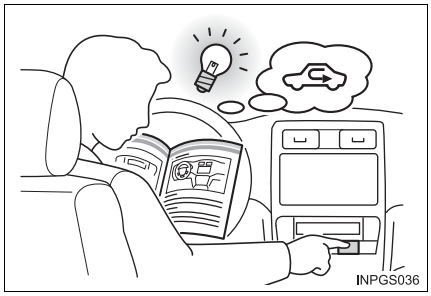
■ **Searching by name**

• Alphabetical index ..... P. 604



■ **Searching by installation position**

• Pictorial index..... P. 16

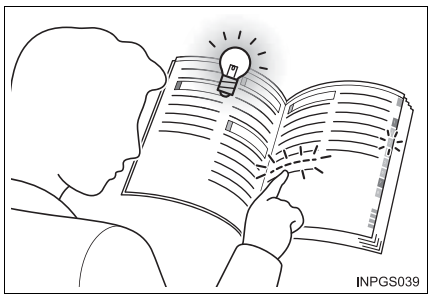


■ **Searching by symptom or sound**

• What to do if... (Troubleshooting)..... P. 598

■ **Searching by title**

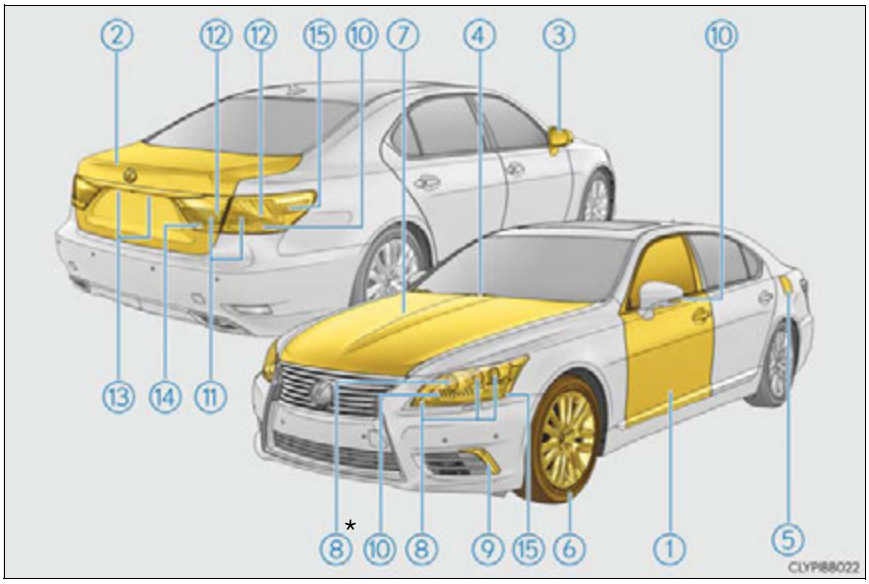
• Table of contents ..... P. 2



DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Pictorial index

Exterior



① **Doors** ..... **P. 147**
Locking/unlocking ..... P. 129, 143
Opening/closing the door glasses ..... P. 191
Locking/unlocking by using the mechanical key ..... P. 531
Warning lights/warning messages ..... P. 502, 509

② **Trunk** ..... **P. 151**
Opening from inside the cabin ..... P. 151
Opening from outside ..... P. 129, 143
Opening by using the mechanical key ..... P. 532
Warning lights/warning messages ..... P. 502, 509

③ **Outside rear view mirrors** ..... **P. 187**
Adjusting the mirror angle ..... P. 187
Folding the mirrors ..... P. 188
Driving position memory ..... P. 174
Defogging the mirrors ..... P. 362

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

④ **Windshield wipers** ..... **P. 246**
Precautions against winter season ..... P. 326
To prevent freezing (windshield wiper de-icer)* ..... P. 363
Precautions against car wash ..... P. 424

⑤ **Fuel filler door** ..... **P. 251**
Refueling method ..... P. 251
Fuel type/fuel tank capacity ..... P. 548

⑥ **Tires** ..... **P. 459**
Tire size/inflation pressure ..... P. 554
Winter tires/tire chain ..... P. 326
Checking/rotation/tire pressure warning system ..... P. 459
Coping with flat tires ..... P. 513, 522

⑦ **Hood** ..... **P. 440**
Opening ..... P. 440
Engine compartment cover ..... P. 444
Engine oil ..... P. 549
Coping with overheat ..... P. 538
Warning messages ..... P. 509

Light bulbs of the exterior lights for driving
(Replacing method: P. 487)

⑧ **Headlights/parking lights/daytime running lights** ..... **P. 236**

⑨ **Fog lights** ..... **P. 245**

⑩ **Turn signal lights** ..... **P. 229**

⑪ **Tail lights** ..... **P. 236**

⑫ **Stop lights**
Hill-start assist control ..... P. 289

⑬ **License plate lights** ..... **P. 236**

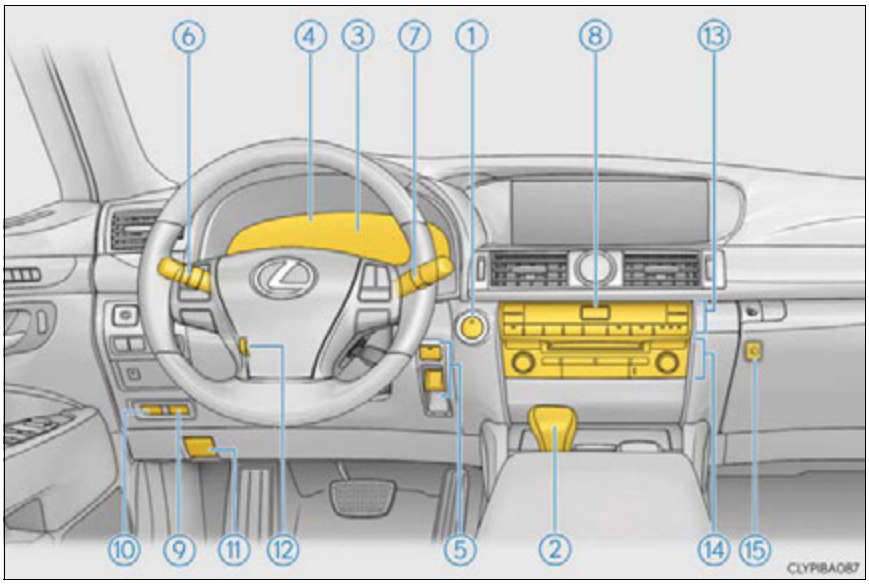
⑭ **Back-up lights**
Shifting the shift lever to R ..... P. 225

⑮ **Side marker lights** ..... **P. 236**

*: If equipped

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Instrument panel



① **Power switch** ..... **P. 218**
Starting the hybrid system/changing the modes. ..... P. 218
Emergency stop of the hybrid system ..... P. 491
When the hybrid system will not start ..... P. 524
Warning messages ..... P. 509

② **Shift lever** ..... **P. 225**
Changing the shift position ..... P. 225
Precautions against towing ..... P. 492
When the shift lever does not move. ..... P. 526

③ **Meters** ..... **P. 99**
Reading the meters/adjusting the instrument panel light ..... P. 99
Warning lights/indicator lights ..... P. 94
When the warning lights come on ..... P. 499

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

④ **Multi-information display** ..... **P. 105**
Display ..... P. 105
Energy monitor ..... P. 112
When the warning messages are displayed ..... P. 509

⑤ **Parking brake switches** ..... **P. 230**
Applying/releasing ..... P. 230
Precautions against winter season ..... P. 327
Warning buzzer/message ..... P. 509

⑥ **Turn signal lever** ..... **P. 229**
Headlight switch ..... **P. 236**
Headlights/parking lights/tail lights/daytime running lights ..... P. 236
Fog lights ..... P. 245

⑦ **Windshield wiper and washer switch** ..... **P. 246**
Usage ..... P. 246
Adding washer fluid ..... P. 454
Warning messages ..... P. 509

⑧ **Emergency flasher switch** ..... **P. 490**

⑨ **Trunk opener** ..... **P. 151**

⑩ **Fuel filler door opener** ..... **P. 253**

⑪ **Hood lock release lever** ..... **P. 440**

⑫ **Tilt and telescopic steering control switch** ..... **P. 184**
Adjustment ..... P. 184
Driving position memory ..... P. 174

⑬ **Air conditioning system** ..... **P. 340**
Usage ..... P. 340
Rear window defogger ..... P. 362

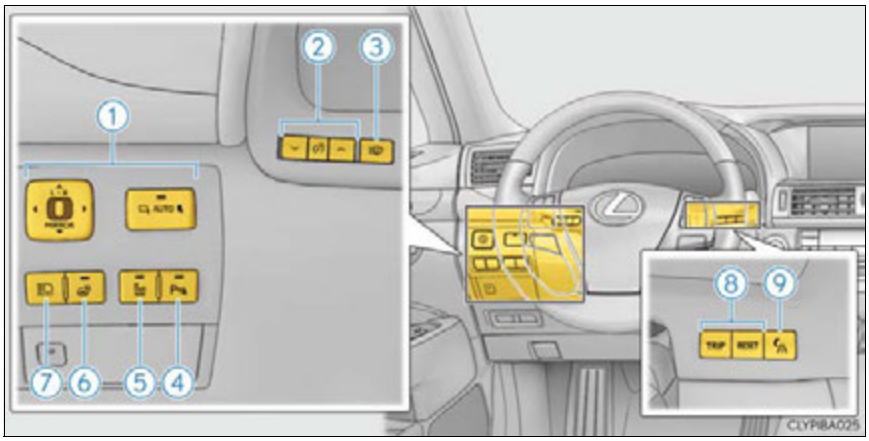
⑭ **Audio system***
Audio system*
Hands-free system*

⑮ **Trunk opener main switch** ..... **P. 152**

*: Refer to "NAVIGATION AND MULTIMEDIA SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".

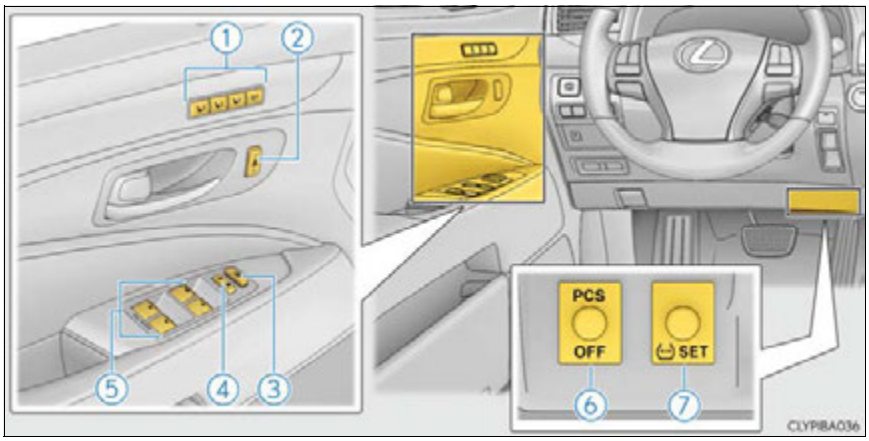
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Instrument panel switches



① Outside rear view mirror switches.....P. 187
② Instrument panel light control switches..... P. 101
③ Headlight cleaner switch.....P. 250
④ Intuitive parking assist switch*2
⑤ BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) main switch*1.....P. 309
⑥ Heated steering wheel switch.....P. 389
⑦ Automatic High Beam switch .....P. 240
⑧ Odometer/trip meter and trip meter reset switches ..... P. 101
⑨ Lexus night view switch*1.....P. 319

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

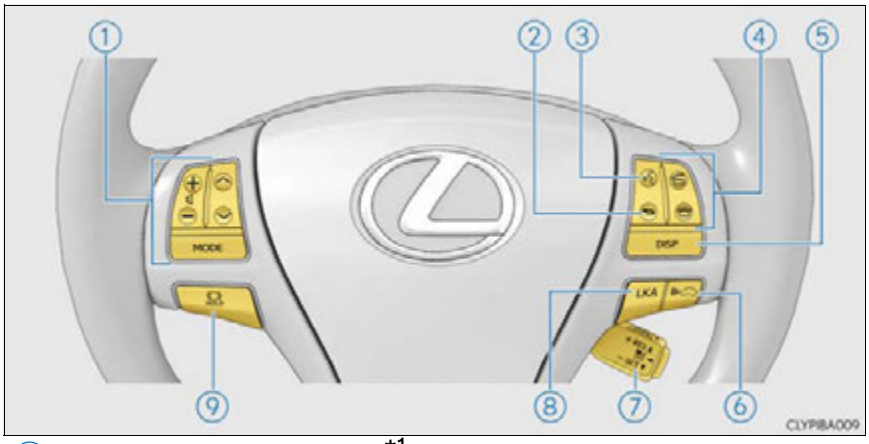


1 Driving position memory switches ..... P. 174
2 Shoulder anchor control switches ..... P. 37
3 Window lock switch ..... P. 191
4 Door lock switches ..... P. 147
5 Power window switches ..... P. 191
6 Pre-collision braking off switch*1 ..... P. 298
7 Tire pressure warning reset switch ..... P. 462

*1: If equipped

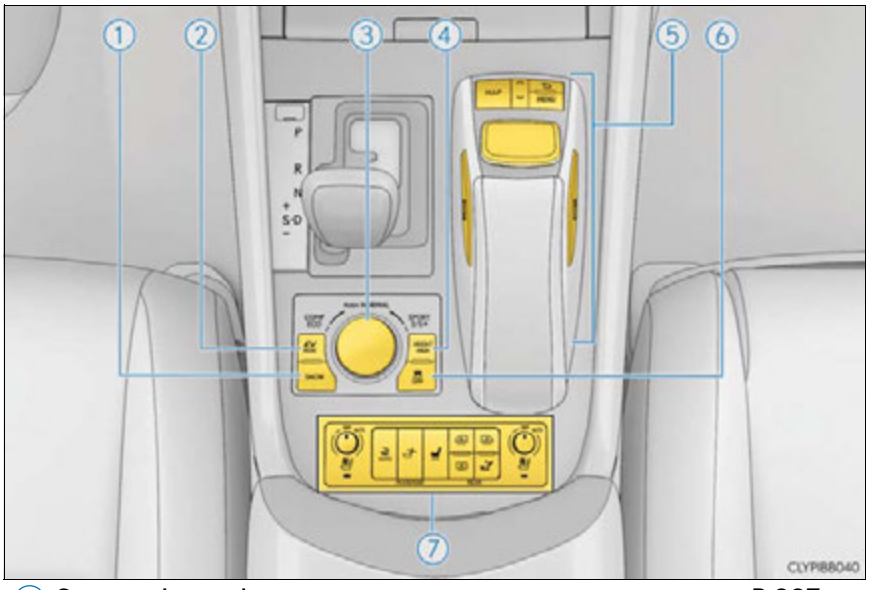
*2: Refer to "NAVIGATION AND MULTIMEDIA SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS



① Audio remote control switches*1
② Back switch*1
③ Talk switch*1
④ Phone switches*1
⑤ "DISP" button.....P. 106
⑥ Vehicle-to-vehicle distance button*2.....P. 262
⑦ Cruise control switch
Cruise control*2 .....P. 255
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range*2 .....P. 259
⑧ LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) switch*2.....P. 277
⑨ Brake hold switch.....P. 233

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

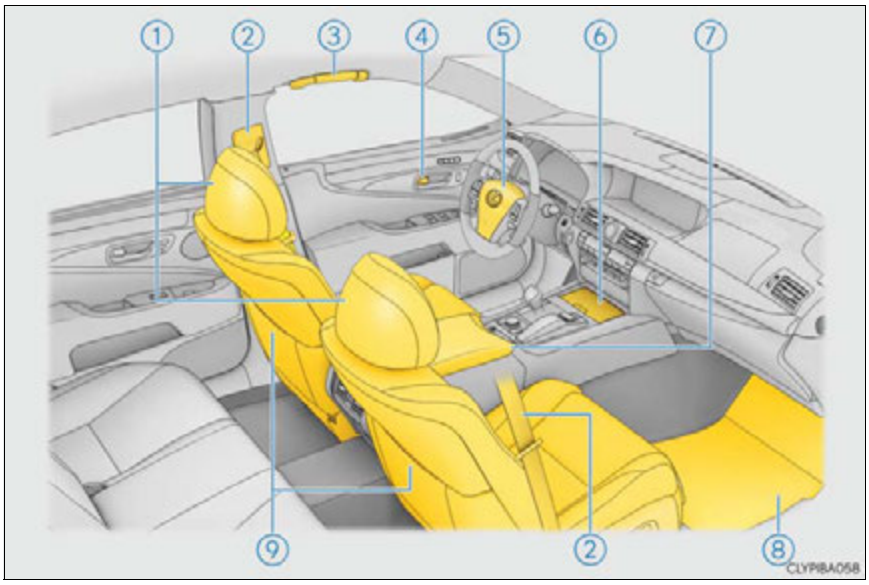


① **Snow mode switch** ..... P. 227
② **EV drive mode switch** ..... P. 223
③ **Driving mode select switch** ..... P. 285
④ **Vehicle height adjustment switch** ..... P. 287
⑤ **Remote Touch**[*1] ..... P. 332
⑥ **VSC (Vehicle Stability Control) OFF switch** ..... P. 291
⑦ **Seat and interior feature switches**[*3]
Rear sunshade switch ..... P. 399
Rear door sunshade switches ..... P. 402
Front climate control seat switches ..... P. 391
Rear seat return switch ..... P. 166
Front passenger's power seat switches[*2] ..... P. 159

*1: Refer to "NAVIGATION AND MULTIMEDIA SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".
*2: If equipped
*3: Location of the switches varies according to the vehicle grade level.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Front interior



① **Head restraints** ..... P. 181

② **Seat belts** ..... P. 36

③ **Assist grips** ..... P. 406

④ **Inside lock buttons** ..... P. 147

⑤ **SRS airbags** ..... P. 42

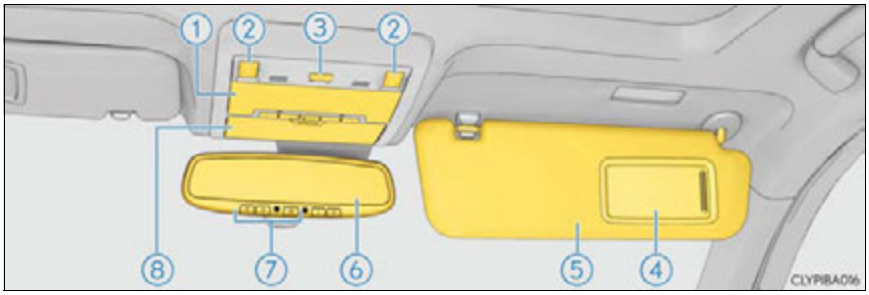
⑥ **Cup holders** ..... P. 372
Power outlet*1 ..... P. 386
Cigarette lighter*1 ..... P. 384

⑦ **Console box** ..... P. 373
Power outlet ..... P. 386
AUX port*2
USB ports*2

⑧ **Floor mats** ..... P. 32

⑨ **Front seats** ..... P. 158

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS



① Interior light ..... P. 365
Personal lights ..... P. 366
② Moon roof switches ..... P. 195
③ "SOS" button*1 ..... P. 414
④ Vanity mirrors ..... P. 380
⑤ Sun visors ..... P. 380
⑥ Inside rear view mirror ..... P. 185
⑦ Garage door opener switches ..... P. 407
⑧ Auxiliary box ..... P. 375

*1: If equipped

*2: Refer to "NAVIGATION AND MULTIMEDIA SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Rear interior (5-seat models)

① Head restraints ..... P. 181
② Interior light ..... P. 365
Personal lights ..... P. 366
③ Assist grips ..... P. 406
④ Vanity mirrors ..... P. 380
⑤ Coat hooks ..... P. 405
⑥ Seat position memory switches ..... P. 179

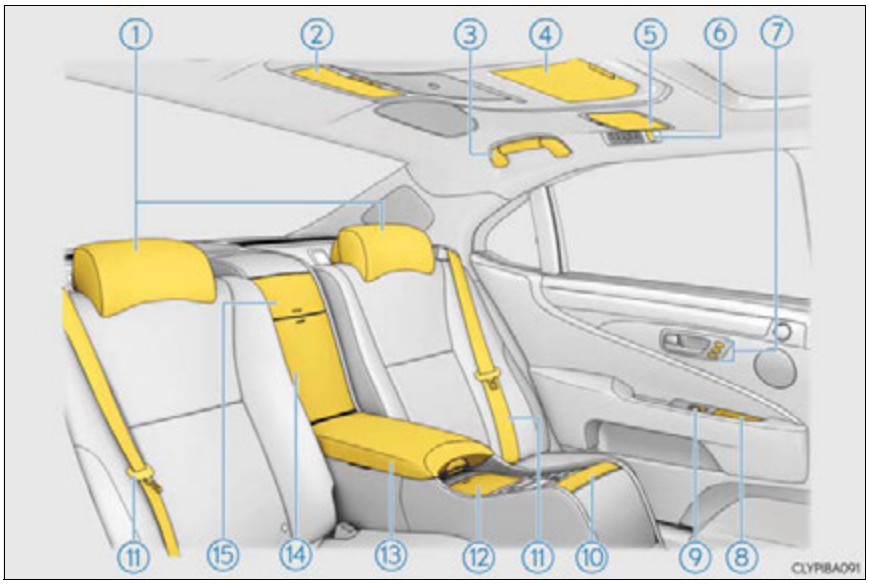
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⑦ Auxiliary boxes* ..... P. 375
Ashtrays* ..... P. 383
⑧ Power window switches ..... P. 191
⑨ Seat belts ..... P. 36
⑩ Cup holders ..... P. 372
⑪ Auxiliary box ..... P. 375

*: If equipped

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Rear interior (4-seat models)



① Head restraints ..... P. 181
② Interior light ..... P. 365
Personal lights ..... P. 366
③ Assist grips ..... P. 406
④ Rear seat entertainment system display*2
⑤ Vanity mirrors ..... P. 380
⑥ Coat hooks ..... P. 405
⑦ Seat position memory switches ..... P. 179

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

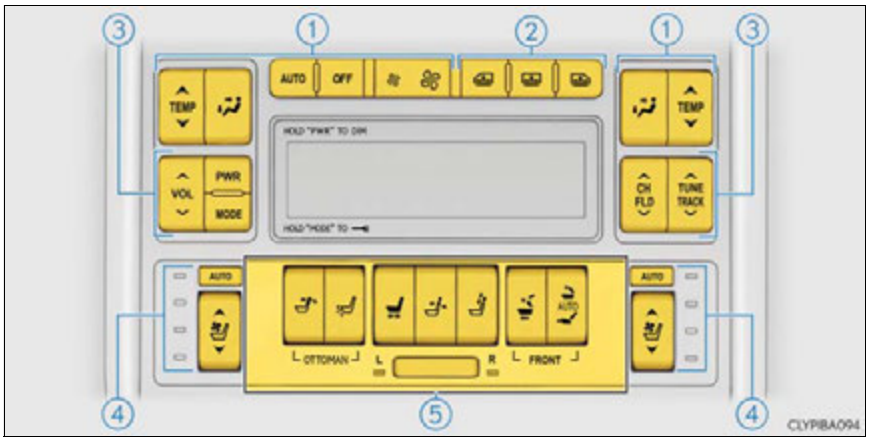
⑧ **Auxiliary boxes**[*1] ..... P. 375
Ashtrays[*1] ..... P. 383
⑨ **Power window switches** ..... P. 191
⑩ **Retractable table** ..... P. 397
⑪ **Seat belts** ..... P. 36
⑫ **Cup holders** ..... P. 372
⑬ **Rear seat console**
Rear seat relaxation system/pelvic support seat controller ..... P. 168, 169
Rear seat entertainment system controller[*2]
Cigarette lighter[*1] ..... P. 384
Power outlet[*1] ..... P. 386
A/V input port (VTR and HDMI port)[*2]
Auxiliary box ..... P. 375
⑭ **Auxiliary box** ..... P. 375
⑮ **Rear seat entertainment system player**[*2]
Disc slot[*2]
SD card slot[*2]
Headphone jacks[*2]

[*1]: If equipped

[*2]: Refer to "NAVIGATION AND MULTIMEDIA SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Rear interior switches



① Rear air conditioning switches ..... P. 355
② Rear sunshade switch ..... P. 399
Rear door sunshade switches ..... P. 402
③ Rear audio switches*3 ..... P. 361
④ Rear climate control seat switches ..... P. 392
⑤ Power rear seat switches*2 ..... P. 164
Front passenger's seat control switches*1, 2 ..... P. 160, 167
Pelvic support seat switches*2 ..... P. 168

*1: If equipped
*2: Location of the switches varies according to the vehicle grade level.
*3: Refer to "NAVIGATION AND MULTIMEDIA SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

For safety and security

1

1-1. **For safe use**

Before driving 32
For safety drive 34
Seat belts 36
SRS airbags 42
Front passenger occupant classification system 55
Safety information for children 61
Child restraint systems 62
Installing child restraints 66
Exhaust gas precautions 75

1-2. **Hybrid system**

Hybrid system features 76
Hybrid system precautions 81

1-3. **Theft deterrent system**

Immobilizer system 88
Alarm 90

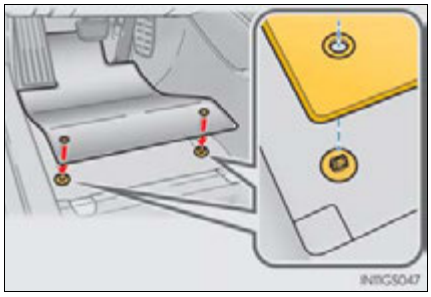
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Before driving

Floor mat

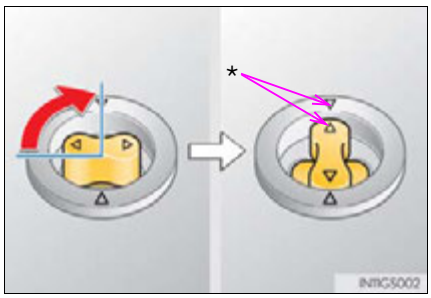
Use only floor mats designed specifically for vehicles of the same model and model year as your vehicle. Fix them securely in place onto the carpet.

1 Insert the retaining hooks (clips) into the floor mat eyelets.



2 Turn the upper knob of each retaining hook (clip) to secure the floor mats in place.

*: Always align the △ marks.



The shape of the retaining hooks (clips) may differ from that shown in the illustration.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

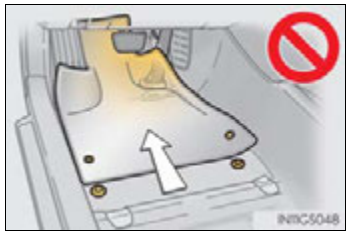
Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause the driver's floor mat to slip, possibly interfering with the pedals while driving. An unexpectedly high speed may result or it may become difficult to stop the vehicle. This could lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

■ When installing the driver's floor mat

- Do not use floor mats designed for other models or different model year vehicles, even if they are Lexus Genuine floor mats.
- Only use floor mats designed for the driver's seat.
- Always install the floor mat securely using the retaining hooks (clips) provided.
- Do not use two or more floor mats on top of each other.
- Do not place the floor mat bottom-side up or upside-down.

■ Before driving

- Check that the floor mat is securely fixed in the correct place with all the provided retaining hooks (clips). Be especially careful to perform this check after cleaning the floor.
- With the hybrid system stopped and the shift lever in P, fully depress each pedal to the floor to make sure it does not interfere with the floor mat.

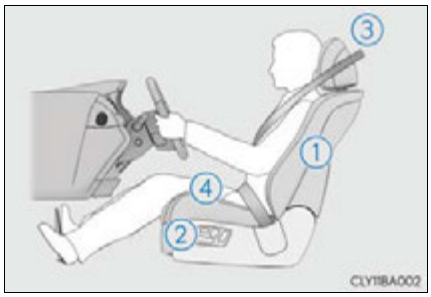


DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

For safety drive

For safe driving, adjust the seat and mirror to an appropriate position before driving.

Correct driving posture



① Adjust the angle of the seatback so that you are sitting straight up and so that you do not have to lean forward to steer. (→P. 158)

② Adjust the seat so that you can depress the pedals fully and so that your arms bend slightly at the elbow when gripping the steering wheel. (→P. 158)

③ Lock the head restraint in place with the center of the head restraint closest to the top of your ears. (→P. 181)

④ Wear the seat belt correctly. (→P. 36)

Correct use of the seat belts

Make sure that all occupants are wearing their seat belts before driving the vehicle. (→P. 36)

Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt. (→P. 62)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Adjusting the mirrors

Make sure that you can see backward clearly by adjusting the inside and outside rear view mirrors properly. (→P. 185, 187)

⚠ CAUTION

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not adjust the position of the driver's seat while driving.
  Doing so could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.
- Do not place a cushion between the driver or passenger and the seatback.
  A cushion may prevent correct posture from being achieved, and reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt and head restraint.
- Do not place anything under the front seats.
  Objects placed under the front seats may become jammed in the seat tracks and stop the seat from locking in place. This may lead to an accident and the adjustment mechanism may also be damaged.
- When driving over long distances, take regular breaks before you start to feel tired.
  Also, if you feel tired or sleepy while driving, do not force yourself to continue driving and take a break immediately.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

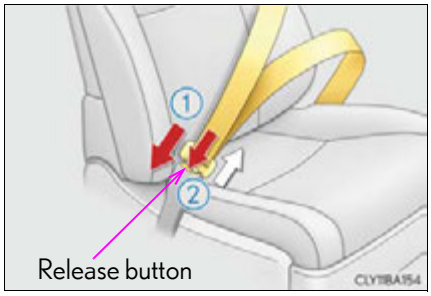
Seat belts

Make sure that all occupants are wearing their seat belts before driving the vehicle.

Correct use of the seat belts

- Extend the shoulder belt so that it comes fully over the shoulder, but does not come into contact with the neck or slide off the shoulder.
- Position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips.
- Adjust the position of the seat-back. Sit up straight and well back in the seat.
- Do not twist the seat belt.

Fastening and releasing the seat belt



① To fasten the seat belt, push the plate into the buckle until a click sound is heard.

② To release the seat belt, press the release button.

If the seat belt cannot be pulled out of the retractor, firmly pull the belt and release it.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

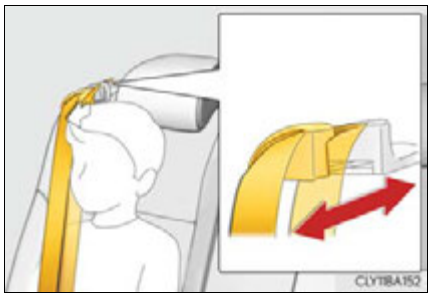
Adjusting the seat belt shoulder anchor height (front seats)

① Moves the seat belt shoulder anchor up

② Moves the seat belt shoulder anchor down

Seat belt comfort guide (outer rear seats)

For children or smaller-than-average people, slide the seat belt comfort guide forward so that the shoulder belt does not sit close to the person's neck.

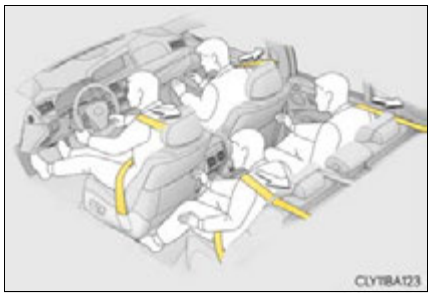


Seat belt pretensioners (front and outer rear seats)

The pretensioners help the seat belts to quickly restrain the occupants by retracting the seat belts when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe frontal collision.

The front seat belt pretensioners also activate when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe side collision.

The pretensioners do not activate in the event of a minor frontal impact, a minor side impact, a rear impact or a vehicle rollover.



DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Pre-collision seat belts (front seats of vehicles with pre-collision system)

If the system determines that a collision is unavoidable, the front seat belts will retract before the collision. (→P. 296)

■ Child seat belt usage

The seat belts of your vehicle were principally designed for persons of adult size.

- Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child, until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt. (→P. 62)
- When the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt, follow the instructions regarding seat belt usage. (→P. 36)

■ Automatic adjustment of the seat belt shoulder anchor height (front seats)

A desired seat belt shoulder anchor height can be entered to memory and recalled automatically by the driving position memory and seat position memory. (→P. 174)

■ Emergency locking retractor (ELR)

The retractor will lock the belt during a sudden stop or on impact. It may also lock if you lean forward too quickly. A slow, easy motion will allow the belt to extend so that you can move around fully.

■ Automatic locking retractor (ALR)

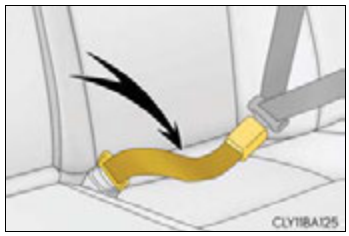
When a passenger's shoulder belt is completely extended and then retracted even slightly, the belt is locked in that position and cannot be extended. This feature is used to hold the child restraint system (CRS) firmly. To free the belt again, fully retract the belt and then pull the belt out once more. (→P. 66)

■ Replacing the belt after the pretensioner has been activated

If the vehicle is involved in multiple collisions, the pretensioner will activate for the first collision, but will not activate for the second or subsequent collisions.

■ Seat belt extender

If your seat belts cannot be fastened securely because they are not long enough, a personalized seat belt extender is available from your Lexus dealer free of charge.



DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of injury in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

■ Wearing a seat belt

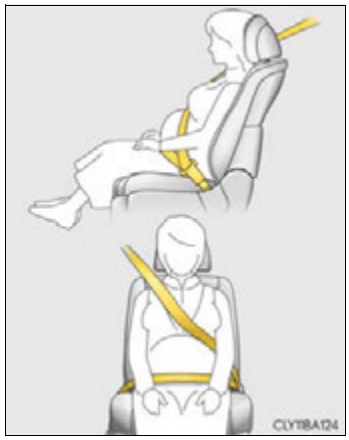
- Ensure that all passengers wear a seat belt.
- Always wear a seat belt properly.
- Each seat belt should be used by one person only. Do not use a seat belt for more than one person at once, including children.
- Lexus recommends that children be seated in the rear seat and always use a seat belt and/or an appropriate child restraint system.
- To achieve a proper seating position, do not recline the seat more than necessary. The seat belt is most effective when the occupants are sitting up straight and well back in the seats.
- Do not wear the shoulder belt under your arm.
- Always wear your seat belt low and snug across your hips.

■ Pregnant women

Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way. (→P. 36)

Women who are pregnant should position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips in the same manner as other occupants, extending the shoulder belt completely over the shoulder and avoiding belt contact with the rounding of the abdominal area.

If the seat belt is not worn properly, not only the pregnant woman, but also the fetus could suffer death or serious injury as a result of sudden braking or a collision.



■ People suffering illness

Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way. (→P. 36)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ When children are in the vehicle

Do not allow children to play with the seat belt. If the seat belt becomes twisted around a child's neck, it may lead to choking or other serious injuries that could result in death.
If this occurs and the buckle cannot be unfastened, scissors should be used to cut the belt.

■ Seat belt pretensioners

- Do not place anything, such as a cushion, on the front passenger's seat. Doing so will disperse the passenger's weight, which prevents the sensor from detecting the passenger's weight properly. As a result, the seat belt pretensioner for the front passenger's seat may not activate in the event of a collision.
- If the pretensioner has activated, the SRS warning light will come on. In that case, the seat belt cannot be used again and must be replaced at your Lexus dealer.

■ Adjustable shoulder anchor

Always make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of your shoulder. The belt should be kept away from your neck, but not falling off your shoulder. Failure to do so could reduce the amount of protection in an accident and cause death or serious injuries in the event of a sudden stop, sudden swerve or accident. (→P. 37)

■ Seat belt damage and wear

- Do not damage the seat belts by allowing the belt, plate, or buckle to be jammed in the door.
- Inspect the seat belt system periodically. Check for cuts, fraying, and loose parts. Do not use a damaged seat belt until it is replaced. Damaged seat belts cannot protect an occupant from death or serious injury.
- Ensure that the belt and plate are locked and the belt is not twisted.
  If the seat belt does not function correctly, immediately contact your Lexus dealer.
- Replace the seat assembly, including the belts, if your vehicle has been involved in a serious accident, even if there is no obvious damage.
- Do not attempt to install, remove, modify, disassemble or dispose of the seat belts. Have any necessary repairs carried out by your Lexus dealer. Inappropriate handling may lead to incorrect operation.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Using a seat belt extender

- Do not wear the seat belt extender if you can fasten the seat belt without the extender.
- Do not use the seat belt extender when installing a child restraint system because the belt will not securely hold the child restraint system, increasing the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.
- The personalized extender may not be safe on another vehicle, when used by another person, or at a different seating position other than the one originally intended.

⚠ NOTICE

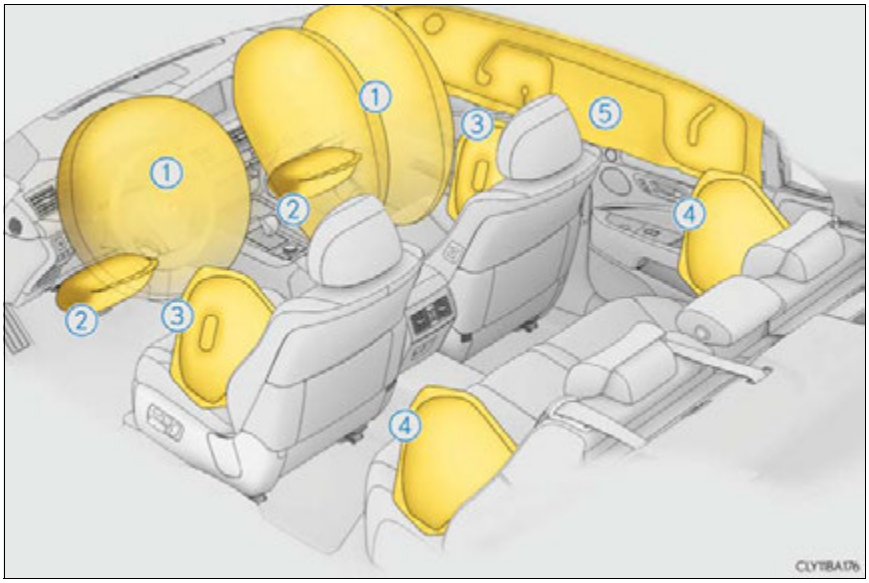
■ When using a seat belt extender

When releasing the seat belt, press on the buckle release button on the extender, not on the seat belt.
This helps prevent damage to the vehicle interior and the extender itself.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

SRS airbags

The SRS airbags inflate when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe impacts that may cause significant injury to the occupants. They work together with the seat belts to help reduce the risk of death or serious injury.



SRS front airbags

① SRS driver airbag/front passenger airbag
Can help protect the head and chest of the driver and front passenger from impact with interior components

② SRS knee airbags
Can help provide driver and front passenger protection

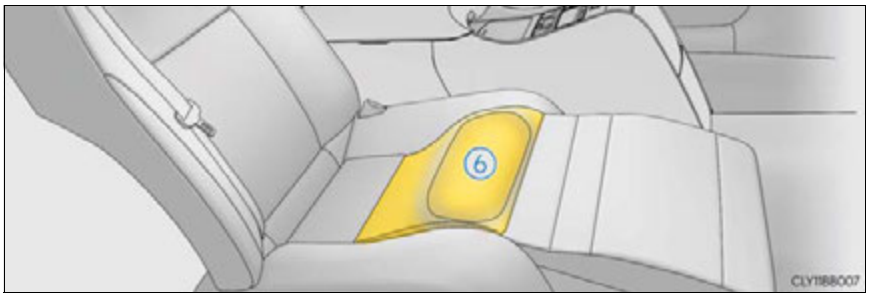
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

SRS side and curtain shield airbags

③ SRS front side airbags
Can help protect the torso of the front seat occupants

④ SRS rear side airbags
Can help protect the torso of occupants in the rear outer seats

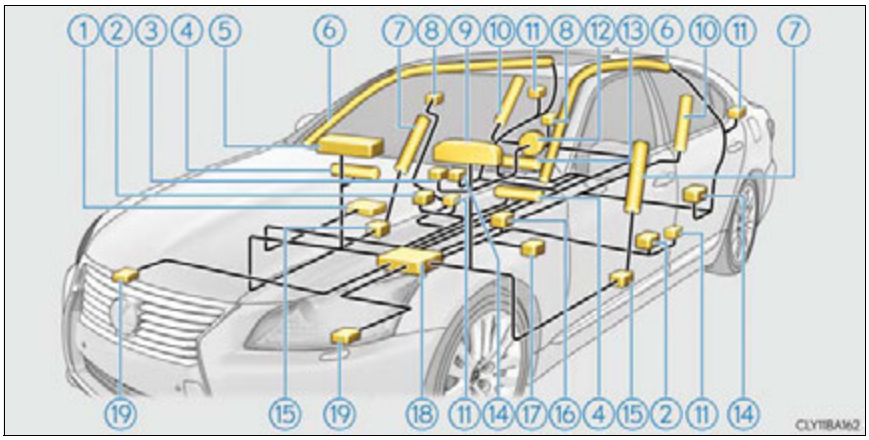
⑤ SRS curtain shield airbags
Can help protect primarily the head of occupants in the outer seats



⑥ SRS seat cushion airbag (relaxation seat)
Can help restrain the relaxation seat occupant

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

SRS airbag system components



① Front passenger occupant classification system (ECU and sensors)
② Side impact sensors (front)
③ "AIR BAG ON" and "AIR BAG OFF" indicator lights
④ Knee airbags
⑤ Front passenger airbag
⑥ Curtain shield airbags
⑦ Front side airbags
⑧ Active head restraints
⑨ SRS warning light
⑩ Rear side airbags
⑪ Seat belt pretensioners and force limiters
⑫ Driver airbag
⑬ Seat cushion airbag (if equipped)
⑭ Side impact sensors (rear)
⑮ Side impact sensors (front door)
⑯ Driver's seat belt buckle switch
⑰ Driver's seat position sensor
⑱ Airbag sensor assembly
⑲ Front impact sensors

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Your vehicle is equipped with ADVANCED AIRBAGS designed based on the US motor vehicle safety standards (FMVSS208). The airbag sensor assembly (ECU) controls airbag deployment based on information obtained from the sensors etc. shown in the system components diagram above. This information includes crash severity and occupant information. As the airbags deploy, a chemical reaction in the inflators quickly fills the airbags with non-toxic gas to help restrain the motion of the occupants.

⚠ CAUTION

■ SRS airbag precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the SRS airbags.
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- The driver and all passengers in the vehicle must wear their seat belts properly. The SRS airbags are supplemental devices to be used with the seat belts.
- The SRS driver airbag deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the driver is very close to the airbag. The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) advises:

  Since the risk zone for the driver's airbag is the first 2 - 3 in. (50 - 75 mm) of inflation, placing yourself 10 in. (250 mm) from your driver airbag provides you with a clear margin of safety. This distance is measured from the center of the steering wheel to your breastbone. If you sit less than 10 in. (250 mm) away now, you can change your driving position in several ways:

  - Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
  - Slightly recline the back of the seat.
    Although vehicle designs vary, many drivers can achieve the 10 in. (250 mm) distance, even with the driver seat all the way forward, simply by reclining the back of the seat somewhat. If reclining the back of your seat makes it hard to see the road, raise yourself by using a firm, non-slippery cushion, or raise the seat if your vehicle has that feature.
  - If your steering wheel is adjustable, tilt it downward. This points the airbag toward your chest instead of your head and neck.

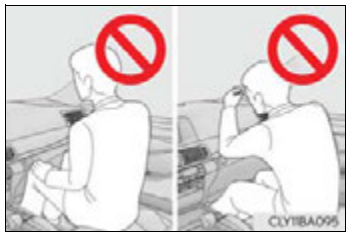
  The seat should be adjusted as recommended by NHTSA above, while still maintaining control of the foot pedals, steering wheel, and your view of the instrument panel controls.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ SRS airbag precautions

- If the seat belt extender has been connected to the front seat belt buckle but the seat belt extender has not also been fastened to the latch plate of the seat belt, the SRS front airbags will judge that the driver and front passenger are wearing the seat belt even though the seat belt has not been connected. In this case, the SRS front airbags may not activate correctly in a collision, resulting in death or serious injury in the event of a collision. Be sure to wear the seat belt with the seat belt extender.
- The SRS front passenger airbag also deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the front passenger is very close to the airbag. The front passenger seat should be as far from the airbag as possible with the seatback adjusted, so the front passenger sits upright.
- Improperly seated and/or restrained infants and children can be killed or seriously injured by a deploying airbag. An infant or child who is too small to use a seat belt should be properly secured using a child restraint system. Lexus strongly recommends that all infants and children be placed in the rear seats of the vehicle and properly restrained. The rear seats are safer for infants and children than the front passenger seat. (→P. 62)



- Do not sit on the edge of the seat or lean against the dashboard.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

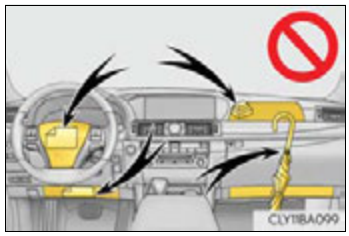
■ SRS airbag precautions

- Do not allow a child to stand in front of the SRS front passenger airbag unit or sit on the knees of a front passenger.
- Do not allow the front seat occupants to hold items on their knees.

- Do not lean against the door, the roof side rail or the front, side and rear pillars.

- Do not allow anyone to kneel on the passenger seats toward the door or put their head or hands outside the vehicle.

- Do not attach anything to or lean anything against areas such as the dashboard, steering wheel pad and lower portion of the instrument panel.
  These items can become projectiles when the SRS driver, front passenger and knee airbags deploy.



- Do not attach anything to areas such as a door, windshield glass, side door glass, front and rear pillar, roof side rail and assist grip.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ SRS airbag precautions

- Do not hang coat hangers or hard objects on the coat hooks. All of these items could become projectiles and may cause death or serious injury, should the SRS curtain shield airbags deploy.
- If a vinyl cover is put on the area where the SRS knee airbag will deploy, be sure to remove it.
- Do not use seat accessories which cover the parts where the SRS side airbags and seat cushion airbag inflate as they may interfere with inflation of the SRS airbags. Such accessories may prevent the side airbags and seat cushion airbag from activating correctly, disable the system or cause the side airbags and seat cushion airbag to inflate accidentally, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Do not strike or apply significant levels of force to the area of the SRS airbag components. Doing so can cause the SRS airbags to malfunction.
- Do not touch any of the component parts immediately after the SRS airbags have deployed (inflated) as they may be hot.
- If breathing becomes difficult after the SRS airbags have deployed, open a door or window to allow fresh air in, or leave the vehicle if it is safe to do so. Wash off any residue as soon as possible to prevent skin irritation.
- If the areas where the SRS airbags are stored, such as the steering wheel pad and front and rear pillar garnishes are damaged or cracked, have them replaced by your Lexus dealer.
- Do not place anything, such as a cushion, on the front passenger's seat. Doing so will disperse the passenger's weight, which prevents the sensor from detecting the passenger's weight properly. As a result, the SRS front passenger airbag may not deploy in the event of a collision.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Modification and disposal of SRS airbag system components

Do not dispose of your vehicle or perform any of the following modifications without consulting your Lexus dealer. The SRS airbags may malfunction or deploy (inflate) accidentally, causing death or serious injury.

- Installation, removal, disassembly and repair of the SRS airbags
- Repairs, modifications, removal or replacement of the steering wheel, instrument panel, dashboard, seats or seat upholstery, front, side and rear pillars or roof side rails
- Repairs or modifications of the front fender, front bumper, or side of the occupant compartment
- Installation of a grille guard (bull bars, kangaroo bar, etc.), snow plows, winches
- Modifications to the vehicle's suspension system
- Installation of electronic devices such as mobile two-way radios and CD players
- Modifications to your vehicle for a person with a physical disability

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ If the SRS airbags deploy (inflate)

- Slight abrasions, burns, bruising etc., may be sustained from SRS airbags, due to the extremely high speed deployment (inflation) by hot gases.
- A loud noise and white powder will be emitted.
- Parts of the airbag module (steering wheel hub, airbag cover and inflator) as well as the seats, parts of the front and rear pillars, and roof side rails may be hot for several minutes. The airbag itself may also be hot.
- The windshield may crack.
- For Lexus Enform Safety Connect subscribers, if the SRS airbags deploy or in the event of a severe rear-end collision, the system is designed to send an emergency call to the response center, notifying them of the vehicle's location (without needing to push the "SOS" button) and an agent will attempt to speak with the occupants to ascertain the level of emergency and assistance required. If the occupants are unable to communicate, the agent automatically treats the call as an emergency and helps to dispatch the necessary emergency services. (→P. 414)

■ SRS airbag deployment conditions (SRS front airbags and SRS seat cushion airbag)

- The SRS front airbags and SRS seat cushion airbag will deploy in the event of an impact that exceeds the set threshold level (the level of force corresponding to an approximately 12 - 18 mph [20 - 30 km/h] frontal collision with a fixed wall that does not move or deform).

  However, this threshold velocity will be considerably higher in the following situations:

  - If the vehicle strikes an object, such as a parked vehicle or sign pole, which can move or deform on impact
  - If the vehicle is involved in an underride collision, such as a collision in which the front of the vehicle "underrides", or goes under, the bed of a truck
- Depending on the type of collision, it is possible that only the seat belt pretensioners will activate.
- The SRS front airbags for the front passenger will not activate if there is no passenger sitting in the front passenger seat. However, the SRS front airbags for the front passenger may deploy if luggage is put in the seat, even if the seat is unoccupied. (→P. 55)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

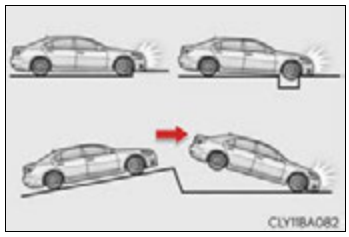
■ **SRS airbag deployment conditions (SRS side and curtain shield airbags)**

- The SRS side and curtain shield airbags will deploy in the event of an impact that exceeds the set threshold level (the level of force corresponding to the impact force produced by an approximately 3300 lb. [1500 kg] vehicle colliding with the vehicle cabin from a direction perpendicular to the vehicle orientation at an approximate speed of 12 - 18 mph [20 - 30 km/h]).
- The SRS side and curtain shield airbags will deploy in the event of a severe frontal collision.

■ **Conditions under which the SRS airbags may deploy (inflate), other than a collision (SRS front airbags, SRS curtain shield airbag and SRS seat cushion airbag)**

The SRS front airbags, SRS curtain shield airbag and SRS seat cushion airbag may also deploy if a serious impact occurs to the underside of your vehicle. Some examples are shown in the illustration.

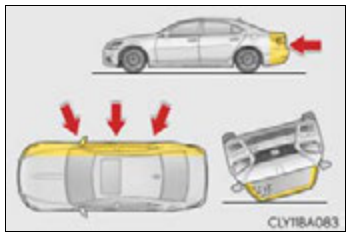
- Hitting a curb, edge of pavement or hard surface
- Falling into or jumping over a deep hole
- Landing hard or falling



■ **Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbags (SRS front airbags and SRS seat cushion airbag)**

The SRS front airbags and SRS seat cushion airbag do not generally inflate if the vehicle is involved in a side or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed frontal collision. But, whenever a collision of any type causes sufficient forward deceleration of the vehicle, deployment of the SRS front airbags and SRS seat cushion airbag may occur.

- Collision from the side
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover

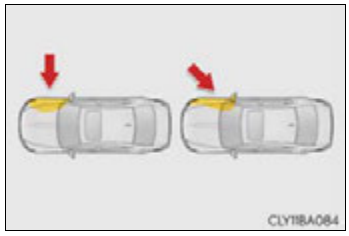


DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbags (SRS side and curtain shield airbags)**

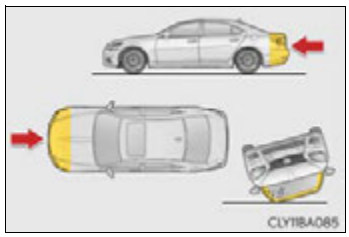
The SRS side and curtain shield airbags may not activate if the vehicle is subjected to a collision from the side at certain angles, or a collision to the side of the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment.

- Collision from the side to the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment
- Collision from the side at an angle



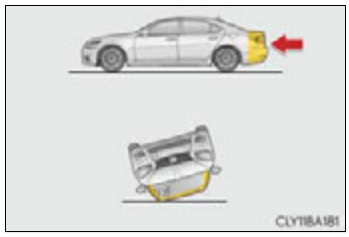
The SRS side airbags do not generally inflate if the vehicle is involved in a frontal or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed side collision.

- Collision from the front
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover



The SRS curtain shield airbags do not generally inflate if the vehicle is involved in a rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed side or low-speed frontal collision.

- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover

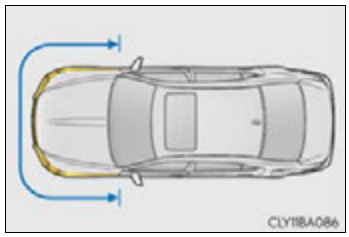


DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

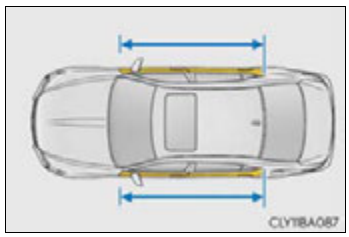
When to contact your Lexus dealer

In the following cases, the vehicle will require inspection and/or repair. Contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

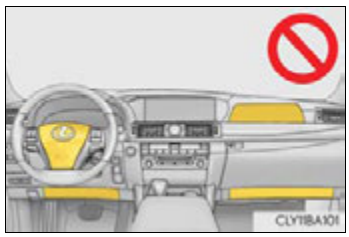
- Any of the SRS airbags have been inflated.
- The front of the vehicle is damaged or deformed, or was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS airbags to inflate.



- A portion of a door is damaged or deformed, or the vehicle was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS side and curtain shield airbags to inflate.

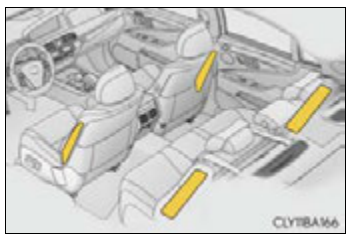


- The pad section of the steering wheel, dashboard near the front passenger airbag or lower portion of the instrument panel is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.



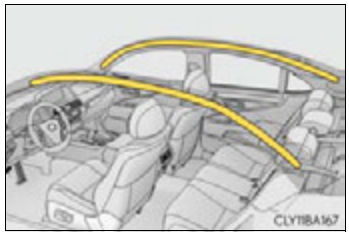
- Relaxation seat: The seat cushion surface is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.

- The surface of the seats with the side airbag is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.



DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

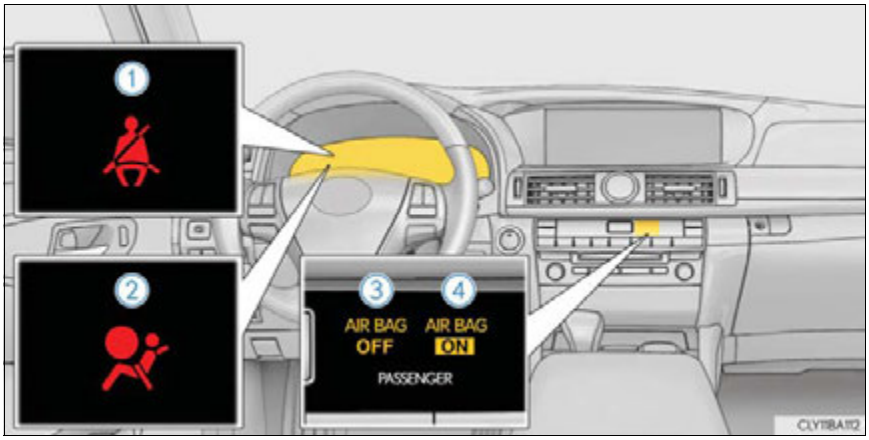
- The portion of the front pillars, rear pillars or roof side rail garnishes (padding) containing the curtain shield airbags inside is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.



DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Front passenger occupant classification system

Your vehicle is equipped with a front passenger occupant classification system. This system detects the conditions of the front passenger seat and activates or deactivates the devices for the front passenger.



① Seat belt reminder light

② SRS warning light

③ "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light

④ "AIR BAG ON" indicator light

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Condition and operation in the front passenger occupant classification system

■ Adult*1

Indicator/ warning light	"AIR BAG ON" and "AIR BAG OFF" indicator lights	"AIR BAG ON"
	SRS warning light	Off
	Front passenger's seat belt reminder light	Flashing*2
Devices	Front passenger airbag	Activated
	Side airbag on the right side passenger seats	
	Curtain shield airbag in the front passenger side	
	Front passenger knee airbag	
	Front passenger's seat belt pretensioner	
	Active head restraints	

■ Child*3 or child restraint system*4

Indicator/ warning light	"AIR BAG ON" and "AIR BAG OFF" indicator lights	"AIR BAG OFF"*5
	SRS warning light	Off
	Front passenger's seat belt reminder light	Flashing*2
Devices	Front passenger airbag	Deactivated
	Side airbag on the right side passenger seats	Activated
	Curtain shield airbag in the front passenger side	
	Front passenger knee airbag	Deactivated
	Front passenger's seat belt pretensioner	Activated
	Active head restraints	

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Unoccupied

Indicator/ warning light	"AIR BAG ON" and "AIR BAG OFF" indicator lights	Not illuminated
	SRS warning light	Off
	Front passenger's seat belt reminder light	
Devices	Front passenger airbag	Deactivated
	Side airbag on the right side passenger seats	Activated
	Curtain shield airbag in the front passenger side	
	Front passenger knee airbag	Deactivated
	Front passenger's seat belt pretensioner	Deactivated or activated*6
	Active head restraints	Deactivated

■ There is a malfunction in the system

Indicator/ warning light	"AIR BAG ON" and "AIR BAG OFF" indicator lights	"AIR BAG OFF"
	SRS warning light	On
	Front passenger's seat belt reminder light	Off
Devices	Front passenger airbag	Deactivated
	Side airbag on the right side passenger seats	Activated
	Curtain shield airbag in the front passenger side	
	Front passenger knee airbag	Deactivated
	Front passenger's seat belt pretensioner	Activated
	Active head restraints	

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

*1: The system judges a person of adult size as an adult. When a smaller adult sits in the front passenger seat, the system may recognize him/her as a child depending on his/her physique and posture.

*2: In the event the front passenger does not wear a seat belt

*3: When a larger child who has outgrown a child restraint system sits in the front passenger seat, the system may recognize him/her as an adult depending on his/her physique or posture.

*4: Never install a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat. A forward-facing child restraint system should only be installed on the front passenger seat when it is unavoidable. (→P. 62)

*5: In case the indicator light is not illuminated, consult this manual on how to install the child restraint system properly. (→P. 66)

*6: Activated only in cases of side impact

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Front passenger occupant classification system precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the front passenger occupant classification system.
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Wear the seat belt properly.
- Make sure the front passenger's seat belt plate has not been left inserted into the buckle before someone sits in the front passenger seat.
- Make sure the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light is not illuminated when using the seat belt extender for the front passenger seat. If the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated, disconnect the extender tongue from the seat belt buckle, then reconnect the seat belt. Reconnect the seat belt extender after making sure the "AIR BAG ON" indicator light is illuminated. If you use the seat belt extender while the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated, the SRS airbags for the passenger may not activate correctly, which could cause death or serious injury in the event of a collision.
- Do not apply a heavy load to the front passenger seat or equipment (e.g. seatback pockets or armrest).
- Do not put weight on the front passenger seat by putting your hands or feet on the front passenger seat seatback from the rear passenger seat.
- Do not let a rear passenger lift the front passenger seat with their feet or press on the seatback with their legs.
- Do not put objects under the front passenger seat.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Front passenger occupant classification system precautions

- Do not recline the front passenger seatback so far that it touches a rear seat. This may cause the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light to be illuminated, which indicates that the passenger's airbags will not deploy in the event of a severe accident. If the seatback touches the rear seat, return the seatback to a position where it does not touch the rear seat. Keep the front passenger seatback as upright as possible when the vehicle is moving. Reclining the seatback excessively may lessen the effectiveness of the seat belt system.
- If an adult sits in the front passenger seat, the "AIR BAG ON" indicator light is illuminated. If the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator is illuminated, ask the passenger to sit up straight, well back in the seat, feet on the floor, and with the seat belt worn correctly. If the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator still remains illuminated, either ask the passenger to move to the rear seat, or if that is not possible, move the front passenger seat fully rearward.
- When it is unavoidable to install a forward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat, install the child restraint system on the front passenger seat in the proper order. (→P. 66)
- Do not modify or remove the front seats.
- Do not kick the front passenger seat or subject it to severe impact. Otherwise, the SRS warning light may come on to indicate a malfunction of the detection system. In this case, contact your Lexus dealer immediately.
- Child restraint systems installed on the rear seat should not contact the front seatbacks.
- Do not use a seat accessory, such as a cushion or seat cover, that covers the seat cushion surface.
- Do not modify or replace the upholstery of the front seat.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Safety information for children

Observe the following precautions when children are in the vehicle. Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child, until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt.

- It is recommended that children sit in the rear seats to avoid accidental contact with the shift lever, wiper switch etc.
- Use the rear door child-protector lock or the window lock switch to avoid children opening the door while driving or operating the power window accidentally.
- Do not let small children operate equipment which may catch or pinch body parts, such as the power window, hood, trunk, seats etc.

⚠ CAUTION

Never leave children unattended in the vehicle, and never allow children to have or use the key.

Children may be able to start the vehicle or shift the vehicle into neutral. There is also a danger that children may injure themselves by playing with the cigarette lighter, the windows, the moon roof, or other features of the vehicle. In addition, heat build-up or extremely cold temperatures inside the vehicle can be fatal to children.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Child restraint systems

A child restraint system for a small child or baby must itself be properly restrained on the seat with the LATCH anchors or the lap portion of the lap/shoulder belt.

The laws of all 50 states of the U.S.A. and Canada now require the use of child restraint systems.

Points to remember

Studies have shown that installing a child restraint on a rear seat is much safer than installing one on the front passenger seat.

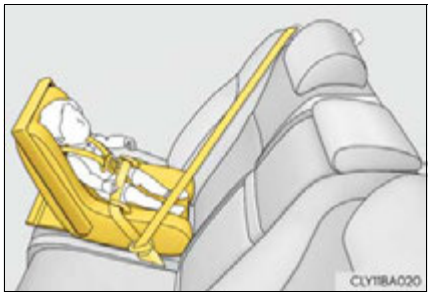
- Choose a child restraint system that suits your vehicle and is appropriate to the age and size of the child.
- For installation details, follow the instructions provided with the child restraint system.
  General installation instructions are provided in this manual. (→P. 66)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Types of child restraints

Child restraint systems are classified into the following 3 types according to the age and size of the child:

- Rear facing — Infant seat/convertible seat



- Forward facing — Convertible seat

- Booster seat

Selecting an appropriate child restraint system

- Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt.
- If the child is too large for a child restraint system, sit the child on a rear seat and use the vehicle's seat belt. (→P. 36)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Child restraint precautions

- For effective protection in automobile accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained, using a seat belt or child restraint system depending on the age and size of the child. Holding a child in your arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system. In an accident, the child can be crushed against the windshield, or between you and the vehicle's interior.
- Lexus strongly urges the use of a proper child restraint system that conforms to the size of the child, installed on the rear seat. According to accident statistics, the child is safer when properly restrained in the rear seat than in the front seat.
- Never install a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat even if the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated.
  In the event of an accident, the force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to the child if the rear-facing child restraint system is installed on the front passenger seat.
- A forward-facing child restraint system may be installed on the front passenger seat only when it is unavoidable. A child restraint system that requires a top tether strap should not be used in the front passenger seat since there is no top tether strap anchor for the front passenger seat. Adjust the seatback as upright as possible and always move the seat as far back as possible even if the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated, because the front passenger airbag could inflate with considerable speed and force. Otherwise, the child may be killed or seriously injured.
- Do not use the seat belt extender when installing a child restraint system on the front or rear passenger seat. If installing a child restraint system with the seat belt extender connected to the seat belt, the seat belt will not securely hold the child restraint system, which could cause death or serious injury to the child or other passengers in the event of an accident.
- Do not allow the child to lean his/her head or any part of his/her body against the door or the area of the seat, front and rear pillars or roof side rails from which the SRS side airbags or SRS curtain shield airbags deploy even if the child is seated in the child restraint system. It is dangerous if the SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags inflate, and the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.
- Make sure you have complied with all installation instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer and that the system is properly secured. If it is not secured properly, it may cause death or serious injury to the child in the event of a sudden stop or accident.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ When children are in the vehicle

Do not allow children to play with the seat belt. If the seat belt becomes twisted around a child's neck, it may lead to choking or other serious injuries that could result in death.
If this occurs and the buckle cannot be unfastened, scissors should be used to cut the belt.

■ When the child restraint system is not in use

- Keep the child restraint system properly secured on the seat even if it is not in use. Do not store the child restraint system unsecured in the passenger compartment.
- If it is necessary to detach the child restraint system, remove it from the vehicle or store it securely in the trunk. This will prevent it from injuring passengers in the event of a sudden stop or accident.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Installing child restraints

Follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions. Firmly secure child restraints to the outer rear seats using the LATCH anchors or a seat belt. Attach the top tether strap when installing a child restraint.
The lap/shoulder belt can be used if your child restraint system is not compatible with the LATCH (Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children) system.

Child restraint LATCH anchors

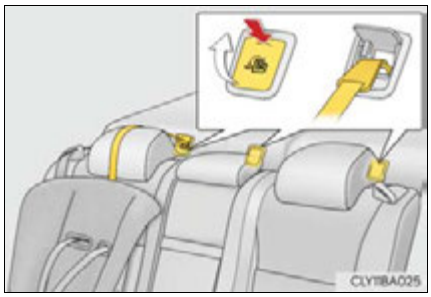
LATCH anchors are provided for the outer rear seats. (Buttons displaying the location of the anchors are attached to the seats.)

Seat belts equipped with a child restraint locking mechanism (ALR/ELR belts except driver's seat belt) (→P. 38)

▶ 5-seat models

Anchor brackets (for top tether strap)

An anchor bracket is provided for each rear seat.

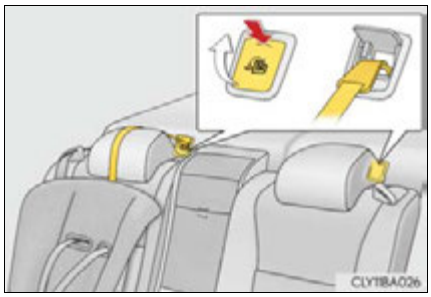


DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

▶ 4-seat models

Anchor brackets (for top tether strap)

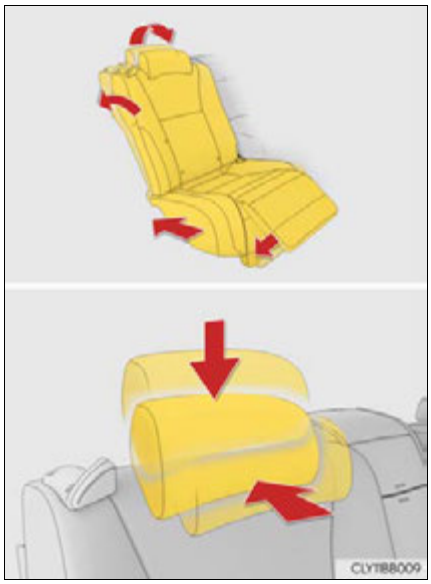
An anchor bracket is provided for each rear seat.



Before installing a child restraint system on an outer rear seat

When using a child restraint system in an outer rear seat, adjust the following:

- The seat cushion to the fully rearward position
- The upper seatback to the rearmost position
- The head restraint to the lowest and rearmost position
- Relaxation seat: The seatback to the most upright position and ottoman (footrest) to the stowed position



DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

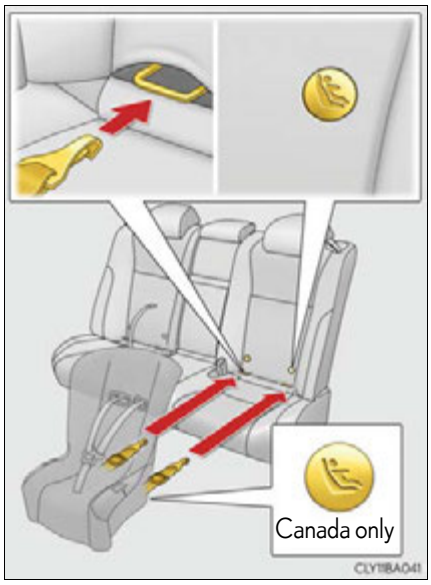
Installation with LATCH system

1 Widen the gap between the seat cushion and seatback slightly.

▶ Type A

2 Latch the hooks of the lower straps onto the LATCH anchors. If the child restraint has a top tether strap, the top tether strap should be latched onto the top tether strap anchor.

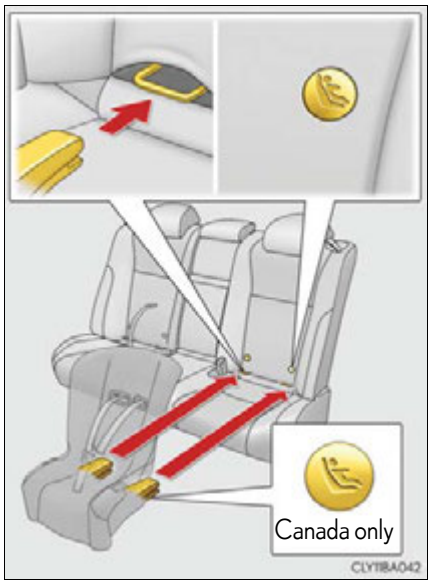
For owners in Canada:
The symbol on a child restraint system indicates the presence of a lower connector system.



▶ Type B

2 Latch the buckles onto the LATCH anchors. If the child restraint has a top tether strap, the top tether strap should be latched onto the top tether strap anchor.

For owners in Canada:
The symbol on a child restraint system indicates the presence of a lower connector system.

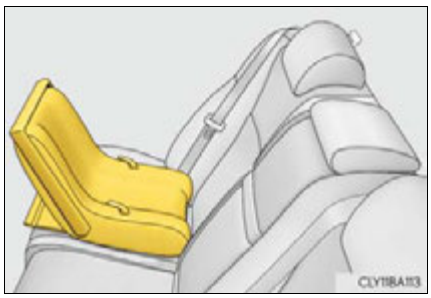


DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

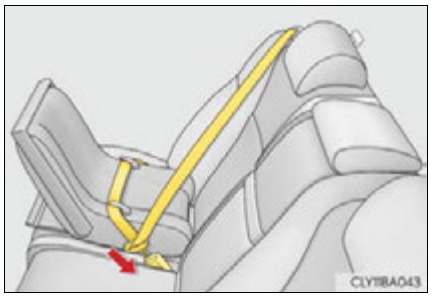
Installing child restraints using a seat belt (child restraint lock function belt)

■ Rear-facing—Infant seat/convertible seat

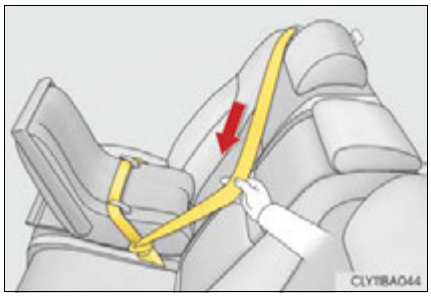
1 Place the child restraint system on the rear seat facing the rear of the vehicle.



2 Run the seat belt through the child restraint system and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.



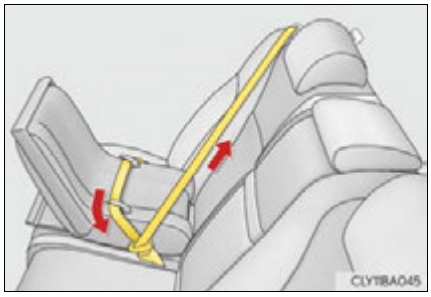
3 Fully extend the shoulder belt and allow it to retract to put it in lock mode. In lock mode, the belt cannot be extended.



DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

4 While pushing the child restraint system down into the rear seat, allow the shoulder belt to retract until the child restraint system is securely in place.

After the shoulder belt has retracted to a point where there is no slack in the belt, pull the belt to check that it cannot be extended.

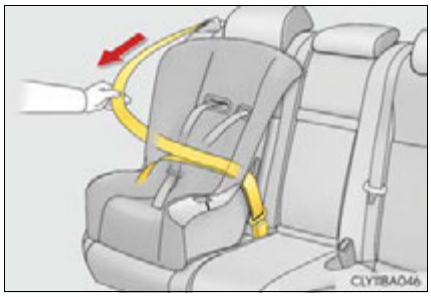


■ Forward-facing— Convertible seat

1 Place the child restraint system on the seat facing the front of the vehicle.

2 Run the seat belt through the child restraint system and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

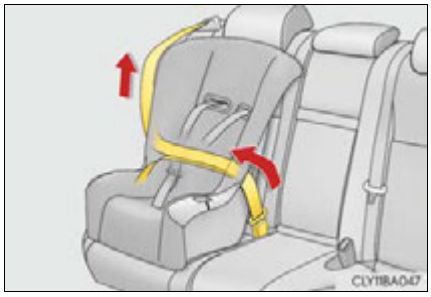
3 Fully extend the shoulder belt and allow it to retract to put it in lock mode. In lock mode, the belt cannot be extended.



DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

4 While pushing the child restraint system into the rear seat, allow the shoulder belt to retract until the child restraint system is securely in place.

After the shoulder belt has retracted to a point where there is no slack in the belt, pull the belt to check that it cannot be extended.



5 If the child restraint has a top tether strap, the top tether strap should be latched onto the top tether strap anchor. (→P. 72)

■ Booster seat

1 Place the child restraint system on the seat facing the front of the vehicle.

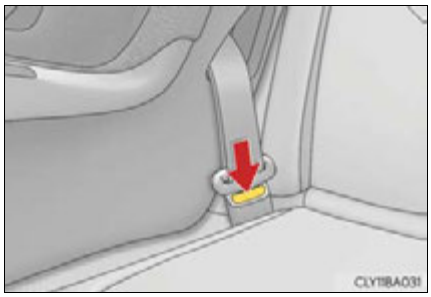
2 Sit the child in the child restraint system. Fit the seat belt to the child restraint system according to the manufacturer's instructions and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

Check that the shoulder belt is correctly positioned over the child's shoulder and that the lap belt is as low as possible. (→P. 36)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Removing a child restraint installed with a seat belt

Push the buckle release button and fully retract the seat belt.

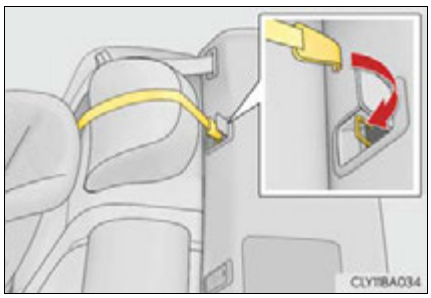


Child restraint systems with a top tether strap

1 Secure the child restraint system using the seat belt or the LATCH anchors and move the head restraint to the lowest position (outer rear seats) or fold the head restraint (rear center seat). (→P. 181)

2 Open the anchor bracket cover, latch the hook onto the anchor bracket and tighten the top tether strap.

Make sure the top tether strap is securely latched.



Laws and regulations pertaining to anchorages

The LATCH system conforms to FMVSS225 or CMVSS210.2.
Child restraint systems conforming to FMVSS213 or CMVSS213 specifications can be used.
This vehicle is designed to conform to the SAE J1819.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ When installing a booster seat

To prevent the belt from going into ALR lock mode, do not fully extend the shoulder belt. ALR mode causes the belt to tighten only. This could cause injury or discomfort to the child. (→P. 38)

■ When installing a child restraint system

Follow the directions given in the child restraint system installation manual and fix the child restraint system securely in place.
If the child restraint system is not correctly fixed in place, the child or other passengers may be seriously injured or even killed in the event of sudden braking or an accident.

- If the driver's seat interferes with the child restraint system and prevents it from being attached correctly, attach the child restraint system to the right-hand rear seat.
- Adjust the front passenger seat or rear seats so that it does not interfere with the child restraint system.

- Only put a forward-facing child restraint system on the front seat when unavoidable. When installing a forward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat, move the seat as far back as possible even if the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury if the airbags deploy (inflate).

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ When installing a child restraint system

- When a booster seat is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder. Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury in the event of an accident or sudden braking.
- When using the LATCH anchors for a child restraint system, adjust the seatback as upright as possible.
- Ensure that the belt and plate are securely locked and the seat belt is not twisted.
- Shake the child restraint system left and right, and forward and backward to ensure that it has been securely installed.
- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.
- When securing some types of child restraint systems in rear seats, it may not be possible to properly use the seat belts in positions next to the child restraint without interfering with it or affecting seat belt effectiveness. Be sure your seat belt fits snugly across your shoulder and low on your hips. If it does not, or if it interferes with the child restraint, move to a different position. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ Do not use a seat belt extender

If a seat belt extender is used when installing a child restraint system, the seat belt will not securely hold the child restraint system, which could cause death or serious injury to the child or other passengers in the event of a sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.

■ To correctly attach a child restraint system to the anchors

When using the LATCH anchors, be sure that there are no foreign objects around the anchors and that the seat belt is not caught behind the child restraint system. Make sure the child restraint system is securely attached, or it may cause death or serious injury to the child or other passengers in the event of sudden braking or an accident.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Exhaust gas precautions

Substances in the exhaust gases are harmful to the human body if inhaled.

⚠ CAUTION

Exhaust gases include harmful carbon monoxide (CO), which is colorless and odorless. Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause exhaust gases enter the vehicle and may lead to an accident caused by light-headedness, or may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

■ Important points while driving

Keep the trunk lid closed.
If you smell exhaust gases in the vehicle even when the trunk lid is closed, open the windows and have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

■ When parking

- If the vehicle is in a poorly ventilated area or a closed area, such as a garage, stop the hybrid system.
- Do not leave the vehicle with the hybrid system on for a long time.
  If such a situation cannot be avoided, park the vehicle in an open space and ensure that exhaust fumes do not enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not leave the hybrid system operating in an area with snow build-up, or where it is snowing. If snowbanks build up around the vehicle while the hybrid system is operating, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle.

■ Exhaust pipe

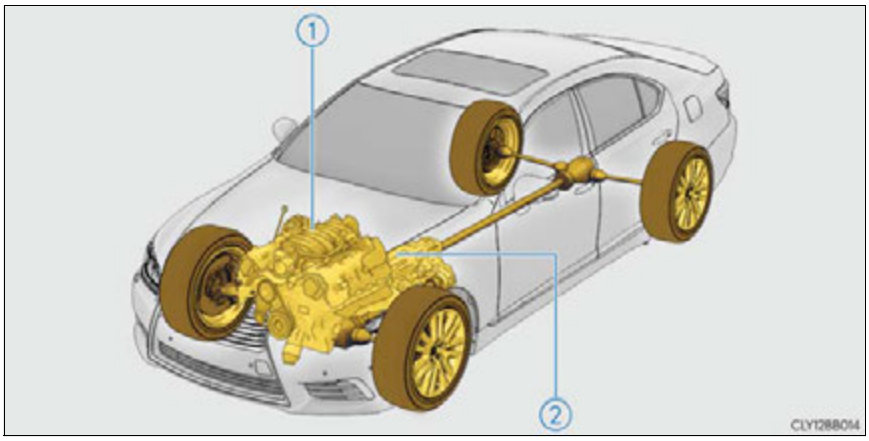
The exhaust system needs to be checked periodically. If there is a hole or crack caused by corrosion, damage to a joint or abnormal exhaust noise, be sure to have the vehicle inspected and repaired by your Lexus dealer.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Hybrid system features

Your vehicle is a hybrid vehicle. It has characteristics different from conventional vehicles. Be sure you are closely familiar with the characteristics of your vehicle, and operate with care.

The hybrid system combines the use of a gasoline engine and an electric motor (traction motor) according to driving conditions, improving fuel efficiency and reducing exhaust emissions.



① Gasoline engine

② Electric motor (traction motor)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

When stopped/during start off

The gasoline engine stops when the vehicle is stopped. During start off, the electric motor (traction motor) drives the vehicle. At slow speeds or when traveling down a gentle slope, the engine is stopped and the electric motor (traction motor) is used.

During normal driving

The gasoline engine is predominantly used. The electric motor (traction motor) charges the hybrid battery (traction battery) as necessary.

When accelerating sharply

When the accelerator pedal is depressed heavily, the power of the hybrid battery (traction battery) is added to that of the gasoline engine via the electric motor (traction motor).

When braking (regenerative braking)

The electric motor (traction motor) charges the hybrid battery (traction battery).

Vehicle proximity notification system

When driving with the gasoline engine stopped, a sound, which changes in accordance with the driving speed, will be played in order to warn people nearby of the vehicle's approach. The sound will stop when the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 15 mph (25 km/h).

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Regenerative braking**

In the following situations, kinetic energy is converted to electric energy and deceleration force can be obtained in conjunction with the recharging of the hybrid battery (traction battery).

- The accelerator pedal is released while driving with the shift position in D or S.
- The brake pedal is depressed while driving with the shift position in D or S.

■ **EV indicator**

The EV indicator comes on when the vehicle is driven using only the electric motor (traction motor) or the gasoline engine is stopped.

■ **Conditions in which the gasoline engine may not stop**

The gasoline engine starts and stops automatically. However, it may not stop automatically in the following conditions:

- During gasoline engine warm-up
- During hybrid battery (traction battery) charging
- When the temperature of the hybrid battery (traction battery) is high or low
- When the heater is switched on

■ **Charging the hybrid battery (traction battery)**

- As the gasoline engine charges the hybrid battery (traction battery), the battery does not need to be charged from an outside source. However, if the vehicle is left parked for a long time the hybrid battery will slowly discharge. For this reason, be sure to drive the vehicle at least once every few months for at least 30 minutes or 10 miles (16 km). If the hybrid battery becomes fully discharged and you are unable to jump-start the vehicle with the 12-volt battery, contact your Lexus dealer.
- If the shift lever is in N, the hybrid battery (traction battery) will not be charged. Always put the shift lever in P when the vehicle is stopped. When driving in heavy traffic, operate the vehicle with the shift lever in D or S to avoid discharging the battery.
- To help prevent the 12-volt battery from becoming discharged, drive the vehicle at least once a month, and operate the accessories only when the "READY" indicator is on. When parking the vehicle, make sure the doors and trunk are closed and all lights are turned off.

■ **Charging the 12-volt battery**

→P. 536

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **After the 12-volt battery has discharged or has been changed or removed**

The gasoline engine may not stop even if the vehicle is running on the hybrid battery (traction battery). If this continues for a few days, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **Sounds and vibrations specific to a hybrid vehicle**

There may be no engine sounds or vibration even though the vehicle is able to move. For safety, apply the parking brake and make sure to shift the shift lever to P when parked.

The following sounds or vibrations may occur when the hybrid system is operating and are not a malfunction:

- Motor sounds may be heard from the engine compartment.
- Sounds may be heard from the hybrid battery (traction battery) behind the rear seats when the hybrid system starts or stops.
- Sounds from the hybrid system may be heard when the trunk lid is open.
- Sounds may be heard from the hybrid transmission when the hybrid system starts or stops.
- Engine sounds may be heard when accelerating sharply.
- Sounds may be heard due to regenerative braking when the accelerator pedal is released or the brake pedal is depressed.
- Vibration may be felt or sounds may be heard when the gasoline engine starts or stops.
- Cooling fan sounds may be heard from the air intake vents on the package tray.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Vehicle proximity notification system**

In the following cases, the vehicle proximity notification system may be difficult for surrounding people to hear.

- In very noisy areas
- In the wind or the rain

Also, as the vehicle proximity notification system is installed on the front of the vehicle, it may be more difficult to hear from the rear of the vehicle compared to the front.

■ **Hybrid battery (traction battery) cooling**

The air conditioning system may operate automatically to cool the hybrid battery (traction battery).

■ **Maintenance, repair, recycling, and disposal**

Contact your Lexus dealer regarding maintenance, repair, recycling and disposal. Do not dispose of the vehicle yourself.

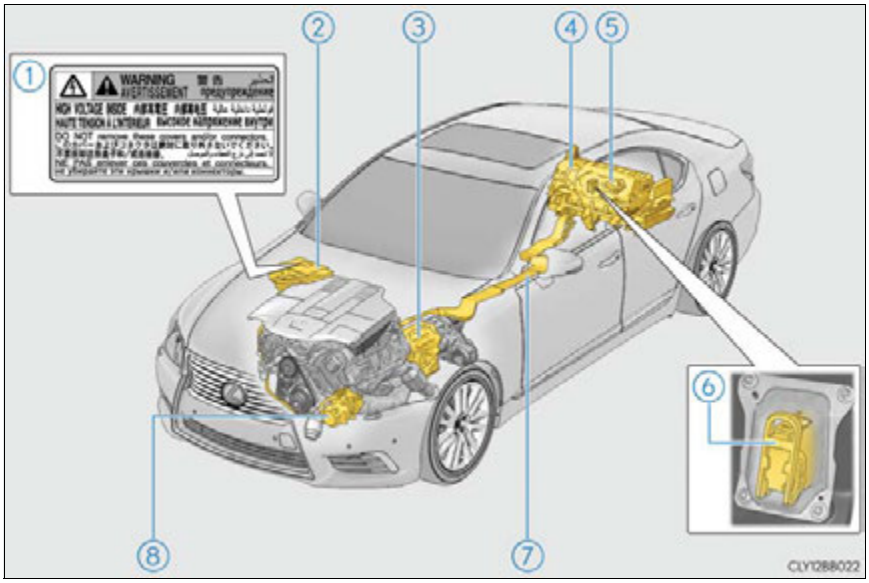
■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. on/off operation of the EV indicator) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 571)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Hybrid system precautions

Take care when handling the hybrid system, as it contains a high voltage system (about 650 V at maximum) as well as parts that become extremely hot when the hybrid system is operating. Obey the caution labels attached to the vehicle.

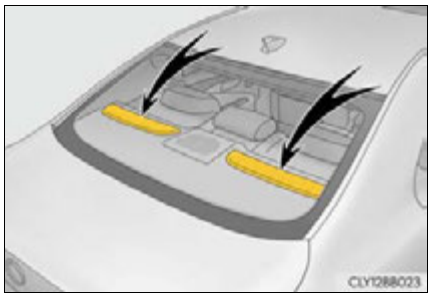


① Caution label
② Power control unit
③ Electric motor (traction motor)
④ Hybrid battery (traction battery)
⑤ DC/DC converter
⑥ Service plug
⑦ High voltage cables (orange)
⑧ Air conditioning compressor

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Hybrid battery (traction battery) air vents

There are air intake vents on the package tray for the purpose of cooling the hybrid battery (traction battery). If the vents become blocked, the hybrid battery may overheat, leading to a reduction in hybrid battery output.



Emergency shut off system

When a certain level of impact is detected by the impact sensor, the emergency shut off system blocks off the high voltage current and stops the fuel pump to minimize the risk of electrocution and fuel leakage. If the emergency shut off system activates, your vehicle will not restart. To restart the hybrid system, contact your Lexus dealer.

Hybrid warning message

A message is automatically displayed when a malfunction occurs in the hybrid system or an improper operation is attempted.

If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **If a warning light comes on, a warning message is displayed, or the 12-volt battery is disconnected**

The hybrid system may not start. In that case, try to start the system again. If the "READY" indicator does not come on, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **Running out of fuel**

When the vehicle has run out of fuel and the hybrid system cannot be started, refuel the vehicle with at least enough gasoline to make the low fuel level warning light (→P. 502) go off. If there is only a small amount of fuel, the hybrid system may not be able to start. (The minimum amount of fuel to add to make the low fuel level warning light go out is about 3.4 gal. [13 L, 2.8 Imp. gal.], when the vehicle is on a level surface. This value may vary when the vehicle is on a slope.)

■ **Electromagnetic waves**

- High voltage parts and cables on the hybrid vehicles incorporate electromagnetic shielding, and therefore emit approximately the same amount of electromagnetic waves as conventional gasoline powered vehicles or home electronic appliances.
- Your vehicle may cause sound interference in some third party-produced radio parts.

■ **Hybrid battery (traction battery)**

The hybrid battery (traction battery) has a limited service life. The lifespan of the hybrid battery (traction battery) can change in accordance with driving style and driving conditions.

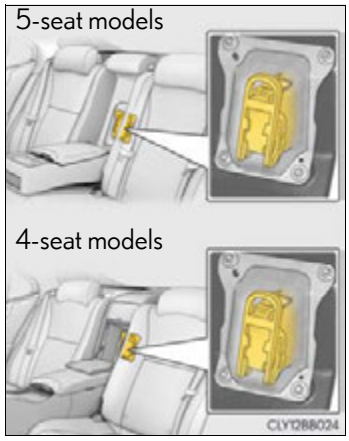
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ High voltage precautions

The vehicle has high voltage DC and AC systems as well as a 12-volt system. DC and AC high voltage is very dangerous and can cause severe burns and electric shock that may result in death or serious injury.

- Never touch, disassemble, remove or replace the high voltage parts, cables or their connectors.
- The hybrid system will become hot after starting as the system uses high voltage. Be careful of both the high voltage and the high temperature, and always obey the caution labels attached to the vehicle.
- Never try to open the service plug access hole located behind the rear seat. The service plug is used only when the vehicle is serviced and is subject to high voltage.



DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Road accident cautions

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of death or serious injury:

- Pull your vehicle off the road, apply the parking brake, shift the shift lever to P, and turn the hybrid system off.
- Do not touch the high voltage parts, cables and connectors.
- If electric wires are exposed inside or outside your vehicle, an electric shock may occur. Never touch exposed electric wires.
- If a fluid leak occurs, do not touch the fluid as it may be strong alkaline electrolyte from the hybrid battery (traction battery). If it comes into contact with your skin or eyes, wash it off immediately with a large amount of water or, if possible, boric acid solution. Seek immediate medical attention.
- If a fire occurs in the hybrid vehicle, leave the vehicle as soon as possible. Never use a fire extinguisher that is not meant for electric fires. Using even a small amount of water may be dangerous.
- If your vehicle needs to be towed, do so with four wheels raised. If the wheels connected to the electric motor (traction motor) are on the ground when towing, the motor may continue to generate electricity. This may cause an electricity leakage leading to a fire. (→P. 492)
- Carefully inspect the ground under the vehicle. If you find that liquid has leaked onto the ground, the fuel system may have been damaged. Leave the vehicle as soon as possible.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Hybrid battery (traction battery)

- Your vehicle contains a sealed nickel-metal hydride battery. Never resell, hand over or modify the hybrid battery. To prevent accidents, hybrid batteries that have been removed from a disposed vehicle are collected through Lexus dealer. Do not dispose of the battery yourself.

  Unless the battery is properly collected, the following may occur, resulting in death or serious injury:

  - The hybrid battery may be illegally disposed of or dumped, and it is hazardous to the environment or someone may touch a high voltage part, resulting in an electric shock.
  - The hybrid battery is intended to be used exclusively with your hybrid vehicle. If the hybrid battery is used outside of your vehicle or modified in any way, accidents such as electric shock, heat generation, smoke generation, an explosion and electrolyte leakage may occur.

  When reselling or handing over your vehicle, the possibility of an accident is extremely high because the person receiving the vehicle may not be aware of these dangers.

- If your vehicle is disposed of without the hybrid battery having been removed, there is a danger of serious electric shock if high voltage parts, cables and their connectors are touched. In the event that your vehicle must be disposed of, the hybrid battery must be disposed of by your Lexus dealer or a qualified service shop. If the hybrid battery is not disposed of properly, it may cause electric shock that can result in death or serious injury.

■ Emergency shut off system

- Carefully check to see if there are exposed high voltage parts or cables. Never touch the parts or cables. (→P. 81)
- Carefully inspect the ground under the vehicle. If you find that liquid has leaked onto the ground, the fuel system may have been damaged. Leave the vehicle as soon as possible.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

■ Hybrid battery air vents

- Do not put foreign objects over the air vents. The hybrid battery (traction battery) may overheat and be damaged.
- Clean the air vents regularly to prevent the hybrid battery (traction battery) from overheating.
- Do not wet or allow foreign substances to enter the air vents as this may cause a short circuit and damage the hybrid battery (traction battery).
- Do not carry large amounts of water such as water cooler bottles in the vehicle. If water spills onto the hybrid battery (traction battery), the battery may be damaged. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Immobilizer system

The vehicle's keys have built-in transponder chips that prevent the hybrid system from starting if a key has not been previously registered in the vehicle's on-board computer.

Never leave the keys inside the vehicle when you leave the vehicle.

This system is designed to help prevent vehicle theft but does not guarantee absolute security against all vehicle thefts.

The indicator light flashes after the power switch has been turned off to indicate that the system is operating.

The indicator light stops flashing after the power switch has been turned to ACCESSORY or ON mode to indicate that the system has been canceled.

System maintenance

The vehicle has a maintenance-free type immobilizer system.

Conditions affecting operation

Depending on the surrounding environment and conditions, the immobilizer system may not operate properly. This may prevent the hybrid system from starting.
(→P. 136)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Certifications for the immobilizer system**

▶ For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.

FCC ID: NI4TMIMB-1

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference; and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

▶ For vehicles sold in Canada

This device complies with Industry Canada licence-exempt RSSs. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause interference; and (2) This device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **To ensure the system operates correctly**

Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Alarm

The alarm

The alarm uses light and sound to give an alert when an intrusion is detected.

The alarm is triggered in the following situations when the alarm is set:

- A locked door or trunk is unlocked or opened in any way other than using the entry function, wireless remote control or mechanical key. (The doors will lock again automatically.)
- The hood is opened.

Setting the alarm system

Close the doors, trunk and hood, and lock all the doors. The system will be set automatically after 30 seconds.

The indicator light changes from being on to flashing when the system is set.

Deactivating or stopping the alarm

Do one of the following to deactivate or stop the alarms:

- Unlock the doors or open the trunk.
- Turn the power switch to ACCESSORY or ON mode, or start the hybrid system. (The alarm will be deactivated or stopped after a few seconds.)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

System maintenance

The vehicle has a maintenance-free type alarm system.

Items to check before locking the vehicle

To prevent unexpected triggering of the alarm and vehicle theft, make sure of the following:

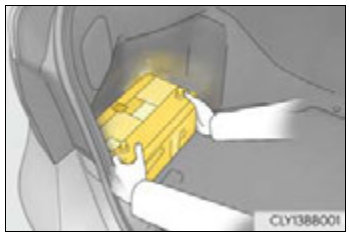
- Nobody is in the vehicle.
- The windows and moon roof are closed before the alarm is set.
- No valuables or other personal items are left in the vehicle.

Triggering of the alarm

The alarm may be triggered in the following situations:
(Stopping the alarm deactivates the alarm system.)

- A person inside the vehicle opens a door, the trunk or hood.

- The 12-volt battery is recharged or replaced when the vehicle is locked. (→P. 536)



Alarm-operated door lock

- When the alarm is operating, the doors are locked automatically to prevent intruders.
- Do not leave the key inside the vehicle when the alarm is operating, and make sure the key is not inside the vehicle when recharging or replacing the 12-volt battery.

NOTICE

To ensure the system operates correctly

Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

2. Instrument cluster

Warning lights and indicators 94

Gauges and meters 99

Multi-information display 105

Energy monitor/ consumption screen 112

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Warning lights and indicators

The warning lights and indicators on the instrument cluster, center panel and outside rear view mirrors inform the driver of the status of the vehicle's various systems.

For the purpose of explanation, the following illustration displays all warning lights and indicators illuminated.

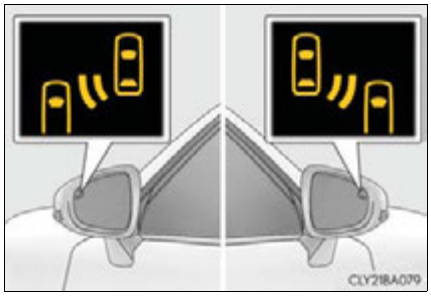
Instrument cluster

The units used on the speedometer, the tachometer and some indicators may differ depending on the target region.

Center panel

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

◆ Outside rear view mirrors (vehicles with BSM)



Warning lights

Warning lights inform the driver of malfunctions in the indicated vehicle's systems.

*1 Brake system warning light (→P. 499) (U.S.A.)

*1 Brake system warning light (→P. 499) (Canada)

*1 Charging system warning light (→P. 500)

*1 Malfunction indicator lamp (→P. 500) (U.S.A.)

*1 Malfunction indicator lamp (→P. 500) (Canada)

*1 SRS warning light (→P. 500)

*1 Slip indicator (→P. 501)

*1, 2 Brake hold operated indicator (→P. 501)

*1, 2 Parking brake indicator (→ P. 501) (U.S.A.)

*1, 2 Parking brake indicator (→P. 501) (Canada)

*1 Brake system warning light (→P. 501)

Open door warning light (→P. 502)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

*1

(U.S.A.)
ABS warning light (→P. 500)

*1

(Canada)
ABS warning light (→P. 500)

*1
Electric power steering system warning light (→P. 500)

*1, 2

(if equipped)
Pre-collision system warning light (→P. 501)

Low fuel level warning light (→P. 502)

Seat belt reminder light (→P. 502)

*1
Master warning light (→P. 502)

*1
Tire pressure warning light (→P. 503)

*1: These lights come on when the power switch is turned to ON mode to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will go off after the hybrid system is on, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a system if the lights do not come on, or go off. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

*2: The light flashes to indicate a malfunction.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Indicators

The indicators inform the driver of the operating state of the vehicle's various systems.

Turn signal indicator (→P. 229)

(U.S.A.)
Headlight indicator (→P. 236)

(Canada)
Tail light indicator (→P. 236)

Headlight high beam indicator (→P. 237)

Automatic High Beam indicator (→P. 240)

Front fog light indicator (→P. 245)

"READY" indicator (→P. 218)

EV indicator (→P. 78)

EV drive mode indicator (→P. 223)

Snow mode indicator (→227)

*1

Brake hold standby indicator (→P. 233)

*1

Brake hold operated indicator (→P. 233)

Cruise control "SET" indicator (→P. 255, 259)

Cruise control indicator (→P. 255, 259)

(if equipped)
Radar cruise control indicator (→P. 259)

(if equipped)
LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) indicator (→P. 275)

*1

"HEIGHT HIGH" indicator (→P. 287)

*1, 2

Slip indicator (→P. 291)

*1

VSC (Vehicle Stability Control) OFF indicator (→P. 291)

*1, 3

(if equipped)
Pre-collision system warning light (→P. 298)

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

*1

(U.S.A.)

Parking brake indicator (→ P. 230)

*1

(Canada)

Parking brake indicator (→P. 230)

*4

(if equipped)

BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) outside rear view mirror indicators (→P. 309)

*1

"AIR BAG ON/OFF" indicator (→P. 55)

*1: These lights come on when the power switch is turned to ON mode to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will go off after the hybrid system is on, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a system if the lights do not come on, or go off. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

*2: The light flashes to indicate that the system is operating.

*3: The light comes on when the system is turned off. The light flashes faster than usual to indicate that the system is operating.

*4: In order to confirm operation, the BSM outside rear view mirror indicators illuminate in the following situations:

- When the power switch is turned to ON mode while the BSM main switch is set to ON.
- When the BSM main switch is set to ON while the power switch is in ON mode.

If the system is functioning correctly, the BSM outside rear view mirror indicators will turn off after a few seconds.

If the BSM outside rear view mirror indicators do not illuminate or do not turn off, there may be a malfunction with the system.

If this occurs, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

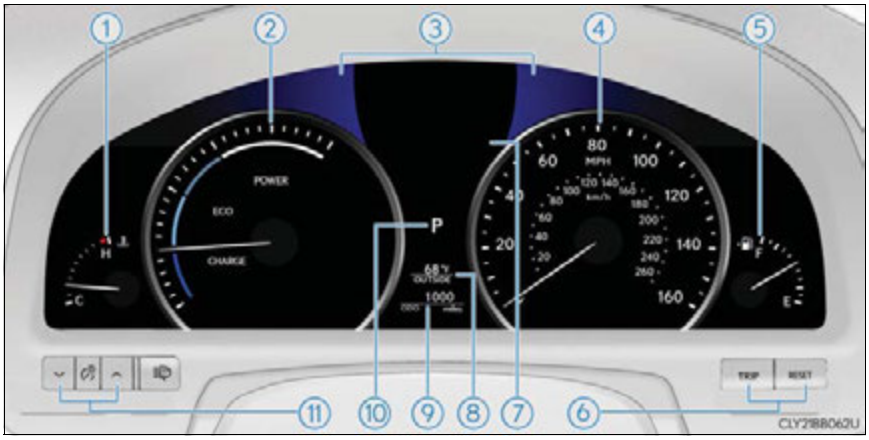
■ If a safety system warning light does not come on

Should a safety system light such as the ABS and SRS warning light not come on when you start the hybrid system, this could mean that these systems are not available to help protect you in an accident, which could result in death or serious injury. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately if this occurs.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Gauges and meters

▶ When driving mode is in other than sport mode (→P. 285)



▶ When driving mode is in sport mode (→P. 285)

The units used on the speedometer and the tachometer may differ depending on the target region.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

① Engine coolant temperature gauge

Displays the engine coolant temperature

② Hybrid System Indicator

Displays hybrid system output or regeneration level (→P. 103)

③ ECO lamp and SPORT lamp

Changes colors or brightness according to driving mode or way of driving (→P. 103)

④ Speedometer

Displays the vehicle speed

⑤ Fuel gauge

Displays the quantity of fuel remaining in the tank

⑥ Odometer/trip meter and trip meter reset switches

⑦ Multi-information display

Presents the driver with a variety of driving-related data (→P. 105)

⑧ Outside Temperature

Displays the outside temperature within the range of -40°F (-40°C) to 122°F (50°C)

⑨ Odometer, trip meter and distance until next engine oil change display

Odometer:
Displays the total distance the vehicle has been driven

Trip meter:
Displays the distance the vehicle has been driven since the meter was last reset. Trip meters "A" and "B" can be used to record and display different distances independently.

Distance until next engine oil change:
Displays the distance the vehicle can be driven until an oil change is necessary. The distance until the next engine oil change will also be displayed in the following situations.

- When the power switch is turned to ON mode.
- When a warning message indicating that oil maintenance should be performed soon or is required is displayed.
- Resetting: →P. 448

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⑩ Shift position and shift range

Displays the selected shift position or selected shift range (→P. 225)

⑪ Instrument panel light control switches

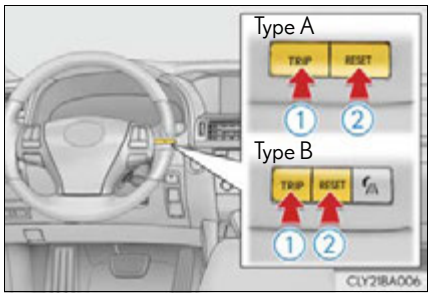
⑫ Tachometer

Displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute

Changing the odometer and trip meter display

① Switches the display

② Resets the trip meter currently displayed to "0"

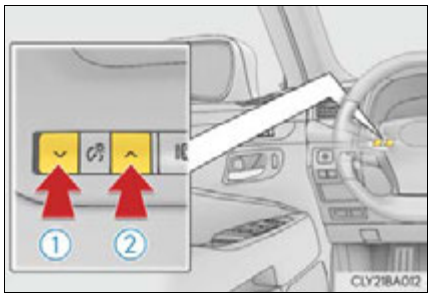


Instrument panel light control

The brightness of the instrument panel lights can be adjusted.

① Darker

② Brighter



DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **The meters and display illuminate when**

The power switch is in ON mode.

■ **Instrument panel brightness adjustment**

- Meters:

  The brightness level of the meters when the surroundings are bright (day mode) and dark (night mode) can be adjusted individually. However, when in day mode, adjusting the brightness level will also change the brightness level of night mode.

- Clock, air conditioning temperature display and switch lights:

  The brightness level of the clock, air conditioning temperature display and switch lights are linked with the brightness level of meter night mode.

■ **Light dimmer control (Changing to night mode)**

The brightness level of the meter, clock and air conditioning temperature display lights will change to night mode only when the surroundings are dark and the tail lights are on.

■ **Automatic adjustment of the brightness level of the meters**

The brightness level of the meters will be adjusted automatically according to the brightness of the surroundings detected by the light sensor. However, the brightness level of the meters will not be adjusted automatically in the following conditions.

- Day mode: When the brightness of the meter is adjusted to the brightest manually
- Night mode: When the brightness of the meter is adjusted to the brightest or darkest manually

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Hybrid System Indicator

① Charge area

Shows regenerative charging.

② Hybrid Eco area

Shows that gasoline engine power is not being used very often.

The gasoline engine will automatically stop and restart under various conditions.

③ Eco area

Shows that the vehicle is being driven in an Eco-friendly manner.

④ Power area

Shows that an Eco-friendly driving range is being exceeded (during full power driving etc.)

- Hybrid System Indicator is displayed when the driving mode is other than the sport mode.
- By keeping the indicator needle within Eco area, more Eco-friendly driving can be achieved.
- Charge area indicates regeneration* status. Regenerated energy will be used to charge the battery.

*: When used in this manual, "regeneration" refers to the conversion of energy created by the movement of the vehicle into electrical energy.

ECO lamp and SPORT lamp

- When all of the following conditions are satisfied and Eco-friendly driving is being performed, ECO lamp (blue) will illuminate. (ECO lamp will become brighter the more Eco-friendly your driving is. Also, while the vehicle is stopped or the acceleration exceeds Zone of Eco driving, ECO lamp turns off. (→P. 103) However, when Eco drive mode is selected, while the vehicle is stopped or the acceleration exceeds Zone of Eco driving, ECO lamp does not turn off.):
  - Driving with the shift lever in D.
  - Normal mode, comfort mode or Eco drive mode is selected, and EV drive mode and snow mode is not in use.
  - The vehicle speed is approximately 80 mph (130 km/h) or below.
- When sport mode is selected, SPORT lamp (red) will illuminate.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Tachometer**

Hybrid System Indicator switches to the tachometer when driving mode is in sport mode.

■ **Engine speed**

On hybrid vehicles, engine speed is precisely controlled in order to help improve fuel efficiency and reduce exhaust emissions etc.
There are times when the engine speed that is displayed may differ even when vehicle operation and driving conditions are the same.

■ **Outside temperature display**

In the following situations, the correct outside temperature may not be displayed, or the display may take longer than normal to change.

- When stopped, or driving at low speeds (less than 12 mph [20 km/h])
- When the outside temperature has changed suddenly (at the entrance/exit of a garage, tunnel, etc.)

■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. on/off operation of ECO lamp) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 572)

⚠ NOTICE

■ **To prevent damage to the engine and its components**

- Do not let the indicator needle of the tachometer enter the red zone, which indicates the maximum engine speed.
- The engine may be overheating if the engine coolant temperature gauge is in the red zone (H). In this case, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place, and check the engine after it has cooled completely. (→P. 538)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Multi-information display

Display contents

The multi-information display presents the driver with a variety of driving-related data.

- Trip information (→P. 106)

  Displays driving range, fuel consumption and other cruising related information

- Drive monitor (→P. 108)

  Displays either the average fuel consumption after refueling or the driving range

- Intuitive parking assist display* (Refer to "NAVIGATION AND MULTIMEDIA SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".)
- Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range display* (if equipped) (→P. 259)
- LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) display* (if equipped) (→P. 279)
- Warning messages (→P. 509)

  Automatically displayed when a malfunction occurs in one of the vehicle's systems. Display can be switched by pressing the "DISP" button. (→P. 106)

*: Automatically displayed when the system is used. Display can be switched by pressing the "DISP" button. (→P. 106)

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Trip information

Switching the display

Items displayed can be switched by pressing the "DISP" button.

The information displayed on the drive monitor will not be displayed on the trip information screen.

Energy monitor

→P. 113

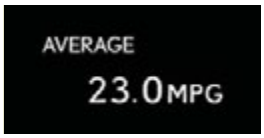
Driving range

Displays the estimated approximate distance that can be driven with the quantity of fuel remaining

- This distance is computed based on your average fuel consumption. As a result, the actual distance that can be driven may differ from that displayed.
- When only a small amount of fuel is added to the tank, the display may not be updated.
  When refueling, turn the power switch off. If the vehicle is refueled without turning the power switch off, the display may not be updated.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

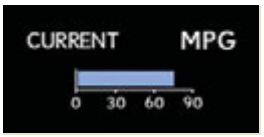
Average fuel consumption



Displays the average fuel consumption since the function was reset

- The function can be reset by pressing the "DISP" button for longer than 1 second when the average fuel consumption is displayed.
  On vehicles with a navigation system, the "Past Record" screen on the Remote Touch screen will also be updated. (→P. 116)
- Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

Current fuel consumption



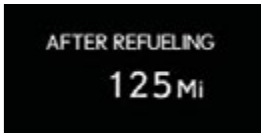
Displays the current rate of fuel consumption

Average fuel consumption after refueling

Displays the average fuel consumption since the vehicle was last refueled

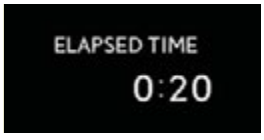
Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

Distance after refueling



Displays the distance the vehicle has been driven since the vehicle was last refueled

Elapsed time



Displays the elapsed time since it was last reset

The function can be reset by pressing the "DISP" button for longer than 1 second when the elapsed time is displayed.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Average vehicle speed

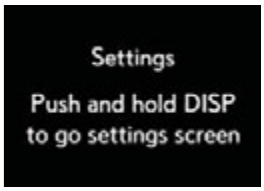
Displays the average vehicle speed since the function was reset

The function can be reset by pressing the "DISP" button for longer than 1 second when the average vehicle speed is displayed.

Tire inflation pressure

Displays inflation pressure of each tire

Customization



The multi-information display settings can be changed (→P. 109)

Drive monitor

Either average fuel consumption after refueling or driving range can be selected and displayed.

If displayed on the drive monitor, other trip information or warning messages can be displayed simultaneously.

For display and selection procedures, follow the "Setting up the displays".

The information displayed on the drive monitor will not be displayed on the trip information screen.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Setting up the displays

1 While the vehicle is stopped, press the "DISP" button until the "Settings" screen appears.

2 Press and hold the "DISP" button until the screen changes.

3 Press and hold the "DISP" button after selecting the desired setting item by pressing the "DISP" button.

4 Press and hold the "DISP" button after selecting the desired setting by pressing the "DISP" button.

The display goes back to step 3.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

5 Press and hold the “DISP” button after selecting the “EXIT” by pressing the “DISP” button.

The display goes back to step 1.

■ **System check display**

After turning the power switch to ON mode, “SYSTEM CHECK” is displayed while system operation is checked.

■ **Tire inflation pressure**

- It may take a few minutes to display the tire inflation pressure after the power switch is turned to ON mode. It may also take a few minutes to display the tire inflation pressure after inflation pressure has been adjusted.
- “---” may be displayed if the tire position information cannot be determined due to unfavorable radio wave conditions.
- Tire inflation pressure changes with temperature. The displayed values may also be different from the values measured using a tire pressure gauge.

■ **When disconnecting and reconnecting 12-volt battery terminals**

The following information data will be reset:

- Driving range
- Average fuel consumption
- Average fuel consumption after refueling
- Distance after refueling
- Elapsed time
- Average vehicle speed

■ **Liquid crystal display**

Small spots or light spots may appear on the display. This phenomenon is characteristic of liquid crystal displays, and there is no problem continuing to use the display.

■ **Customization**

Setting of available languages can be changed. (Customizable features →P. 572)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ The information display at low temperatures

Allow the interior of the vehicle to warm up before using the liquid crystal information display. At extremely low temperatures, the information display monitor may respond slowly, and display changes may be delayed.
For example, there is a lag between the driver's shifting and the new gear number appearing on the display. This lag could cause the driver to downshift again, causing rapid and excessive engine braking and possibly an accident resulting in death or injury.

■ Cautions during setting up the display

As the hybrid system needs to be operating during setting up the display, ensure that the vehicle is parked in a place with adequate ventilation. In a closed area such as a garage, exhaust gases including harmful carbon monoxide (CO) may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

⚠ NOTICE

■ During setting up the display

To prevent 12-volt battery discharge, ensure that the hybrid system is operating while setting up the display features.

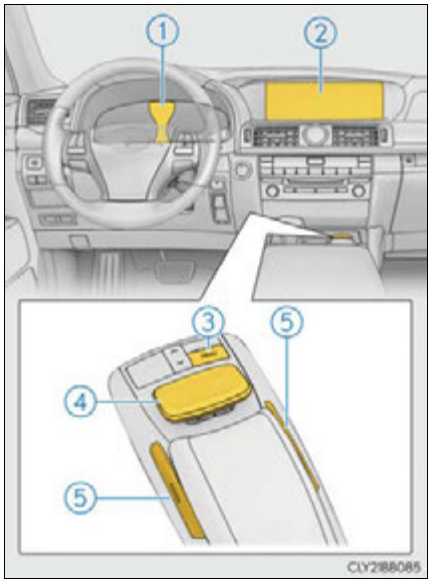
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Energy monitor/consumption screen

You can view the status of your hybrid system on the multi-information display and the Remote Touch screen.

The energy monitor or consumption screen can be displayed and operated on the side display.

① Multi-information display
② Remote Touch screen
③ “MENU” button
④ Remote Touch knob
⑤ “ENTER” button



DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Energy monitor

■ Remote Touch screen (→P. 332)

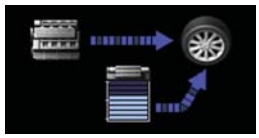
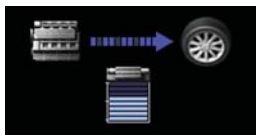
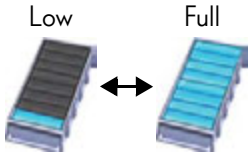
Press the "MENU" button on the Remote Touch, then select on the "Menu" screen, and then select "Fuel Consumption".

If the "Trip Information" or "Past Record" screen is displayed, select "Energy".

■ Multi-information display

Press the "DISP" button on the steering wheel several times to select the energy monitor display.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

	Remote Touch screen	Multi-information display
When the vehicle is powered by the electric motor (traction motor)		
When the vehicle is powered by both the gasoline engine and the electric motor (traction motor)		
When the vehicle is powered by the gasoline engine		
When the vehicle is charging the hybrid battery (traction battery)		
When there is no energy flow		
Hybrid battery (traction battery) status		

These images are examples only, and may vary slightly from actual conditions.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Fuel consumption

Trip information

Press the "MENU" button on the Remote Touch, then select on the "Menu" screen, and then select "Fuel Consumption".

If the "Energy Monitor" or "Past Record" screen is displayed, select "Trip Information".

① Resetting the consumption data

② Fuel consumption in the past 15 minutes

③ Current fuel consumption

④ Regenerated energy in the past 15 minutes

One symbol indicates 30 Wh. Up to 5 symbols are shown.

⑤ Average vehicle speed since the hybrid system was started.

⑥ Elapsed time since the hybrid system was started.

⑦ Cruising range (→P. 117)

Average fuel consumption for the past 15 minutes is divided by color into past averages and averages attained since the power switch was last turned to ON mode. Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

The image is an example only, and may vary slightly from actual conditions.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Past record

Press the "MENU" button on the Remote Touch, then select on the "Menu" screen, and then select "Fuel Consumption".

If the "Energy Monitor" or "Trip Information" screen is displayed, select "Past Record".

① Resetting the past record data

② Best recorded fuel consumption

③ Average fuel consumption

④ Previous fuel consumption record

⑤ Updating the average fuel consumption data

The average fuel consumption history is divided by color into past averages and the average fuel consumption since the last updated. Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

The image is an example only, and may vary slightly from actual conditions.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Updating the past record data**

Update the average fuel consumption by selecting “Update” to measure the current fuel consumption again.

■ **Resetting the data**

The fuel consumption data can be deleted by selecting “Clear”.

■ **Cruising range**

Displays the estimated maximum distance that can be driven with the quantity of fuel remaining.

This distance is computed based on your average fuel consumption.
As a result, the actual distance that can be driven may differ from that displayed.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Using the side display

Vehicle information can be displayed on the side display (→P. 338), then select "<" or ">" to select the desired screen.

▶ Fuel consumption

Displays the average fuel consumption and regenerated energy for the past 10 minutes in 1 minute intervals, as well as the cruising range.

▶ Past record

Displays the average fuel consumption and highest fuel consumption.

▶ Trip information

Displays the cruising range, average fuel consumption and the amount of time elapsed since the hybrid system was started.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

▶ Energy monitor

Displays the hybrid system operation and energy recovery states.

The image is an example only, and may vary slightly from actual conditions.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

3-1. Key information

Keys 122

3-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

Smart access system with push-button start 127

Wireless remote control 143

Doors 147

Trunk 151

3-3. Adjusting the seats

Front seats 158

Power rear seat 164

Driving position memory 174

Rear seat position memory 179

Head restraints 181

3-4. Adjusting the steering wheel and mirrors

Steering wheel 184

Inside rear view mirror 185

Outside rear view mirrors 187

3-5. Opening, closing the windows and moon roof

Power windows 191

Moon roof 195

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Keys

The keys

The following keys are provided with the vehicle.

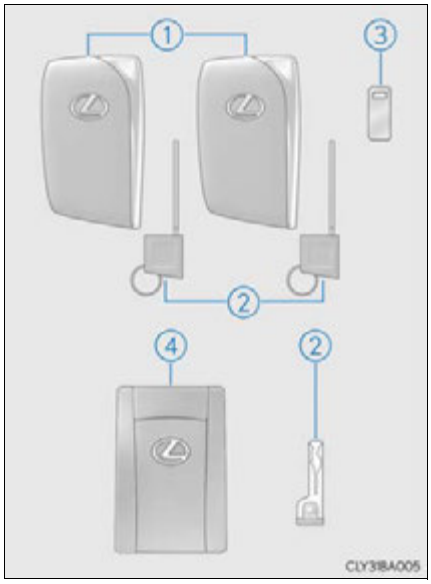
① Electronic keys
- Operating the smart access system with push-button start (→P. 127)
- Operating the wireless remote control function (→P. 143)

② Mechanical keys

③ Key number plate

④ Card key (electronic key) (if equipped)

Operating the smart access system with push-button start (→P. 127)



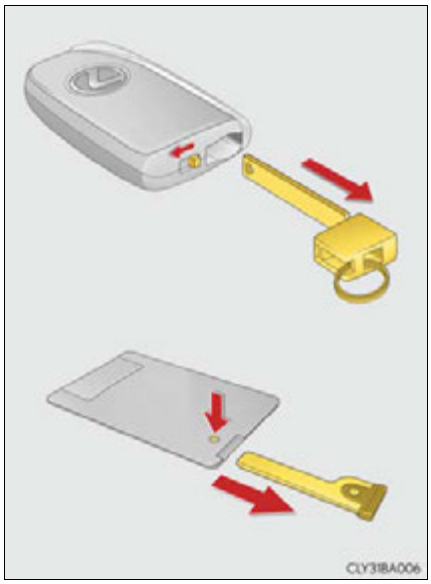
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Using the mechanical key

To take out the mechanical key:

Electronic keys: Slide the release lever and take the key out.

Card key: Press the lock release button and take the key out.



The mechanical key can only be inserted in one direction, as the key only has grooves on one side. If the key cannot be inserted in a lock cylinder, turn it over and re-attempt to insert it.

After using the mechanical key, store it in the electronic key. Carry the mechanical key together with the electronic key. If the electronic key battery is depleted or the entry function does not operate properly, you will need the mechanical key.
(→P. 531)

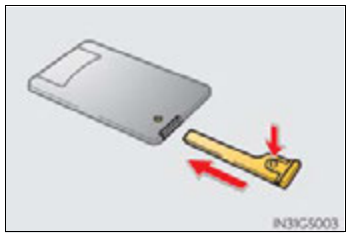
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Electronic keys**

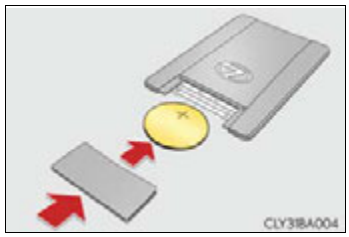
- Part of the electronic key uses leather. Refer to P. 426 for details on cleaning the leather portion.
- When cleaning the metallic portion, wet a cloth and firmly wring out any excess water from it, then thoroughly wipe off any dirt.
- When not using the electronic key for an extended period of time, store it in a dry place of normal temperature away from direct sunlight and interior light after removing any dirt.

■ **Card key (if equipped)**

- The card key is not waterproof.
- The mechanical key that is stored inside the card key should be used only if a problem arises, such as when the card key does not operate properly.
- If it is difficult to take out the mechanical key, push down the lock release button using a pen tip etc. If it is still difficult to pull it out, use a coin etc.
- To store the mechanical key in the card key, insert it while pressing the lock release button.



- If the battery cover is not installed and the battery falls out or if the battery was removed because the key got wet, reinstall the battery with the positive terminal facing the Lexus emblem.



■ **When required to leave the vehicle's key with a parking attendant**

Turn the trunk opener main switch off and lock the glove box as circumstances demand. (→P. 152, 370)
Remove the mechanical key for your own use and provide the attendant with the electronic key only.

■ **If you lose your mechanical keys**

New genuine mechanical keys can be made by your Lexus dealer using the other mechanical key and the key number stamped on your key number plate. Keep the plate in a safe place such as your wallet, not in the vehicle.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

When riding in an aircraft

When bringing an electronic key onto an aircraft, make sure you do not press any buttons on the electronic key while inside the aircraft cabin. If you are carrying an electronic key in your bag etc., ensure that the buttons are not likely to be pressed accidentally. Pressing a button may cause the electronic key to emit radio waves that could interfere with the operation of the aircraft.

NOTICE

To prevent key damage

- Do not drop the keys, subject them to strong shocks or bend them.
- Do not expose the keys to high temperatures for a long period of time.
- Do not get the keys wet or wash them in an ultrasonic washer etc.
- Do not attach metallic or magnetic materials to the keys or place the keys close to such materials.
- Do not disassemble the keys.
- Do not attach a sticker or anything else to the surface of the electronic key.
- Do not place the keys near objects that produce magnetic fields, such as TVs, audio systems and induction cookers, or medical electrical equipment, such as low-frequency therapy equipment.

Handling the electronic keys

- Observe the following to prevent deterioration, changes in shape and damage to the leather area.
  - Do not carry the electronic key together with hard objects, such as other keys or accessories.
  - Do not expose the electronic keys to direct sunlight or interior light for extended periods of time.
  - Do not place the electronic key on items made of vinyl, plastic or that contain wax.
    They may stick to the leather surface if the items become warm.
  - Do not get the electronic key wet.
    Even if the electronic gets slightly wet, dry it with a soft cloth and let it dry in the shade.
  - Do not touch the electronic key with hands that have oil, medicine, hand cream or perfume on them.
  - When cleaning, do not use a leather cleaner, solvents or leather filling agents.
- Because the leather portion is dyed, if the electronic key touches clothing while it has sweat and moisture adhered to it, there is a possibility that the clothing may change color.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

■ **In case of a smart access system with push-button start malfunction or other key-related problems**

Take your vehicle with all the electronic keys provided with your vehicle, including the card key to your Lexus dealer.

■ **When an electronic key is lost**

If the electronic key remains lost, the risk of vehicle theft increases significantly. Visit your Lexus dealer immediately with all remaining electronic keys and the card key that was provided with your vehicle.

■ **Handling the card key**

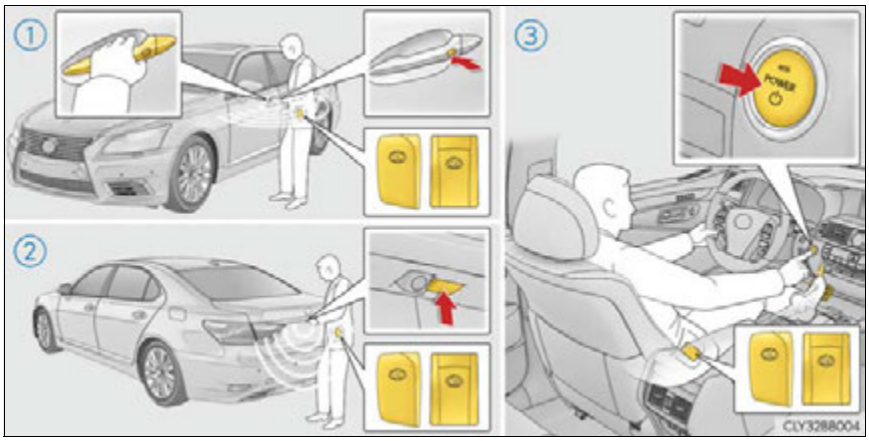
- Do not apply excess force when inserting the mechanical key into the card key. Doing so may damage the card key.
- If the battery or card key terminals get wet, the battery may corrode.
  If the key is dropped into water, or if drinking water etc. is spilled on the key, immediately remove the battery cover and wipe the battery and terminals. (To remove the battery cover, lightly grasp and pull it.) If the battery is corroded, have your Lexus dealer replace the battery.
- Do not crush the battery cover or use a screwdriver to remove the battery cover. Forcibly removing the battery cover may bend or damage the key.
- If the battery cover is frequently removed, the battery cover may become loose.
- When installing the battery, make sure to check the direction of the battery. Installing the battery in the wrong direction may cause the battery to deplete rapidly.
- The surface of the card key may be damaged, or its coating may peel off in the following situations:
  - The card key is carried together with hard objects, such as coins and keys.
  - The card key is scraped with a sharp object, such as the tip of a mechanical pencil.
  - The surface of the card key is wiped with thinner or benzene.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Smart access system with push-button start

Function summary

The following operations can be performed simply by carrying the electronic key (including the card key) on your person, for example in your pocket. (The driver should always carry the electronic key.)



1. Locks and unlocks the doors (→P. 129)
2. Opens the trunk (→P. 129)
3. Starts the hybrid system (→P. 218)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Operation signals**

Doors:
A buzzer sounds and the emergency flashers flash to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked. (Locked: Once; Unlocked: Twice)

Trunk:
A buzzer sounds to indicate that the trunk has been unlocked.

Windows and moon roof:
A buzzer sounds to indicate that the windows and moon roof are operating.

■ **Security feature**

If a door is not opened within approximately 60 seconds after the vehicle is unlocked, the security feature automatically locks the vehicle again.

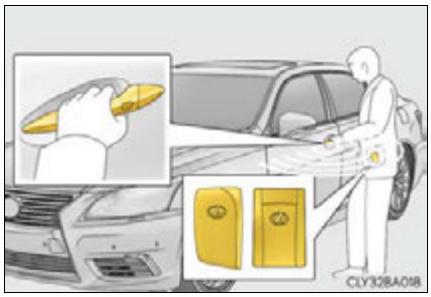
■ **Welcome light illumination control**

The side marker, parking, tail and license plate lights automatically turn on at night when the doors are unlocked using the entry function or wireless remote control if the headlight switch is in the "AUTO" position.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Unlocking and locking the doors

Grip the driver's door handle to unlock the door. Grip the passenger's door handle to unlock all the doors.*

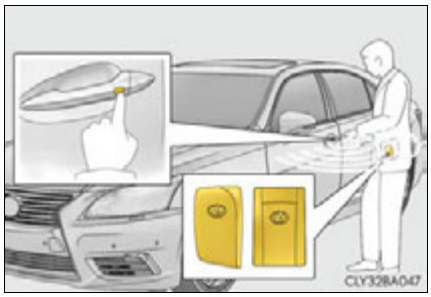


Make sure to touch the sensor on the back of the handle.

The door cannot be unlocked for 3 seconds after the door is locked.

*: The door unlock settings can be changed. (→P. 134)

Press the lock button to lock the door.

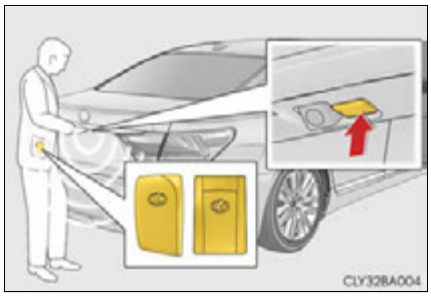


Check that the door is securely locked.

Pressing and holding the button closes the windows and moon roof.

Opening the trunk

Press the button.



The trunk lid automatically opens fully.

When all the doors are unlocked using one of the following methods, the trunk can be opened without the electronic key:

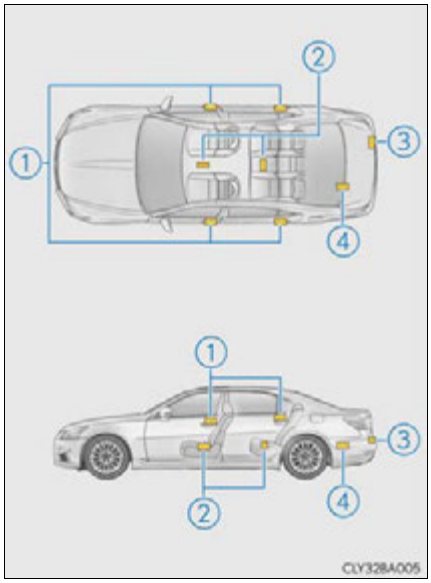
- Entry function
- Wireless remote control
- Door lock switches
- Automatic door unlocking system
- Mechanical key

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Antenna location and effective range

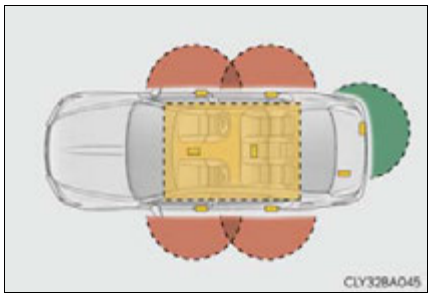
■ Antenna location

① Antennas outside the cabin
② Antennas inside the cabin
③ Antenna outside the trunk
④ Antenna inside the trunk



DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Effective range (areas within which the electronic key is detected)



When locking or unlocking the doors

The system can be operated when the electronic key is within about 2.3 ft. (0.7 m) of an outside door handle. (Only the doors detecting the key can be operated.)

When opening the trunk

The system can be operated when the electronic key is within about 2.3 ft. (0.7 m) of the trunk release button.

When starting the hybrid system or changing power switch modes

The system can be operated when the electronic key is inside the vehicle.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Alarms and warning indicators**

A combination of exterior and interior alarms as well as warnings displayed on the multi-information display is used to prevent theft of the vehicle and unforeseeable accidents resulting from erroneous operation. Perform the appropriate correction procedure described in the following table:

Alarm	Situation	Correction procedure
Exterior alarm sounds once for 2 seconds.	An attempt was made to lock the doors using the entry function while the electronic key was still inside the passenger compartment.	Retrieve the electronic key from the passenger compartment and lock the doors again.
	The trunk was closed with the electronic key inside and all doors were locked.	Retrieve the electronic key from the trunk and close the trunk lid.
Exterior alarm sounds once for 60 seconds.	An attempt was made to exit the vehicle and lock the doors while carrying the electronic key without first turning the power switch off.	Turn the power switch off and lock the doors again.
Exterior alarm sounds once for 5 seconds.	An attempt was made to lock the vehicle while a door was open.	Close all of the doors and lock the doors again.
Interior alarm pings continuously.	The power switch was turned to ACCESSORY mode while the driver's door was open (or the driver's door was opened while the power switch was in ACCESSORY mode).	Turn the power switch off and close the driver's door.
	The power switch was turned off while the driver's door was open.	Close the driver's door.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Alarm	Situation	Correction procedure
Interior alarm sounds continuously.*1	When the power switch is in ON or ACCESSORY mode, an attempt was made to open the door and exit the vehicle, and the shift lever was not in P.	Shift the shift lever to P and turn the power switch off.
Interior and exterior alarms sound continuously.*1	When the power switch is in ON or ACCESSORY mode, the driver's door was closed after the key was carried outside the vehicle, and the shift lever was not in P.	Shift the shift lever to P, turn the power switch off and close the driver's door again.
Interior alarm pings once.*1	The electronic key has a low battery.	Replace the electronic key battery.
	An attempt was made to start the hybrid system without the electronic key being present, or the electronic key was not functioning normally.	Start the hybrid system with the electronic key present.*2
Interior alarm pings once and exterior alarm sounds 3 times.*1	The driver's door was closed after the key was carried outside the vehicle, and the power switch was not turned off.	Turn the power switch off and close the driver's door again.
	An occupant carried the electronic key outside the vehicle and closed the door while the power switch was not off.	Bring the electronic key back into the vehicle.

*1: A warning message will be shown on the multi-information display in the instrument cluster.

*2: If the hybrid system does not start when the electronic key is inside the vehicle, the electronic key battery may be depleted or there may be difficulties receiving the signal from the key. (→P. 136)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

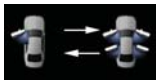
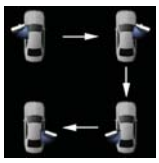
■ Switching the door unlock function

It is possible to set which doors the entry function unlocks using the wireless remote control.

1 Turn the power switch off.

2 Press and hold , or for approximately 5 seconds while pressing and holding .

The setting changes each time an operation is performed, as shown below. (When changing the setting continuously, release the buttons, wait for at least 5 seconds, and repeat step 2.)

Multi-information display	Unlocking function	Beep
	Hold the driver's door handle to unlock only the driver's door.	Exterior: Beeps 3 times Interior: Rings once
	Hold a passenger's door handle to unlock all the doors.	
	Hold the door handle to unlock the front and rear doors on your side.	Exterior: Beeps 4 times Interior: Rings once
	Hold the door handle to unlock the door.	Exterior: Beeps once Interior: Rings once
	Hold a door handle to unlock all doors.	Exterior: Beeps twice Interior: Rings once

To prevent unintended triggering of the alarm, unlock the doors using the wireless remote control and open and close a door once after the settings have been changed. (If a door is not opened within 60 seconds after is pressed, the doors will be locked again and the alarm will automatically be set.)
In case that the alarm is triggered, immediately stop the alarm. (→P. 90)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Battery-saving function**

In the following circumstances, the entry function is disabled in order to prevent the 12-volt battery from discharging and the electronic key battery from depleting.

- When the entry function has not been used for 30 days or more
- When the electronic key has been left within approximately 6 ft. (2 m) of the vehicle for 10 minutes or more

The system will resume operation when

- The vehicle is locked using the door handle lock switch when carrying the electronic key on your person.
- The vehicle is locked/unlocked using the wireless remote control function. (→P. 143)
- The vehicle is locked/unlocked using the mechanical key. (→P. 531)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Conditions affecting operation

The smart access system with push-button start uses weak radio waves. In the following situations, the communication between the electronic key and the vehicle may be affected, preventing the smart access system with push-button start, wireless remote control and immobilizer system from operating properly. (Ways of coping: →P. 531)

- When the electronic key battery is depleted
- Near a TV tower, electric power plant, gas station, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise
- When carrying a portable radio, cellular phone, cordless phone or other wireless communication device
- When the electronic key is in contact with, or is covered by the following metallic objects
  - Cards to which aluminum foil is attached
  - Cigarette boxes that have aluminum foil inside
  - Metallic wallets or bags
  - Coins
  - Hand warmers made of metal
  - Media such as CDs and DVDs
- When multiple electronic keys are in the vicinity
- When other wireless keys (that emit radio waves) are being used nearby
- When carrying the electronic key together with the following devices that emit radio waves
  - Another vehicle's electronic key or a wireless key that emits radio waves
  - Personal computers or personal digital assistants (PDAs)
  - Digital audio players
  - Portable game systems
- If window tint with a metallic content or metallic objects are attached to the rear window

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Note for the entry function

- Even when the electronic key is within the effective range (detection areas), the system may not operate properly in the following cases:
  - The electronic key is too close to the window or outside door handle, near the ground, or in a high place when the doors are locked or unlocked.
  - The electronic key is near the ground or in a high place, or too close to the rear bumper center when the trunk is opened.
  - The electronic key is on the instrument panel, rear package tray or floor, or in the door pockets or glove box when the hybrid system is started or power switch modes are changed.
- Do not leave the electronic key on top of the instrument panel or near the door pockets when exiting the vehicle. Depending on the radio wave reception conditions, it may be detected by the antenna outside the cabin and the door will become lockable from the outside, possibly trapping the electronic key inside the vehicle.
- As long as the electronic key is within the effective range, the doors may be locked or unlocked by anyone. However, only the doors detecting the electronic key can be used to unlock the vehicle.
- Even if the electronic key is not inside the vehicle, it may be possible to start the hybrid system if the electronic key is near the window.
- The doors may unlock if a large amount of water splashes on the door handle, such as in the rain or in a car wash when the electronic key is within the effective range. (The doors will automatically be locked after approximately 60 seconds if the doors are not opened and closed.)
- Gripping the door handle when wearing a glove may not unlock the door.
- If the wireless remote control is used to lock the doors when the electronic key is near the vehicle, there is a possibility that the door may not be unlocked by the entry function. (Use the wireless remote control to unlock the doors.)
- A sudden approach to the effective range or door handle may prevent the doors from being unlocked. In this case, return the door handle to the original position and check that the doors unlock before pulling the door handle again.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **When the vehicle is not driven for extended periods**

To prevent theft of the vehicle, do not leave the electronic key within 6 ft. (2 m) of the vehicle.

■ **Alarm**

Using the smart access system with push-button start to lock the doors will set the alarm system. (→P. 90)

■ **To operate the system properly**

- Make sure to carry the electronic key when operating the system. Do not get the electronic key too close to the vehicle when operating the system from the outside of the vehicle.

  Depending on the position and holding condition of the electronic key, the key may not be detected correctly and the system may not operate properly. (The alarm may go off accidentally, or the door lock prevention function may not operate.)

- Do not leave the electronic key inside the trunk.
  The key confinement prevention function may not operate, depending on the location of the key (close to a spare tire, the inside edge of the trunk), conditions (inside a metal bag, close to metallic objects) and the radio waves in the surrounding area. (→P. 153)

■ **If the smart access system with push-button start does not operate properly**

- Locking and unlocking the doors and trunk: Use the mechanical key. (→P. 531)
- Starting the hybrid system: →P. 533

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Electronic key battery depletion**

- The standard battery life is 1 to 2 years. (The card key battery life is about a year and a half.)
- If the battery is low, an alarm will sound in the cabin when the hybrid system is started or stopped. (→P. 132)
- The battery becomes depleted even if the electronic key is not used because the key always receives radio waves. If the smart access system with push-button start or the wireless remote control does not operate, or the detection area becomes smaller, the battery may be depleted. Replace the battery when necessary. (→P. 478)
- To avoid serious deterioration, do not leave the electronic key within 3 ft. (1 m) of the following electrical appliances that produce a magnetic field:
  - TVs
  - Personal computers
  - Cellular phones, cordless phones and battery chargers
  - Recharging cellular phones or cordless phones
  - Table lamps
  - Induction cookers

■ **When the electronic key battery is fully depleted**

→P. 478

■ **Customization**

Settings (e. g. smart access system with push-button start) can be changed. (Customizable features →P. 571)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Certification for the smart access system with push-button start**

▶ For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.

FCC ID: NI4TMLF-4

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference; and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

▶ For vehicles sold in Canada

This device complies with Industry Canada licence-exempt RSSs. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause interference; and (2) This device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Caution regarding interference with electronic devices

- People with implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should keep away from the smart access system with push-button start antennas. (→P. 130)
  The radio waves may affect the operation of such devices. If necessary, the entry function can be disabled. Ask your Lexus dealer for details, such as the frequency of radio waves and timing of the emitted radio waves. Then, consult your doctor to see if you should disable the entry function.
- Users of any electrical medical device other than implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should consult the manufacturer of the device for information about its operation under the influence of radio waves.
  Radio waves could have unexpected effects on the operation of such medical devices.

Ask your Lexus dealer for details on disabling the entry function.

■ When using the smart access system with push-button start and operating the power windows or moon roof

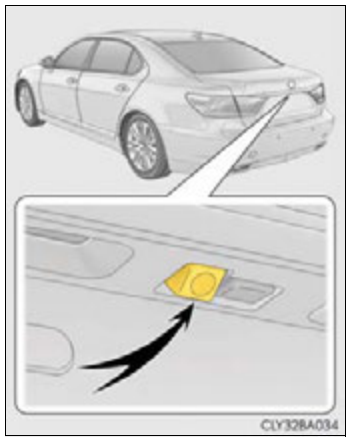
Operate the power window or moon roof after checking to make sure that there is no possibility of any passenger having any of their body parts caught in the window or moon roof. Also, do not allow children to operate the smart access system with push-button start. It is possible for children and other passengers to get caught in the power window or moon roof.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

■ When opening the trunk

Do not press the Lexus parking assist monitor system camera by mistake.
If the camera or surrounding area receives a strong impact, the camera may move off its installed position and/or angle.

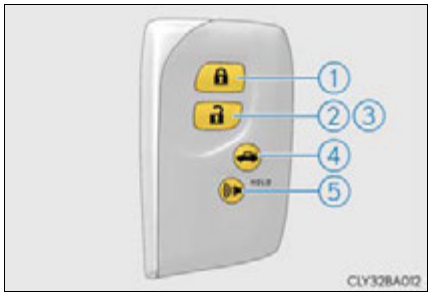


DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Wireless remote control

Function summary

The wireless remote control can be used to lock and unlock the vehicle.



① Locks all the doors

Check that the door is securely locked.

② Unlocks all the doors

Pressing the button unlocks the driver's door. Pressing the button again within 3 seconds unlocks the other doors.

③ Opens the windows and moon roof (press and hold)*

④ Opens the trunk (press and hold)

The trunk lid automatically opens fully.

⑤ Sounds the alarm (press and hold) (→P. 144)

*: This setting must be changed using the customize function. (→P. 571)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Operation signals**

Doors:
A buzzer sounds and the emergency flashers flash to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked. (Locked: once; Unlocked: twice)

Trunk:
A buzzer sounds to indicate that the trunk has been opened.

Windows and moon roof:
A buzzer sounds to indicate that the windows and moon roof are operating.

■ **Welcome light illumination control**

→P. 128

■ **Door lock buzzer**

If an attempt to lock the doors is made when a door is not fully closed, a buzzer sounds continuously for 5 seconds. Fully close the door to stop the buzzer, and lock the vehicle once more.

■ **Panic mode**

When is pressed for longer than about one second, an alarm will sound intermittently and the vehicle lights will flash to deter any person from trying to break into or damage your vehicle.

To stop the alarm, press any button on the electronic key.

■ **Security feature**

→P. 128

■ **Alarm**

Using the wireless remote control to lock the doors will set the alarm system. (→P. 90)

■ **Conditions affecting operation**

→P. 136

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **If the wireless remote control does not operate properly**

Locking and unlocking the doors and trunk: Use the mechanical key. (→P. 531)

■ **Electronic key battery depletion**

→P. 139

■ **When the electronic key battery is fully depleted**

→P. 478

■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. wireless remote control system) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 571)

■ **Certification for wireless remote control**

▶ For vehicles sold in Hawaii, Guam and Puerto Rico

FCC ID: NI4TMRF-002

FCC ID: HYQ14ACX

FCC ID: HYQ14AEB

NOTE:
This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING:
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

▶ For vehicles sold in the mainland U.S.A.

FCC ID: NI4TMRF-002

FCC ID: HYQ14ACX

FCC ID: HYQ14AEB

FCC ID: NI4TMRF-001

FCC ID: HYQ14ADF

FCC ID: HYQ14AEF

NOTE:
This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING:
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

▶ For vehicles sold in Canada

NOTE:
This device complies with Industry Canada's licence-exempt RSSs.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
(1) This device may not cause interference; and
(2) This device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Doors

Unlocking and locking the doors

The vehicle can be locked and unlocked using the entry function, wireless remote control or door lock switches.

◆ Entry function

→P. 127

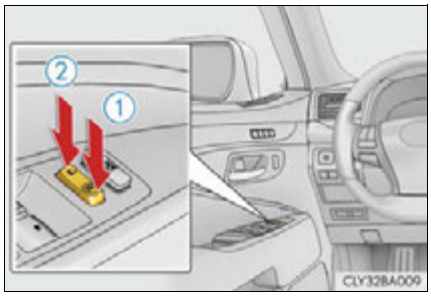
◆ Wireless remote control

→P. 143

◆ Door lock switches

① Locks all the doors

② Unlocks all the doors

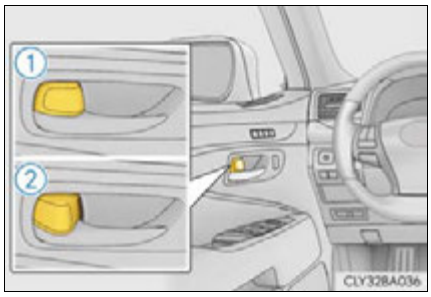


◆ Inside lock buttons

① Locks the door

② Unlocks the door

The front doors can be opened by pulling the inside handle even if the lock buttons are in the lock position.



DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Locking the front doors from the outside without a key

1 Move the inside lock button to the lock position.

2 Close the door.

The door cannot be locked if the power switch is in ACCESSORY or ON mode, or the electronic key is left inside the vehicle.

The key may not be detected correctly and the door may be locked.

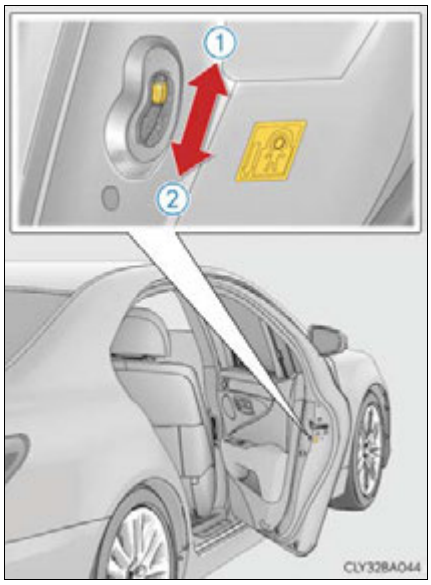
Rear door child-protector lock

The door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle when the lock is set.

① Unlock

② Lock

These locks can be set to prevent children from opening the rear doors. Push down on each rear door switch to lock both rear doors.



DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Automatic door locking and unlocking systems

The following functions can be set or canceled:

For instructions on customizing, refer to P. 571.

Function	Operation
Speed linked door locking function	All doors are automatically locked when vehicle speed is approximately 12 mph (20 km/h) or higher.
Shift position linked door locking function	All doors are automatically locked when shifting the shift lever to position other than P.
Shift position linked door unlocking function	All doors are automatically unlocked when shifting the shift lever to P.
Driver's door linked door unlocking function	All doors are automatically unlocked when driver's door is opened.

Impact detection door lock release system

In the event that the vehicle is subject to a strong impact, all the doors are unlocked. Depending on the force of the impact or the type of accident, however, the system may not operate.

Door closer

In the event that a door is left slightly open, the door closer will automatically close it to the fully closed position.

- The door closer will operate regardless of the power switch mode.
- The door closer will not function if the door has been closed while pulling the inside or outside door handle.
- The door can be opened by pulling the inside or outside door handle, even when the door closer is operating (except when the lock button is in the lock position or the child-protector lock is set).
- The motor sound may be heard for several seconds after the door closer closes the door. This does not indicate a malfunction.

Using the mechanical key

The doors can also be locked and unlocked with the mechanical key. (→P. 531)

If a wrong key is used

The key cylinder rotates freely to isolate inside mechanism.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Customization

Settings (e.g. unlocking function using a key) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 571)

⚠ CAUTION

To prevent an accident

Observe the following precautions while driving the vehicle.
Failure to do so may result in a door opening and an occupant throwing out of the vehicle, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Ensure that all doors are properly closed and locked.
- Do not pull the inside handle of the doors while driving.
  Be especially careful for the front doors, as the doors may be opened even if the inside lock buttons are in locked position.
- Set the rear door child-protector locks when children are seated in the rear seats.

Door closer

In the event that a door is left slightly open, the door closer will automatically close it to the fully closed position.
If the child-protector lock is set, the door closer will not stop during operation even if an attempt is made to open the door from inside the vehicle. Be careful not to catch fingers or anything else in the door. Failure to do so may result in serious injury.

⚠ NOTICE

To prevent door closer malfunction

Do not frequently repeat opening and closing of doors, or apply excessive force to a door while the door closer is operating.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Trunk

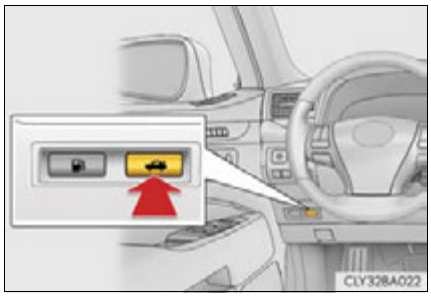
The trunk can be opened using the trunk opener, entry function or wireless remote control.

The trunk can be closed using the trunk closer.

Opening the trunk from inside the vehicle

Press the opener switch.

The trunk lid automatically opens fully.



Opening the trunk from outside the vehicle

■ **Entry function**

→P. 127

■ **Wireless remote control**

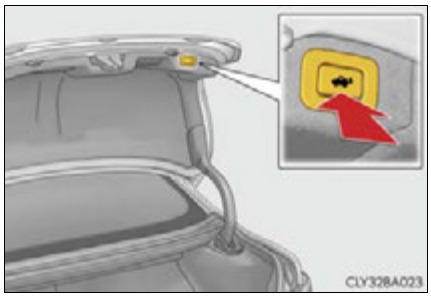
→P. 143

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Trunk closer switch

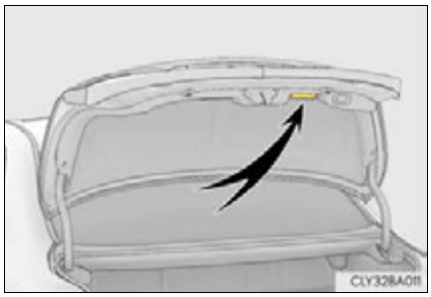
Pressing the switch closes the trunk lid automatically. (A buzzer sounds.)

Pressing the switch while the trunk lid is closing opens the trunk lid again.



When closing the trunk

Using the trunk grip, lower the trunk without applying force to the side and push the trunk down from the outside to close it.



Luggage security system

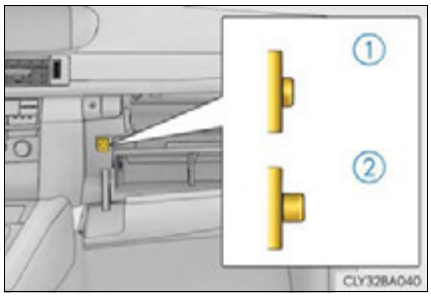
The trunk opener switch can be temporarily disabled to protect luggage stored in the trunk against theft.

Turn the main switch in the glove box off to disable the trunk opener.

① On

② Off

The trunk lid cannot be opened even with the wireless remote control or the entry function.



DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Trunk lid light/trunk light**

The trunk lid light/trunk light turns on when the trunk is opened.

■ **Trunk easy closer**

In the event that the trunk lid is left slightly open, the trunk easy closer will automatically close it to the fully closed position.

■ **Function to prevent the trunk being locked with the electronic key inside (when all the doors are locked)**

Closing the trunk lid with the electronic key left inside the trunk will sound an alarm. In this case, the trunk lid can be opened by pressing the button on the trunk lid.

■ **Overload protection function**

The trunk lid will not operate when excessive load is present on the top of the trunk lid.

■ **Fall-down protection function**

While the trunk lid is opening automatically, applying excessive force to it will stop the opening operation to prevent the trunk lid from rapidly falling down.

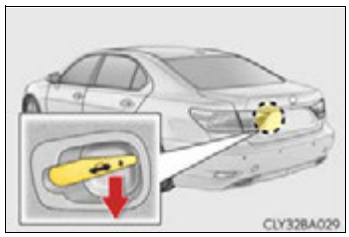
■ **Jam protection function**

While the trunk lid is closing automatically, the trunk lid will stop closing and open if something gets caught.

■ **Internal trunk release lever**

The trunk lid can be opened by pulling the glow-in-the-dark lever located on the inside of the trunk lid to the side.

The lever will continue to glow for some time after the trunk lid is closed.



■ **Using the mechanical key**

The trunk can be also opened using the mechanical key. (→P. 532)

■ **When leaving a key to the vehicle with a parking attendant**

→P. 124

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ Before driving

- Make sure that the trunk lid is fully closed. If the trunk lid is not fully closed, it may open unexpectedly while driving and hit near-by objects or luggage in the trunk may be thrown out, causing an accident.
- Do not allow children to play in the trunk.
  If a child is accidentally locked in the trunk, they could suffer from heat exhaustion, suffocation or other injuries.
- Do not allow a child to open or close the trunk lid.
  Doing so may cause the trunk lid to open unexpectedly, or cause the child's hands, head, or neck to be caught by the closing trunk lid.

■ Important points while driving

Never let anyone sit in the trunk. In the event of sudden braking or a collision, they are susceptible to death or serious injury.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Using the trunk

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause parts of the body to be caught, resulting in serious injury.

- Remove any heavy loads, such as snow and ice, from the trunk lid before opening it. Failure to do so may cause the trunk lid to suddenly shut again after it is opened.
- When opening or closing the trunk lid, thoroughly check to make sure the surrounding area is safe.
- If anyone is in the vicinity, make sure they are safe and let them know that the trunk is about to open or close.
- Use caution when opening or closing the trunk lid in windy weather as it may move abruptly in strong wind.
- The trunk lid may suddenly shut if it is not opened fully. It is more difficult to open or close the trunk lid on an incline than on a level surface, so beware of the trunk lid unexpectedly opening or closing by itself. Make sure that the trunk lid is fully open and secure before using the trunk.

- When closing the trunk lid, take extra care to prevent your fingers etc. from being caught.
- When closing the trunk lid, make sure to press it lightly on its outer surface. If the trunk handle is used to fully close the trunk lid, it may result in hands or arms being caught.

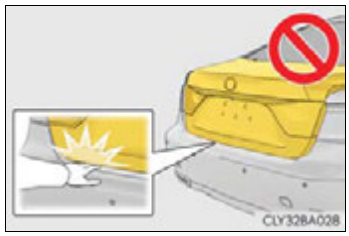
- Do not attach any accessories other than genuine Lexus parts to the trunk lid. Such additional weight on the trunk lid may cause the lid to suddenly shut again after it is opened.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Trunk easy closer

In the event that the trunk lid is left slightly open, the trunk easy closer will automatically close it to the fully closed position. It takes several seconds before the trunk easy closer begins to operate. Be careful not to catch fingers or anything else in the trunk lid, as this may cause bone fractures or other serious injuries.



■ Power trunk opener and closer

Observe the following precautions when operating the power trunk opener and closer.
Failure to do so may cause serious injury.

- Check the safety of the surrounding area to make sure there are no obstacles or anything that could cause any of your belongings to get caught.
- If anyone is in the vicinity, make sure they are safe and let them know that the trunk is about to open or close.
- If the trunk closer switch is pressed while the trunk lid is opening during automatic operation, the trunk lid stops opening. Take extra care when on an incline, as the trunk lid may open or close suddenly.
- On an incline, the trunk lid may suddenly shut after it opens automatically. Make sure the trunk lid is fully open and secure before using the trunk.
- In the following situations, the power trunk opener and closer may detect an abnormality and automatic operation may be stopped. In this case, the trunk lid has to be operated manually. Take extra care in this situation, as the stopped trunk lid may suddenly shut, causing an accident.
  - When the trunk lid contacts an obstacle
  - When the 12-volt battery voltage suddenly drops, such as when the power switch is turned to ON mode or the hybrid system is started during automatic operation
- Do not attach any accessories other than genuine Lexus parts to the trunk lid. The power trunk opener and closer may not operate, causing itself to malfunction, or the trunk lid may suddenly shut again after it is opened.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Jam protection function

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause serious injury.

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the trunk lid fully closes. Be careful not to catch fingers or anything else in the trunk lid.
- The jam protection function may not work depending on the shape of the object that is caught. Be careful not to catch fingers or anything else.

⚠ NOTICE

■ To prevent trunk easy closer malfunctions

Do not apply force to the trunk lid while the trunk easy closer is operating.

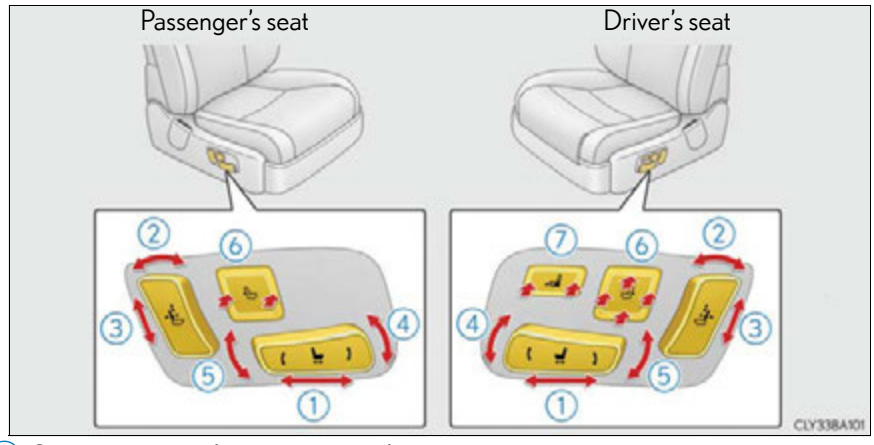
■ To prevent damage to the power trunk opener and closer

- Make sure that there is no luggage or snow on the trunk lid before operating the power trunk opener and closer. In addition, make sure that there is no ice between the trunk lid and frame that prevents movement of the trunk lid. Operating the power trunk opener and closer when excessive load is present on the trunk lid may cause a malfunction.
- Do not apply excessive force to the trunk lid while the power trunk opener and closer is operating.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Front seats

Adjustment procedure



① Seat position adjustment switch

The height of the driver's head restraint is automatically adjusted simultaneously with the seat position adjustment operation.

② Seatback angle adjustment switch

③ Head restraint height adjustment switch (→P. 181)

④ Seat cushion (front) angle adjustment switch

⑤ Vertical height adjustment switch

⑥ Lumbar/pelvic support adjustment switch

Driver's seat: firmness, vertical, backward and forward positioning
Front passenger's seat: firmness, backward and forward positioning

⑦ Seat cushion length adjustment switch

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Operating the front passenger's seat from the driver's seat

▶ 5-seat models

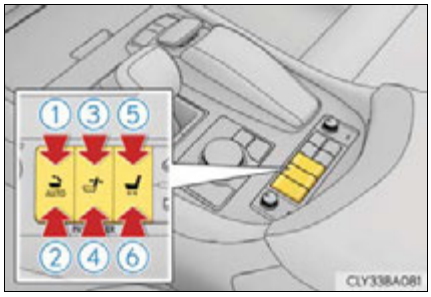
① Tilts the seatback forward

② Tilts the seatback backward

③ Moves the seat forward

④ Moves the seat backward

▶ 4-seat models



① Tilts the seatback forward and moves the seat forward

② Tilts the seatback backward and moves the seat backward

If the rear seat is not in the neutral position, pressing the button once will move the rear seat to the neutral position. Pressing the button again will move the front passenger's seat to the neutral position.

③ Tilts the seatback forward

④ Tilts the seatback backward

⑤ Moves the seat forward

⑥ Moves the seat backward

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Operating the front passenger's seat from the rear seat (4-seat models)

① Moves the front passenger's seat forward

The signal beeps when the seat operation stops at the forward limit.

② Moves the front passenger's seat backward

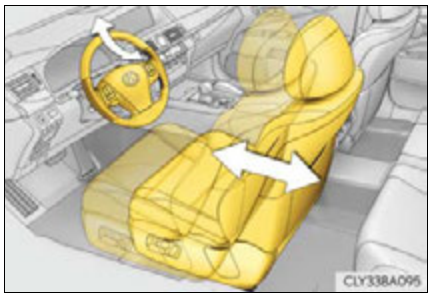
The seatback will return to the neutral position. If the head restraint is folded, it will rise before the seatback moves.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Power easy access system

The seat and steering wheel are automatically adjusted to allow the driver or front passenger to enter and exit the vehicle easily.

■ Driver's seat



When all of the following have been performed, the driver's seat and steering wheel are automatically adjusted to a position that allows driver to enter and exit the vehicle easily.

- The shift lever has been shifted to P.
- The power switch has been turned off.
- The driver's seat belt has been unfastened.

When any of the following has been performed, the driver's seat and steering wheel automatically return to their original positions.

- The power switch has been turned to ACCESSORY mode.
- The driver's seat belt has been fastened.

■ Front passenger's seat

If the front passenger's door is opened while the vehicle is stopped, the adjusted lumbar/pelvic support, etc. will return to its original position.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Operating the front passenger's seat from the rear seat (4-seat models)**

The front passenger's seat can be operated when the power switch is in ON mode. However, in the following situations, the front passenger's seat does not move even when the switch is operated:

- The weight of an occupant or heavy object etc. is detected on the front passenger's seat.
- The front passenger's seat belt is fastened.
- The front passenger's door is open. (The front seat will not move forward.)

■ **Seat cushion automatic length adjustment (driver's seat)**

If the front of the cushion gets too close to the area around the instrument panel when the seat position is being adjusted, the seat cushion will automatically retract.

■ **Seat operation automatic stop function (4-seat models)**

If a front seat is likely to come into contact with the retractable table or the ottoman during seat operation or activation of the power easy access system, a buzzer will sound and seat slide operation will be stopped partway.
(A warning message will be shown on the multi-information display.)

■ **Power easy access system operations**

- When exiting the vehicle, the power easy access system may not operate if the seat is already close to the rearmost position, etc.
- If the seat position is adjusted during the power easy access system operation, the operation will stop.
- If the seat position is adjusted during or after the power easy access system operation when the driver is exiting the vehicle, the power easy access system will not operate when entering the vehicle.

■ **Customization**

The distance that the driver's seat moves backward during the power easy access system can be changed. (Customizable features →P. 571)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ When adjusting the seat position

- Take care when adjusting the seat position to ensure that other passengers are not injured by the moving seat.
- Do not put your hands under the seat or near the moving parts to avoid injury. Fingers or hands may become jammed in the seat mechanism.

■ Seat adjustment

To reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt during a collision, do not recline the seat more than necessary.
If the seat is too reclined, the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen, or your neck may contact the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.
Adjustments should not be made while driving as the seat may unexpectedly move and cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.

■ Operating the front passenger's seat from the driver's seat or rear seat

Do not operate the front passenger's seat when a passenger is seated in it. In addition, do not let anyone sit down in the front passenger's seat while the seat is being operated or when the head restraint is being folded. The front passenger may catch their legs between the instrument panel and seat, or the head restraint may interfere with their head, resulting in injury.

■ When adjusting the seat positions

Make sure to leave enough space around the feet so they do not get stuck.

⚠ NOTICE

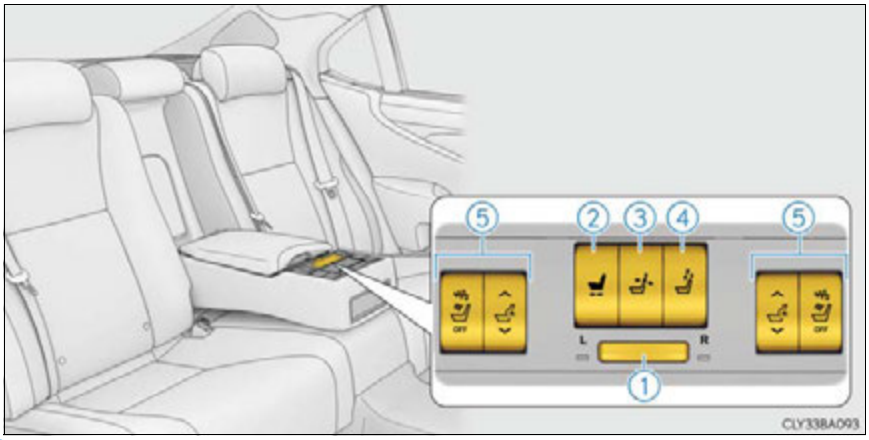
■ Operating the front passenger's seat from the driver's seat or rear seat

Before operating the front passenger's seat, make sure that there is no luggage or any other objects on the seat or in the footwell that could prevent its operation.
Failure to do so may result in excess force being applied, causing damage to the seat and/or the luggage.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Power rear seat

▶ 5-seat models



① Seat selection switch

The indicator light for the seat that can be operated comes on.

② Seat position adjustment switch

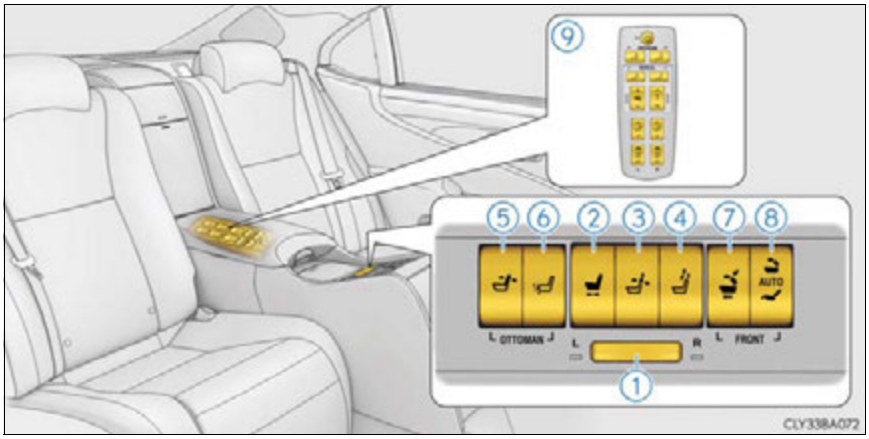
③ Seatback upper angle adjustment switch

④ Head restraint height adjustment switch (→P. 181)

⑤ Pelvic support seat switches

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

▶ 4-seat models



The right-hand rear seat is a relaxation seat, which is equipped with a seatback angle adjustment function and an ottoman.

① Seat selection switch

The indicator light for the seat that can be operated comes on.

② Seat position adjustment switch

③ Seatback upper angle adjustment switch

④ Head restraint height adjustment switch (→P. 181)

⑤ Seatback angle adjustment switch

⑥ Ottoman angle adjustment switch

⑦ Front passenger's seat control switch (→P. 160)

⑧ Relaxation mode switch

⑨ Rear seat relaxation system/pelvic support seat controller

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

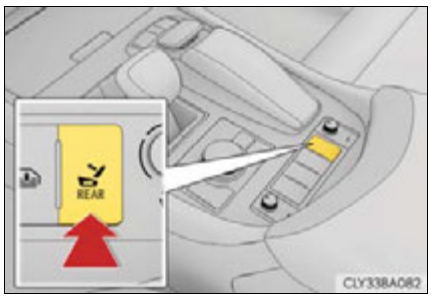
Seat return function linked to the door opening operation

The seat will return to the neutral position automatically when the door is opened for easier entry and exit of the vehicle.

Returning the rear seat from the front seats

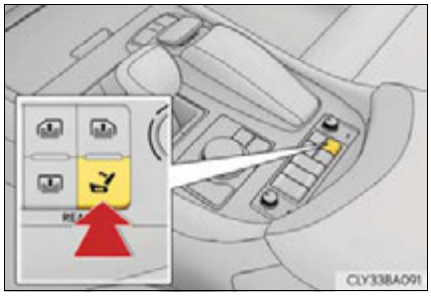
▶ 5-seat models

The seat will return to the neutral position while the button is pressed and held.



▶ 4-seat models

The seat will return to the neutral position while the button is pressed and held.

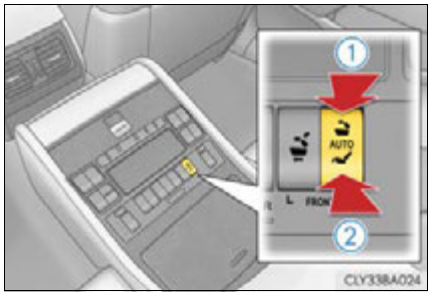


DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Relaxation mode operation (relaxation seat)

Relaxation mode can be entered by operating a switch. The front passenger seat will move forward, and then the seatback of the relaxation seat will recline and the ottoman will simultaneously rise.

Pressing the switch will cause a beep to sound and operation will start.



① Enters relaxation mode

② Returns to the neutral position

To stop the operation part-way through, press either side of the switch again, or press any other seat adjustment button.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Pelvic support seat with seat vibrator

Pelvic support seat with seat vibrator, which features a support plate mounted in the seatback and a vibration function, is equipped on each outer rear seat. The support plate position and vibration speed can be adjusted according to the occupant's preferences.

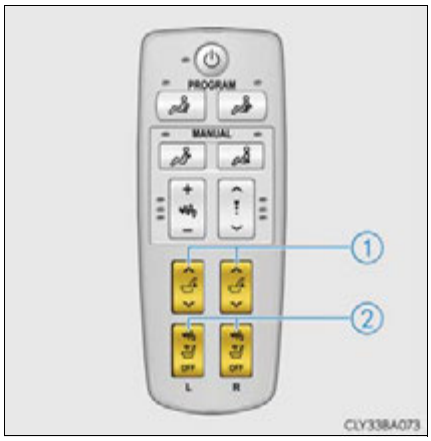
▶ 5-seat models

① Support plate position adjustment switch

② Vibration switch

Press to operate the vibration function. Vibration will start in the same speed level as when previously operated. Each time is pressed, the speed changes between 3 levels. Pressing "OFF" stops the vibration function.

▶ 4-seat models



① Support plate position adjustment switch

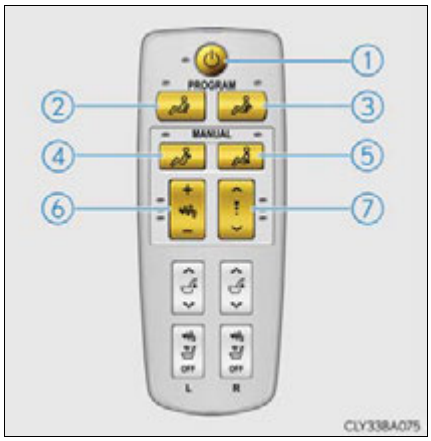
② Vibration switch

Press to operate the vibration function. Vibration will start in the same speed level as when previously operated. Each time is pressed, the speed changes between 3 levels. Pressing "OFF" stops the vibration function.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Rear seat relaxation system (4-seat models)

Pneumatic chambers built into the right-hand rear seat provide the occupant with pressure of different speeds and intensities.



① Turns the system on and off

If no buttons are selected within approximately 3 minutes of operating this switch, the system will automatically turn off.

② Starts the program

Partial pressure for the whole back

③ Starts the program

Stretches and relaxes the lower back

④ Starts operation for the upper back

⑤ Starts operation for the lower back

⑥ Adjusts the intensity of the air pressure

3 intensity levels are available.

⑦ Adjusts the speed of the air unit

3 speed levels are available.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

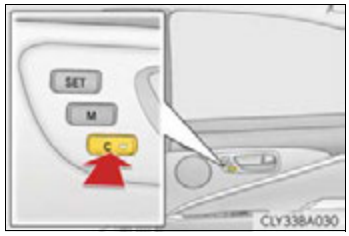
■ **Seat return function linked to the door opening operation**

● Operating conditions
The power switch is in ON mode.

● Canceling operation partway through
During the seat return operation, performing either of the following actions cancels the operation:

- Pressing the "SET", "M" or "C" button (→P. 179)
- Pressing any of the seat adjustment switches

● Disabling the seat return function
Pressing the "C" button will disable the seat return function.
The indicator light comes on when the seat return function is disabled.
Pressing the button again will enable the seat return function.



● Seat return operation after turning the power switch off
The seat will automatically return to the neutral position if the door is opened within approximately 45 seconds of the power switch being turned off.

■ **Relaxation mode (relaxation seat)**

● Operating conditions
Relaxation mode can be entered when the power switch is in ON mode. However, in the following situations, relaxation mode cannot be entered even when the switch is operated:

- The weight of an occupant or heavy object etc. is detected on the front passenger's seat.
- The front passenger's seat belt is fastened.
- The front passenger's door is open. (The front seat will not move forward.)

● Operation after turning the power switch off
The rear seat can be returned to the neutral position as long as the relaxation mode switch is operated within approximately 45 seconds of the power switch being turned off.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Pelvic support seat with seat vibrator**

● Operating conditions
The power switch is in ON mode.

● Automatic stop function

- Vibration will automatically stop approximately 15 minutes after starting.
- Vibration will automatically stop if the adjacent rear door is opened.

● Pelvic support seat return function
The position of the support plate will automatically return to the neutral position if the adjacent rear door is opened.

■ **Rear seat relaxation system (4-seat models)**

● Operating conditions
The power switch is in ON mode.

● Automatic stop function
Each operation will automatically stop approximately 15 minutes after starting.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Power rear seats

- Seat adjustment
  To reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt during a collision, do not recline the seat more than necessary.
  If the seat is too reclined, the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen, or your neck may contact the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.
  Adjustments should not be made while driving as the seat may unexpectedly move and cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.
- When adjusting the seat position and ottoman angle (4-seat models)
  Keep sufficient footwell space to prevent your feet from being caught by the front seat.
- When returning the rear seats to the neutral position
  To avoid injuring the rear passengers, wait until they have gotten out of the vehicle before operating the switch.
- Using the ottoman (4-seat models)
  - Do not sit on the ottoman.
    If someone sits on the ottoman, the seat belt cannot be fitted properly, and they may be thrown from the seat, resulting in death or serious injury in the event of an accident or sudden braking.
  - When getting in or out of the vehicle, retract the ottoman. If the ottoman is not retracted, it may cause a fall, resulting in injury.
  - Do not operate the ottoman when the vehicle is moving.
  - Do not allow anyone to put their hands or feet under the passenger seat when stowing the ottoman.

■ Using the pelvic support seat with seat vibrator and rear seat relaxation system

- Those who are pregnant, have recently given birth, or suffer from ailments requiring rest (heart disease etc.) should consult a doctor before use.
- Do not allow children to use the pelvic support seat vibration function or the rear seat relaxation function.
- Do not use immediately after consuming a meal or alcohol, or for an extended period of time.
- If you feel sick while using the pelvic support seat vibration function or the rear seat relaxation function, immediately discontinue use.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

■ To prevent an ottoman malfunction (4-seat models)

- Do not place any objects in the rear seat footwell that could prevent the operation of the ottoman.
- Do not place heavy luggage on the ottoman.
- Do not place any objects under the ottoman while it is raised for use. These objects may interfere with the ottoman being folded, causing damage to the ottoman or the objects themselves.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Driving position memory

This feature automatically adjusts the front seats, steering wheel, outside rear view mirrors and height of seat belt shoulder anchor to suit your preferences.

Driving position memory

Your preferred driving position (the position of the driver's seat, steering wheel, outside rear view mirrors and height of seat belt shoulder anchor) can be recorded and recalled by pressing a switch.

Three different driving positions can be recorded into memory.

■ Recording procedure

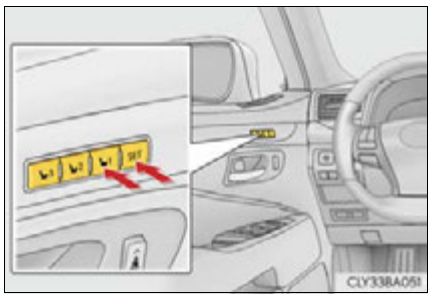
1 Check that the shift lever is in P.

2 Turn the power switch to ON mode.

3 Adjust the driver's seat, steering wheel, outside rear view mirrors and seat belt shoulder anchor height to the desired positions.

4 Press the "SET" switch, then within 3 seconds press switch "1", "2" or "3" until the buzzer sounds.

If the selected switch has already been preset, the previously recorded position will be overwritten.



To record the position of the front passenger's seat, adjust the front passenger's seat to the desired position and perform step 4 using the switches on the front passenger's side.

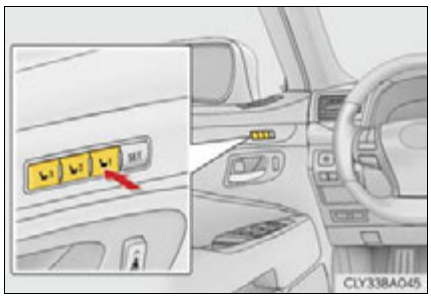
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Recall procedure

1 Check that the shift lever is in P.

2 Turn the power switch to ON mode.

3 Press one of the switches for the driving position you want to recall until the buzzer sounds.



When you want to stop the position recall operation part-way through

Perform any of the following operations:

- Press the "SET" switch.
- Press switch "1", "2" or "3".
- Operate any of the seat adjustment switches (only cancels seat position recall).
- Operate the tilt and telescopic steering control switch (only cancels steering wheel position recall).
- Operate the seat belt shoulder anchor height adjusting switch (only cancels height of seat belt shoulder anchor recall).

Front passenger's seat position recall limitations (4-seat models)

When retractable table or ottoman is used, rearward memories cannot be recalled.

Operating the driving position memory after turning the power switch off

Driver's seat:

Recorded driving positions (except the steering wheel position) can be recalled up to 180 seconds after the driver's door is opened and up to 60 seconds after it is closed again.

Front passenger's seat:

Recorded seat positions can be recalled up to 180 seconds after the front passenger's door is opened.

In order to correctly use the driving position memory function

If a seat position is already in the furthest possible position and the seat is operated in the same direction, the recorded position may be slightly different when it is recalled.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Memory recall function (driver's side only)

Each electronic key (including a card key) can be registered to recall your preferred driving position.

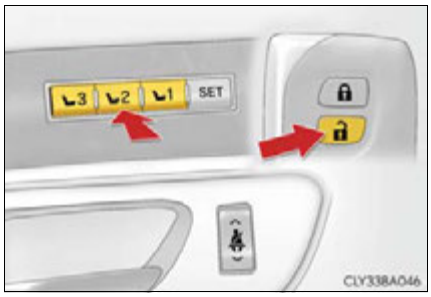
■ Registering procedure

Record your driving position to switch "1", "2" or "3" before performing the following:

▶ Using the wireless remote control

1 Turn the power switch off and close the driver's door.

2 While pressing the desired switch ("1", "2" or "3"), press on the wireless remote control until the buzzer sounds.



To prevent unintended triggering of the alarm, open and close a door once after a driving position has been recorded. (If a door is not opened within 30 seconds after is pressed, the doors will be locked again and the alarm will automatically be set.)
In case that the alarm is triggered, immediately stop the alarm.
(→P. 90)

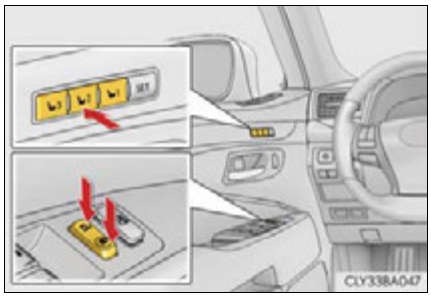
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

▶ Using the door lock switch

Carry only one of the keys (including the card key) to which you want to link the driving position. If 2 or more keys are in the vehicle, the driving position cannot be linked properly.

1 Turn the power switch off and close the driver's door.

2 While pressing the recalled switch, press and hold the door lock switch (either lock or unlock) until the buzzer sounds.



■ Recall procedure

1 Carry the electronic key that has been registered to the driving position, and then unlock and open the driver's door using the smart access system with push-button start or wireless remote control.

The driving position will move to the recorded position (not including the steering wheel). However, the seat will move to a position slightly behind the recorded position in order to make entering the vehicle easier.

If the driving position is in a position that has already been recorded, the seat and outside rear view mirrors will not move.

2 Turn the power switch to ACCESSORY mode or fasten your seatbelt.

The seat and steering wheel will move to the recorded position.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Cancelation procedure

▶ Using the wireless remote control

1 Turn the power switch off and close the driver's door.

2 While pressing the "SET" switch, press on the wireless remote control until the buzzer sounds.

▶ Using the door lock switch

Carry only the key you want to cancel and then close the driver's door. If 2 or more keys are in the vehicle, the driving position cannot be canceled properly.

1 Turn the power switch off and close the driver's door.

2 While pressing the "SET" switch, press the lock or unlock side on the door lock switch until the buzzer sounds.

■ Recalling the driving position using the memory recall function

- Different driving positions can be registered for each electronic key. Therefore, the driving position that is recalled may be different depending on the key being carried.
- If a door other than the driver's door is unlocked with the smart access system with push-button start, the driving position cannot be recalled. In this case, press the driving position switch which has been set.

■ Seat operation automatic stop function (4-seat models)

If a front seat is likely to come into contact with the retractable table or the ottoman during seat operation or activation of the power easy access system, a buzzer will sound and seat slide operation will be stopped partway.
(A warning message will be shown on the multi-information display.)

⚠ CAUTION

■ Seat adjustment caution

Take care during seat adjustment so that the seat does not strike the rear passenger or squeeze your body against the steering wheel.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Rear seat position memory

The rear seat position can be memorized and recalled with the touch of a button.

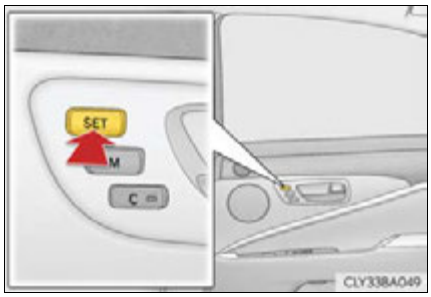
Entering a position to memory

1 Turn the power switch to ON mode.

2 Adjust the rear seat to the desired position.

3 Press the "SET" button until the signal beeps.

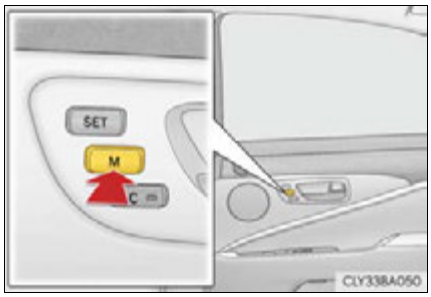
If the preset is being used, the previously recorded seat position will be overwritten.



Recalling the memorized position

Press the "M" button until the signal beeps.

Relaxation seat:
The memorized position will only be recalled if the ottoman is in a position higher than the memorized position. It will not move in an upward direction.

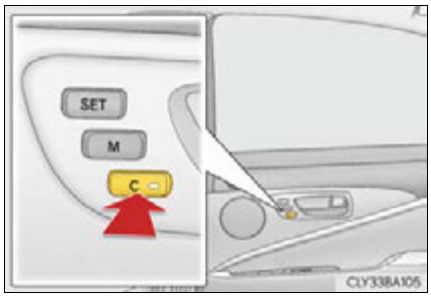


DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Disabling the seat return function

Pressing the "C" button will disable the seat position recall or seat return function.

The indicator light comes on when the function is disabled.
Pressing the button again will enable the seat position recall or seat return function.



Seat return function linked to the door opening operation

- Operating conditions
  The power switch is in ON mode.
- Canceling operation partway through
  During the seat return operation, performing either of the following actions cancels the operation:
  - Pressing the "SET", "M" or "C" button
  - Pressing any of the seat adjustment switches
- Seat return operation after turning the power switch off
  The seat will automatically return to the neutral position if the door is opened within approximately 45 seconds of the power switch being turned off.

CAUTION

Seat adjustment caution

Take care during seat adjustment so that the rear passengers do not strike the front seats.

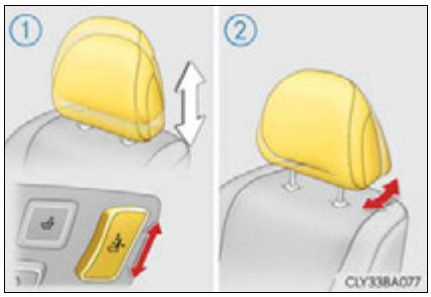
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Head restraints

Head restraints are provided for all seats.

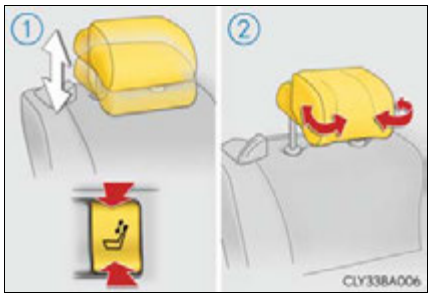
Front seats

① Vertical adjustment
② Horizontal adjustment



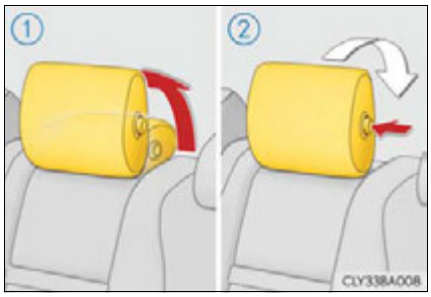
Outer rear seats

① Vertical adjustment
② Side support adjustment



Rear center seat (5-seat models)

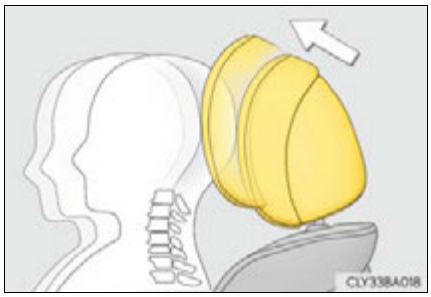
① To use
② To fold



DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Active head restraints (front seats)

If the vehicle detects an impact during a rear-end collision, the front part of the head restraint moves forward and upward to help reduce the risk of whiplash to the seat occupant.



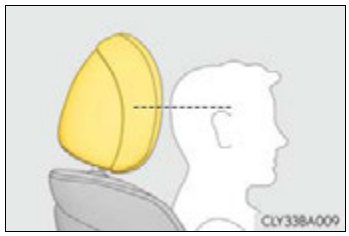
When reversing, even a small amount of force applied from the rear, such as a minor rear impact, may cause the head restraints to move.

■ Removing the head restraints

For removal and installation of the head restraint, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ Adjusting the height of the head restraints (except rear center seat)

Make sure that the head restraints are adjusted so that the center of the head restraint is closest to the top of your ears.



■ Rear center seat

Make sure to pull the head restraint forward when using the rear center seat.

■ Active head restraints

- The active head restraint on the front passenger seat will not activate if the seat is unoccupied. However, it may activate during a rear-end collision if luggage is in the seat or the seat belt is fastened.
- Once the active head restraint has activated, the head restraint remains protruded forward and upward. After it has operated, have it repaired at your Lexus dealer.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Head restraint precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the head restraints. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Use the head restraints designed for each respective seat.
- Adjust the head restraints to the correct position at all times.
- Do not drive with the head restraints removed.

■ The active head restraint on the front passenger seat

Do not place anything, such as a cushion, on the front passenger's seat.
Doing so will disperse the passenger's weight, which may prevents the sensor from detecting the passenger's weight properly. As a result, the active head restraint may not activate in the event of an accident.

■ Active head restraint precautions

- Do not put head restraint covers.
- For removal, installation, modification, disassembly or disposal of the active head restraints, contact your Lexus dealer.
  Inappropriate handling of the active head restraints may prevent them from operating properly during an accident.

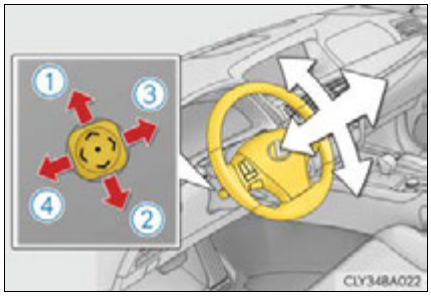
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Steering wheel

Adjustment procedure

Operating the switch moves the steering wheel in the following directions:

① Up
② Down
③ Toward the driver
④ Away from the driver



The steering wheel can be adjusted when

The power switch is in ACCESSORY or ON mode*.

*: If the driver's seat belt is fastened, the steering wheel can be adjusted regardless of power switch mode.

Automatic adjustment of the steering position

A desired steering position can be entered to memory and recalled automatically by the driving position memory system. (→P. 174)

Power easy access system

The steering wheel and driver's seat move in accordance with power switch mode and the driver's seat belt condition. (→P. 161)

⚠ CAUTION

Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.
Doing so may cause the driver to mishandle the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

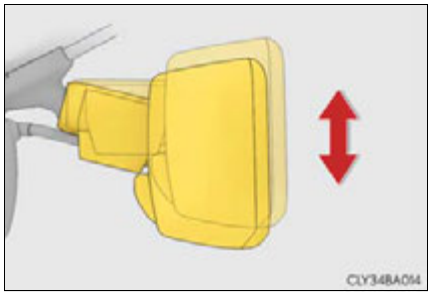
Inside rear view mirror

The rear view mirror's position can be adjusted to enable sufficient confirmation of the rear view.

Adjusting the height of rear view mirror

The height of the rear view mirror can be adjusted to suit your driving posture.

Adjust the height of the rear view mirror by moving it up and down.



Anti-glare function

Responding to the level of brightness of the headlights of vehicles behind, the reflected light is automatically reduced.

Changing automatic anti-glare function mode

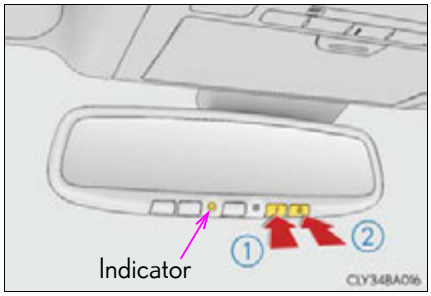
① ON

② OFF

When the automatic anti-glare function is in ON mode, the indicator illuminates.

The function will set to ON mode each time the power switch is turned to ON mode.

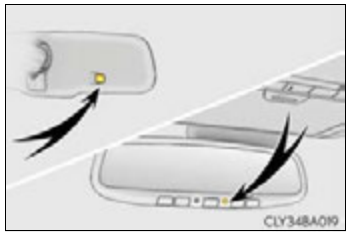
Pressing the button turns the function to OFF mode. (The indicator also turns off.)



DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ To prevent sensor error

To ensure that the sensors operate properly, do not touch or cover them.



⚠ CAUTION

Do not adjust the position of the mirror while driving.
Doing so may lead to mishandling of the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Outside rear view mirrors

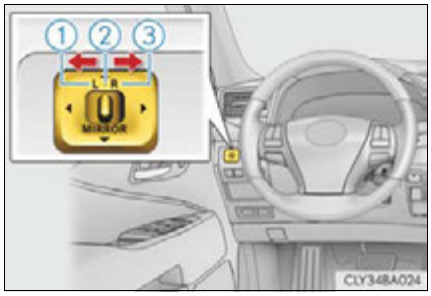
Adjustment procedure

1 Select the mirror to be adjusted.

① Left

② Neutral position

③ Right



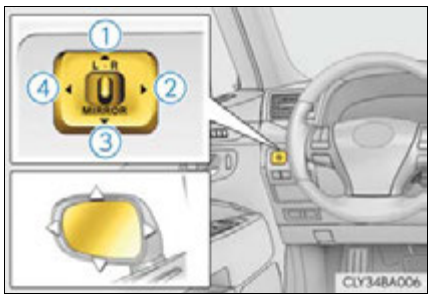
2 To adjust the mirror, press the switch.

① Up

② Right

③ Down

④ Left



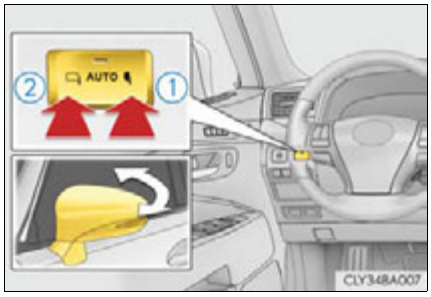
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Folding and extending the mirrors

■ Using the switch

① Folds the mirrors

② Extends the mirrors

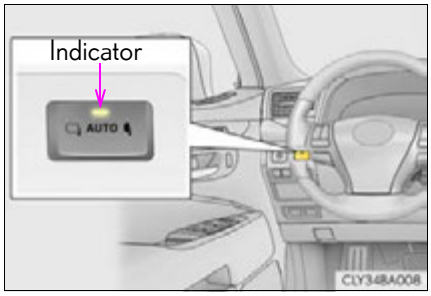


■ Setting automatic mode

Automatic mode allows the folding or extending of the mirrors to be linked to locking/unlocking of the doors.

To set to automatic mode, put the switch in the neutral position.

The indicator will come on.



DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Linked mirror function when reversing

When the mirror select switch is in the "L" or "R" position, the outside rear view mirrors will automatically angle downwards when the vehicle is reversing in order to give a better view of the ground.
To disable this function, move the mirror select switch to the neutral position (between "L" and "R").

Adjusting the mirror angle when the vehicle is reversing

With the shift lever in R, adjust the mirror angle at a desired position.
The adjusted angle will be memorized and the mirror will automatically tilt to the memorized angle whenever the shift lever is shifted to R from next time.

The memorized downward tilt position of the mirror is linked to the normal position (angle adjusted with the shift lever in other than R). Therefore, if the normal position is changed after adjustment, the tilt position will also change. When the normal position is changed, readjust the angle in reversing.

Mirror angle can be adjusted when

The power switch is in ACCESSORY or ON mode.

When the mirrors are fogged up

The outside rear view mirrors can be cleared using the mirror defoggers. Turn on the rear window defogger to turn on the outside rear view mirror defoggers. (→P. 362)

Automatic adjustment of the mirror angle

A desired mirror face angle can be entered to memory and recalled automatically by the driving position memory. (→P. 174)

Auto anti-glare function

When the anti-glare inside rear view mirror is set to automatic mode, the outside rear view mirrors will activate in conjunction with the anti-glare inside rear view mirror to reduce reflected light. (→P. 185)

Using automatic mode in cold weather

When automatic mode is used in cold weather, the door mirror could freeze up and automatic stowing and return may not be possible. In this event, remove any ice and snow from the door mirror, then either operate the mirror using manual mode or move the mirror by hand.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Important points while driving

Observe the following precautions while driving.
Failure to do so may result in loss of control of the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Do not adjust the mirrors while driving.
- Do not drive with the mirrors folded.
- Both the driver and passenger side mirrors must be extended and properly adjusted before driving.

■ When a mirror is moving

To avoid personal injury and mirror malfunction, be careful not to get your hand caught by the moving mirror.

■ When the mirror defoggers are operating

Do not touch the rear view mirror surfaces, as they can become very hot and burn you.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Power windows

Opening and closing procedures

The power windows can be opened and closed using the switches.

Operating the switch moves the windows as follows:

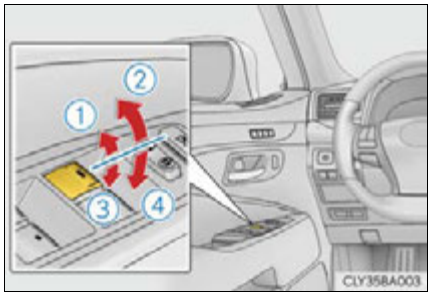
① Closing

② One-touch closing*

③ Opening

④ One-touch opening*

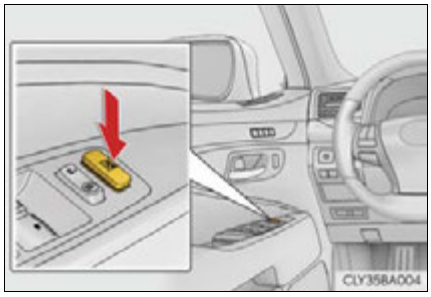
*: To stop the window partway, operate the switch in the opposite direction.



Window lock switch

Press the switch down to lock the passenger window switches.

Use this switch to prevent children from accidentally opening or closing a passenger window.



The power windows can be operated when

The power switch is in ON mode.

Operating the power windows after turning the hybrid system off

The power windows can be operated for approximately 45 seconds even after the power switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or turned off. They cannot, however, be operated once either front door is opened.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Jam protection function**

If an object becomes caught between the window and the window frame, window travel is stopped and the window is opened slightly.

■ **Pinch protection function**

While the window is opening, if an object is caught between the door and window, window travel is stopped.

■ **If the power window does not close or open normally**

If the jam protection function or pinch protection function is malfunctioning and a window cannot be closed or opened completely, perform the following operations using the power window switch of the relevant door:

- When not closing normally

  With the vehicle stopped and the power switch in ON mode, within 4 seconds of the jam protection function operating, pull and hold the power window switch in the one-touch closing position. When the window is closed completely, release the switch.

- When not opening normally

  With the vehicle stopped and the power switch in ON mode, within 4 seconds of the pinch protection function operating, press and hold the power window switch in the one-touch opening position. When the window is opened completely, release the switch.

If the window still cannot be closed or opened completely even though the above operations have been carried out, perform the following initialization procedure.

1. Turn the power switch to ON mode.
2. Pull and hold the power window switch in the one-touch closing position.
3. When the window is closed completely, release the power window switch. Pull and hold the switch in the one-touch closing position again for approximately 4 seconds.
4. Press and hold the power window switch in the one-touch opening position. Continue pressing the switch for 1 second after the window has opened completely.
5. Pull and hold the power window switch in the one-touch closing position. Continue pulling the switch for 1 second after the window has closed.

If you release the switch while the window is moving, perform the procedure again from the beginning.

If, after performing the above procedure correctly, the window continues to close but then re-open slightly or open but then close again slightly, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Door lock linked window operation**

- The power windows can be closed using the entry function. (→P. 129)
- The power windows can be opened and closed using the mechanical key. (→P. 531)

■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. linked door lock operation) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 571)

⚠ CAUTION

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ **Closing the windows**

- The driver is responsible for all the power window operations, including the operation for the passengers. In order to prevent accidental operation, especially by a child, do not let a child operate the power windows. It is possible for children and other passengers to have body parts caught in the power window. Also, when riding with a child, it is recommended to use the window lock switch. (→P. 191)
- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when a window is being operated.
- When using the smart access system with push-button start, wireless remote control or mechanical key and operating the power windows, operate the power window after checking to make sure that there is no possibility of any passenger having any of their body parts caught in the window. Also do not let a child operate window by the smart access system with push-button start, wireless remote control or mechanical key. It is possible for children and other passengers to get caught in the power window.
- When exiting the vehicle, turn the power switch off, carry the key and exit the vehicle along with the child. There may be accidental operation, due to mischief, etc., that may possibly lead to an accident.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Jam protection function

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the window fully closes.

■ Pinch protection function

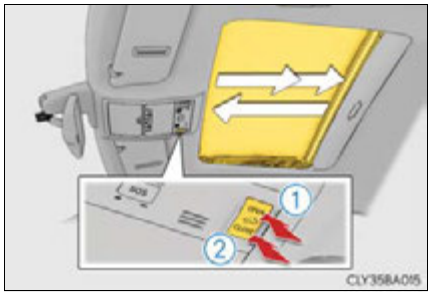
- Do not use a hand, arm, or clothing to intentionally activate the pinch protection function.
- The pinch protection function may not operate if something gets caught just before the window is fully opened. Take care so that your hands, arms, or clothing do not get caught.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Moon roof

Use the overhead switches to open and close the moon roof and tilt it up and down.

Opening and closing



① Opens the moon roof*

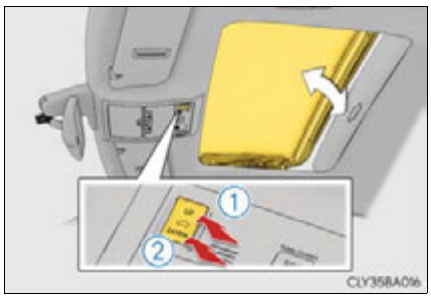
The moon roof stops slightly before the fully open position to reduce wind noise.

Press the switch again to fully open the moon roof.

② Closes the moon roof*

*: Lightly press either way of the moon roof switch to stop the moon roof partway.

Tilting up and down



① Tilts the moon roof up*

② Tilts the moon roof down*

*: Lightly press either way of the moon roof switch to stop the moon roof partway.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **The moon roof can be operated when**

The power switch is in ON mode.

■ **Operating the moon roof after turning the hybrid system off**

The moon roof can be operated for approximately 45 seconds after the power switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or turned off. It cannot, however, be operated once either front door is opened.

■ **Jam protection function**

If an object is detected between the moon roof and the frame while the moon roof is closing or tilting down, travel is stopped and the moon roof opens slightly.

■ **Sunshade**

The sunshade can be opened and closed manually. However, the sunshade will open automatically when the moon roof is opened.

■ **Door lock linked moon roof operation**

- The moon roof can be closed using the entry function. (→P. 129)
- The moon roof can be opened and closed using the mechanical key. (→P. 531)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ When the moon roof does not close normally

Perform the following procedure:

● If the moon roof closes but then re-opens slightly

1 Stop the vehicle.

2 Press and hold the "CLOSE" switch.*1
The moon roof will close, reopen and pause for approximately 10 seconds.*2 Then it will close again, tilt up and pause for approximately 1 second. Finally, it will tilt down, open and close.

3 Check to make sure that the moon roof is completely closed and then release the switch.

● If the moon roof tilts down but then tilts back up

1 Stop the vehicle.

2 Press and hold the "UP" switch*1 until the moon roof moves into the tilt up position and stops.

3 Release the "UP" switch once and then press and hold the "UP" switch again.*1
The moon roof will pause for approximately 10 seconds in the tilt up position.*2 Then it will adjust slightly and pause for approximately 1 second. Finally, it will tilt down, open and close.

4 Check to make sure that the moon roof is completely closed and then release the switch.

*1: If the switch is released at the incorrect time, the procedure will have to be performed again from the beginning.

*2: If the switch is released after the above mentioned 10 second pause, automatic operation will be disabled. In that case, press and hold the "CLOSE" or "UP" switch, and the moon roof will tilt up and pause for approximately 1 second. Then it will tilt down, open and close. Check to make sure that the moon roof is completely closed and then release the switch.

If the moon roof does not fully close even after performing the above procedure correctly, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Moon roof open warning buzzer

The buzzer sounds and a message is shown on the multi-information display in the instrument cluster when the power switch is turned off and the driver's door is opened with the moon roof open.

■ Customization

Settings (e.g. linked door lock operation) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 571)

⚠ CAUTION

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

■ Opening the moon roof

- Do not allow any passengers to put their hands or heads outside the vehicle while it is moving.
- Do not sit on top of the moon roof.

■ Closing the moon roof

- The driver is responsible for moon roof opening and closing operations.
  In order to prevent accidental operation, especially by a child, do not let a child operate the moon roof. It is possible for children and other passengers to have body parts caught in the moon roof.
- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when the moon roof is being operated.
- When using the smart access system with push-button start, wireless remote control or mechanical key and operating the moon roof, operate the moon roof after checking to make sure that there is no possibility of any passenger having any of their body parts caught in the moon roof. Also, do not let a child operate moon roof by the smart access system with push-button start, wireless remote control or mechanical key. It is possible for children and other passengers to get caught in the moon roof.
- When exiting the vehicle, turn the power switch off, carry the key and exit the vehicle along with the child. There may be accidental operation, due to mischief, etc., that may possibly lead to an accident.

■ Jam protection function

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the moon roof fully closes.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

4-1. Before driving
Driving the vehicle 200
Cargo and luggage 211
Vehicle load limits 215
Trailer towing 216
Dinghy towing 217

4-2. Driving procedures
Power (ignition) switch 218
EV drive mode 223
Hybrid transmission 225
Turn signal lever 229
Parking brake 230
Brake Hold 233
Horn 235

4-3. Operating the lights and wipers
Headlight switch 236
Automatic High Beam 240
Fog light switch 245
Windshield wipers and washer 246
Headlight cleaner switch 250

4-4. Refueling
Opening the fuel tank cap 251

4-5. Using the driving support systems
Cruise control 255
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range 259
LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) 275
Driving mode select switch 285
Electronically modulated air suspension 287
Driving assist systems 289
PCS (Pre-Collision System) 296
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) 309
• The Blind Spot Monitor function 313
• The Rear Cross Traffic Alert function 316
Lexus night view 319

4-6. Driving tips
Hybrid vehicle driving tips 324
Winter driving tips 326

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Driving the vehicle

The following procedures should be observed to ensure safe driving:

Starting the hybrid system

→P. 218

Driving

1 With the brake pedal depressed, shift the shift lever to D. (→P. 225)

2 If the parking brake is in manual mode, release the parking brake. (→P. 230)

3 Gradually release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle.

Stopping

1 With the shift lever in D, depress the brake pedal.

2 If necessary, set the parking brake.

If the vehicle is to be stopped for an extended period of time, shift the shift lever to P. (→P. 225)

Parking the vehicle

1 With the shift lever in D, depress the brake pedal.

2 If the parking brake is in manual mode, set the parking brake. (→P. 230)

3 Shift the shift lever to P. (→P. 225)

4 Press the power switch to stop the hybrid system.

5 Lock the door, making sure that you have the electronic key on your person.

If parking on a hill, block the wheels as needed.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Starting off on a steep uphill

1 Make sure that the parking brake is set and shift the shift lever to D.

2 Gently depress the accelerator pedal.

3 Release the parking brake.

When starting off on a uphill

Hill-start assist control will operate. (→P. 289)

Driving in the rain

- Drive carefully when it is raining, because visibility will be reduced, the windows may become fogged-up, and the road will be slippery.
- Drive carefully when it starts to rain, because the road surface will be especially slippery.
- Refrain from high speeds when driving on an expressway in the rain, because there may be a layer of water between the tires and the road surface, preventing the steering and brakes from operating properly.

Breaking in your new Lexus

To extend the life of the vehicle, observing the following precautions is recommended:

- For the first 186 miles (300 km):
  Avoid sudden stops.
- For the first 621 miles (1000 km):
  - Do not drive at extremely high speeds.
  - Avoid sudden acceleration.
  - Do not drive continuously in low gears.
  - Do not drive at a constant speed for extended periods.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Drum-in-disc type parking brake system**

Your vehicle has a drum-in-disc type parking brake system. This type of brake system needs bedding-down of the brake shoes periodically or whenever the parking brake shoes and/or drum are replaced. Have your Lexus dealer perform the bedding down operation.

■ **Operating your vehicle in a foreign country**

Comply with the relevant vehicle registration laws and confirm the availability of the correct fuel. (→P. 557)

■ **For efficient use**

- Shift the shift lever to D when driving.
  In the N position, the gasoline engine operates but electricity cannot be generated. The hybrid battery (traction battery) will discharge, requiring unnecessary engine power to recharge.
- Drive your vehicle smoothly.
  Avoid abrupt acceleration and deceleration. Gradual acceleration and deceleration will make more effective use of the electric motor (traction motor) without having to use gasoline engine power.
- Avoid repeated acceleration.
  Repeated acceleration consumes hybrid battery (traction battery) power, resulting in poor acceleration. Battery power can be restored by driving with the accelerator pedal slightly released.
- Shift the shift lever to P when parking.
  In the N position, the hybrid battery (traction battery) does not recharge.
  Leaving the shift lever in the N position for an extended period of time may discharge the hybrid battery (traction battery). The vehicle cannot run if the hybrid battery (traction battery) is discharged.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ When starting the vehicle

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal while stopped with the hybrid system operating. This prevents the vehicle from creeping.

■ When driving the vehicle

- Do not drive if you are unfamiliar with the location of the brake and accelerator pedals to avoid depressing the wrong pedal.
  - Accidentally depressing the accelerator pedal instead of the brake pedal will result in sudden acceleration that may lead to an accident.
  - When backing up, you may twist your body around, leading to a difficulty in operating the pedals. Make sure to operate the pedals properly.
  - Make sure to keep a correct driving posture even when moving the vehicle only slightly. This allows you to depress the brake and accelerator pedals properly.
  - Depress the brake pedal using your right foot. Depressing the brake pedal using your left foot may delay response in an emergency, resulting in an accident.
- When the hybrid vehicle is driven using the electric motor only, no engine noise is made. As such, pedestrians, people riding bicycles or other people and vehicles in the surrounding area may not realize that the vehicle is approaching. Even with the Vehicle Proximity Notification System active, people may not realize the vehicle is approaching when the surrounding area is noisy and so forth. Therefore, take extra care while driving.
- Do not drive the vehicle over or stop the vehicle near flammable materials.
  The exhaust system and exhaust gases can be extremely hot. These hot parts may cause a fire if there is any flammable material nearby.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ When driving the vehicle

- During normal driving, do not turn off the hybrid system. Turning the hybrid system off while driving will not cause loss of steering or braking control, however, power assist to the steering will be lost. This will make it more difficult to steer smoothly, so you should pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. In the event of an emergency, such as if it becomes impossible to stop the vehicle in the normal way: →P. 491
- Use engine braking (downshift) to maintain a safe speed when driving down a steep hill.
  Using the brakes continuously may cause the brakes to overheat and lose effectiveness. (→P. 225)
- Do not adjust the positions of the steering wheel, the seat, or the inside or outside rear view mirrors while driving.
  Doing so may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Always check that all passengers' arms, heads or other parts of their body are not outside the vehicle.
- Do not drive in excess of the speed limit. Even if the legal speed limit permits it, do not drive over 85 mph (140 km/h) unless your vehicle has high-speed capability tires. Driving over 85 mph (140 km/h) may result in tire failure, loss of control and possible injury. Be sure to consult a tire dealer to determine whether the tires on your vehicle are high-speed capability tires or not before driving at such speeds.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ When driving on slippery road surfaces

- Sudden braking, acceleration and steering may cause tire slippage and reduce your ability to control the vehicle.
- Sudden acceleration, engine braking due to shifting, or changes in engine speed could cause the vehicle to skid.
- After driving through a puddle, depress the brake pedal to make sure that the brakes are functioning properly. Wet brake pads may prevent the brakes from functioning properly. If the brakes on only one side are wet and not functioning properly, steering control may be affected.

■ When shifting the shift lever

- Do not let the vehicle roll backward while the shift lever is in a driving position, or roll forward while the shift lever is in R.
  Doing so may result in an accident or damage to the vehicle.
- Do not shift the shift lever to P while the vehicle is moving.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Do not shift the shift lever to R while the vehicle is moving forward.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Do not shift the shift lever to a driving position while the vehicle is moving backward.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Do not shift the shift lever to N while the vehicle is moving. Doing so will disengage the hybrid system. Engine braking is not available when N is selected.
- Be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed. Shifting the shift lever to a gear other than P or N may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident and result in death or serious injury.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ If a brake pad wear warning message is displayed

Have your Lexus dealer check and replace the brake pads as soon as possible.
The rotor damage can result if the pads are not replaced when needed.

Moderate levels of the brake pad and disc wear allow enhanced braking power. As a result, the discs may wear more quickly than conventional brake discs. Therefore, when replacing the brake pads, Lexus recommends that you also have the thickness of the discs measured.
It is dangerous to drive the vehicle when the wear limits of the brake pads and/or those of the brake discs are exceeded.

■ When the vehicle is stopped

- Do not depress the accelerator pedal unnecessarily.
  If the vehicle is in any gear other than P or N, the vehicle may accelerate suddenly and unexpectedly, causing an accident.
- In order to prevent accidents due to the vehicle rolling away, always keep depressing the brake pedal while the "READY" indicator is on, and apply the parking brake as necessary.
- If the vehicle is stopped on an incline, in order to prevent accidents caused by the vehicle rolling forward or backward, always depress the brake pedal and securely apply the parking brake as needed.
- Avoid revving or racing the engine.
  Running the engine at high speed while the vehicle is stopped may cause the exhaust system to overheat, which could result in a fire if combustible material is nearby.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ When the vehicle is parked

- Do not leave glasses, cigarette lighters, spray cans, or soft drink cans in the vehicle when it is in the sun.
  Doing so may result in the following:
  - Gas may leak from a cigarette lighter or spray can, and may lead to a fire.
  - The temperature inside the vehicle may cause the plastic lenses and plastic material of glasses to deform or crack.
  - Soft drink cans may fracture, causing the contents to spray over the interior of the vehicle, and may also cause a short circuit in the vehicle's electrical components.
- Do not leave cigarette lighters in the vehicle. If a cigarette lighter is in a place such as the glove box or on the floor, it may be lit accidentally when luggage is loaded or the seat is adjusted, causing a fire.
- Do not attach adhesive discs to the windshield or windows. Do not place containers such as air fresheners on the instrument panel or dashboard. Adhesive discs or containers may act as lenses, causing a fire in the vehicle.
- Do not leave a door or window open if the curved glass is coated with a metallized film such as a silver-colored one. Reflected sunlight may cause the glass to act as a lens, causing a fire.
- Always apply the parking brake, shift the shift lever to P, stop the hybrid system and lock the vehicle.
  Do not leave the vehicle unattended while the hybrid system is operating.
- Do not touch the exhaust pipes while the hybrid system is operating or immediately after turning the hybrid system off.
  Doing so may cause burns.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ When taking a nap in the vehicle

Always turn the hybrid system off. Otherwise, if you accidentally move the shift lever or depress the accelerator pedal, this could cause an accident or fire due to hybrid system overheating. Additionally, if the vehicle is parked in a poorly ventilated area, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle, leading to death or a serious health hazard.

■ When braking

- When the brakes are wet, drive more cautiously.
  Braking distance increases when the brakes are wet, and this may cause one side of the vehicle to brake differently than the other side. Also, the parking brake may not securely hold the vehicle.
- If the electronically controlled brake system does not operate, do not follow other vehicles closely and avoid hills or sharp turns that require braking.
  In this case, braking is still possible, but the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual. Also, the braking distance will increase. Have your brakes fixed immediately.
- The brake system consists of 2 or more individual hydraulic systems; if one of the systems fails, the other(s) will still operate. In this case, the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual and the braking distance will increase. Have your brakes fixed immediately.

■ If the vehicle becomes stuck

Do not spin the wheels excessively when any of the tires is up in the air, or the vehicle is stuck in sand, mud, etc. This may damage the driveline components or propel the vehicle forward or backward, causing an accident.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

■ When driving the vehicle

- Do not depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time during driving, as this may restrain driving torque.
- Do not use the accelerator pedal or depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time to hold the vehicle on a hill.

■ When parking the vehicle

Always shift the shift lever to P. Failure to do so may cause the vehicle to move or the vehicle may accelerate suddenly if the accelerator pedal is accidentally depressed.

■ Avoiding damage to vehicle parts

- Do not turn the steering wheel fully in either direction and hold it there for an extended period of time.
  Doing so may damage the power steering motor.
- When driving over bumps in the road, drive as slowly as possible to avoid damaging the wheels, underside of the vehicle, etc.

■ If you get a flat tire while driving

A flat or damaged tire may cause the following situations. Hold the steering wheel firmly and gradually depress the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle.

- It may be difficult to control your vehicle.
- The vehicle will make abnormal sounds or vibrations.
- The vehicle will lean abnormally.

Information on what to do in case of a flat tire (→P. 513, 522)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

■ When encountering flooded roads

Do not drive on a road that has flooded after heavy rain etc. Doing so may cause the following serious damage to the vehicle:

- Engine stalling
- Short in electrical components
- Engine damage caused by water immersion

In the event that you drive on a flooded road and the vehicle is flooded, be sure to have your Lexus dealer check the following:

- Brake function
- Changes in quantity and quality of oil and fluid used for the engine, transmission, transfer, differential, etc.
- Lubricant condition for the propeller shaft, bearings and suspension joints (where possible), and the function of all joints, bearings, etc.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Cargo and luggage

Take notice of the following information about storage precautions, cargo capacity and load:

Capacity and distribution

Cargo capacity depends on the total weight of the occupants.

(Cargo capacity) = (Total load capacity) – (Total weight of occupants)

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit –

(1) Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs." on your vehicle's placard.

(2) Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.

(3) Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.

(4) The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity.

For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400 – 750 (5 × 150) = 650 lbs.)

(5) Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

(6) If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

(→P. 215)

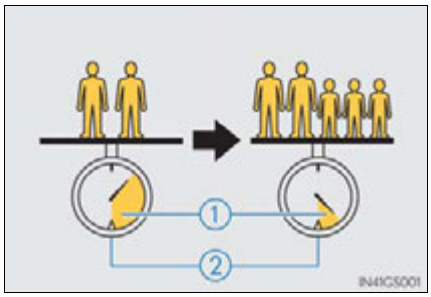
Lexus does not recommend towing a trailer with your vehicle. Your vehicle is not designed for trailer towing.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Calculation formula for your vehicle

① Cargo capacity

② Total load capacity (vehicle capacity weight) (→P. 546)



▶ 5-seat models

When 2 people with the combined weight of A lb. (kg) are riding in your vehicle, which has a total load capacity (vehicle capacity weight) of B lb. (kg), the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity will be C lb. (kg) as follows:

B*2 lb. (kg) - A*1 lb. (kg) = C*3 lb. (kg)

*1: A =Weight of people

*2: B =Total load capacity

*3: C =Available cargo and luggage load

In this condition, if 3 more passengers with the combined weight of D lb. (kg) get on, the available cargo and luggage load will be reduced E lb. (kg) as follows:

C lb. (kg) - D*4 lb. (kg) = E*5 lb. (kg)

*4: D =Additional weight of people

*5: E =Available cargo and luggage load

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

▶ 4-seat models

When 2 people with the combined weight of A lb. (kg) are riding in your vehicle, which has a total load capacity (vehicle capacity weight) of B lb. (kg), the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity will be C lb. (kg) as follows:

B*2 lb. (kg) - A*1 lb. (kg) = C*3 lb. (kg)

*1: A =Weight of people
*2: B =Total load capacity
*3: C =Available cargo and luggage load

In this condition, if 2 more passengers with the combined weight of D lb. (kg) get on, the available cargo and luggage load will be reduced E lb. (kg) as follows:

C lb. (kg) - D*4 lb. (kg) = E*5 lb. (kg)

*4: D =Additional weight of people
*5: E =Available cargo and luggage load

As shown in the example above, if the number of occupants increases, the cargo and luggage load will be reduced by an amount that equals the increased weight due to the additional occupants. In other words, if an increase in the number of occupants causes an excess of the total load capacity (combined weight of occupants plus cargo and luggage load), you must reduce the cargo and luggage on your vehicle.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Things that must not be carried in the trunk

The following things may cause a fire if loaded in the trunk:

- Receptacles containing gasoline
- Aerosol cans

■ Storage precautions

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may prevent the pedals from being depressed properly, may block the driver's vision, or may result in items hitting the driver or passengers, possibly causing an accident.

- Stow cargo and luggage in the trunk whenever possible.
- Do not place cargo or luggage in or on the following locations.
  - At the feet of the driver
  - On the front passenger or rear seats (when stacking items)
  - On the package tray
  - On the instrument panel
  - On the dashboard
  - In front of the Remote Touch screen
- Secure all items in the occupant compartment.

■ Capacity and distribution

- Do not exceed the maximum axle weight rating or the total vehicle weight rating.
- Even if the total load of occupant's weight and the cargo load is less than the total load capacity, do not apply the load unevenly. Improper loading may cause deterioration of steering or braking control which may cause death or serious injury.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Vehicle load limits

Vehicle load limits include total load capacity, seating capacity, towing capacity and cargo capacity.

◆ Total load capacity (vehicle capacity weight): (→P. 546)

Total load capacity means the combined weight of occupants, cargo and luggage.

◆ Seating capacity:

5-seat models
5 occupants (Front 2, Rear 3)
4-seat models
4 occupants (Front 2, Rear 2)

Seating capacity means the maximum number of occupants whose estimated average weight is 150 lb. (68 kg) per person.

◆ Towing capacity

Lexus does not recommend towing a trailer with your vehicle.

◆ Cargo capacity

Cargo capacity may increase or decrease depending on the weight and the number of occupants.

■ Total load capacity and seating capacity

These details are also described on the tire and loading information label. (→P. 470)

⚠ CAUTION

■ Overloading the vehicle

Do not overload the vehicle.
It may not only cause damage to the tires, but also degrade steering and braking ability, resulting in an accident.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

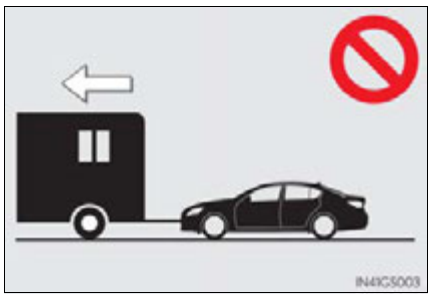
Trailer towing

Lexus does not recommend towing a trailer with your vehicle. Lexus also does not recommend the installation of a tow hitch or the use of a tow hitch carrier for a wheelchair, scooter, bicycle, etc. Your vehicle is not designed for trailer towing or for the use of tow hitch mounted carriers.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Dinghy towing

Your vehicle is not designed to be dinghy towed (with 4 wheels on the ground) behind a motor home.



NOTICE

■ **To avoid serious damage to your vehicle**

Do not tow your vehicle with the four wheels on the ground.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Power (ignition) switch

Performing the following operations when carrying the electronic key on your person starts the hybrid system or changes power switch modes.

Starting the hybrid system

1 Turn the power switch to ON mode (→P. 219) and check that the parking brake is set.

2 Check that the shift lever is set in P.

3 Firmly depress the brake pedal.

The power switch indicator will turn green. If the indicator does not turn green, the hybrid system cannot be started.

4 Press the power switch.

After a while, the "READY" indicator comes on with a beep sound.

The vehicle can move when the "READY" indicator is on even if the engine is stopped.

Continue depressing the brake pedal until the hybrid system is completely started.

The hybrid system can be started from any power switch mode.

5 Check that the "READY" indicator is on.

The vehicle will not move when the "READY" indicator is off.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Stopping the hybrid system

1 Stop the vehicle.

2 Shift the shift lever to P.

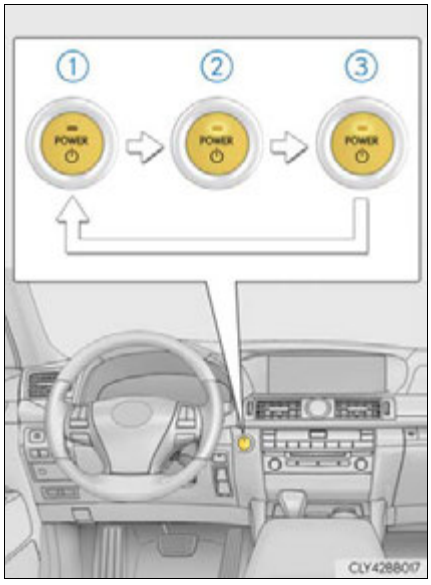
3 Set the parking brake. (→P. 230)

4 Press the power switch.

5 Release the brake pedal and check that the indicator on the power switch is off.

Changing power switch modes

Modes can be changed by pressing the power switch with brake pedal released. (The mode changes each time the switch is pressed.)



① Off*

The emergency flashers can be used.

② ACCESSORY mode

Some electrical components such as the audio system can be used.

The power switch indicator turns amber.

③ ON mode

All electrical components can be used.

The power switch indicator turns amber.

*: If the shift lever is in a position other than P when turning off the hybrid system, the power switch will be turned to ACCESSORY mode, not to off.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Auto power off function**

If the vehicle is left in ACCESSORY mode for more than 20 minutes with the shift lever in P, the power switch will automatically turn off.

■ **Sounds and vibrations specific to a hybrid vehicle**

→P. 79

■ **Electronic key battery depletion**

→P. 139

■ **When the ambient temperature is low, such as during winter driving conditions**

It may take time until the "READY" indicator comes on.

■ **Conditions affecting operation**

→P. 136

■ **Notes for the entry function**

→P. 137

■ **If the hybrid system does not start**

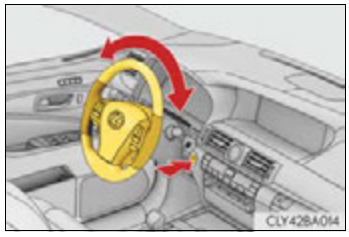
The immobilizer system may not have been deactivated. (→P. 88)
Contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **Steering lock**

After turning the power switch off and opening and closing the doors, the steering wheel will be locked due to the steering lock function. Operating the power switch again automatically cancels the steering lock.

■ **When the steering lock cannot be released**

The green indicator light on the power switch will flash and a message will be shown on the multi-information display. Press the power switch again while turning the steering wheel left and right.



■ **Steering lock motor overheating prevention**

To prevent the steering lock motor from overheating, the motor may be suspended if the hybrid system is turned on and off repeatedly in a short period of time. In this case, refrain from operating the hybrid system. After about 10 seconds, the steering lock motor will resume functioning.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **When the power switch indicator flashes in amber**

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ **If the "READY" indicator does not come on**

If the "READY" indicator does not come on when you press the power switch with the shift lever in P and the brake pedal depressed, contact your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ **If the hybrid system is malfunctioning**

→P. 509

■ **If the electronic key battery is depleted**

→P. 478

■ **If the smart access system with push-button start has been deactivated in a customized setting**

→P. 531

⚠ CAUTION

■ **When starting the hybrid system**

Always start the hybrid system while sitting in the driver's seat. Do not depress the accelerator pedal while starting the hybrid system under any circumstances. Doing so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

■ **Caution while driving**

If hybrid system failure occurs while the vehicle is moving, do not lock or open the doors until the vehicle reaches a safe and complete stop. Activation of the steering lock in this circumstance may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

■ **Stopping the hybrid system in an emergency**

If you want to stop the hybrid system in an emergency while driving the vehicle, press and hold the power switch for more than 2 seconds, or press it briefly 3 times or more in succession. (→P. 491)

However, do not touch the power switch while driving except in an emergency. Turning the hybrid system off while driving will not cause loss of steering or braking control, however, power assist to the steering will be lost. This will make it more difficult to steer smoothly, so you should pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

■ To prevent 12-volt battery discharge

Do not leave the power switch in ACCESSORY or ON mode for long periods of time without the hybrid system on.

■ When starting the hybrid system

- Do not depress the accelerator pedal unnecessarily.
- If the hybrid system becomes difficult to start, have your vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ Symptoms indicating a malfunction with the power switch

If the power switch seems to be operating somewhat differently than usual, such as the switch sticking slightly, there may be a malfunction. Contact your Lexus dealer immediately.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

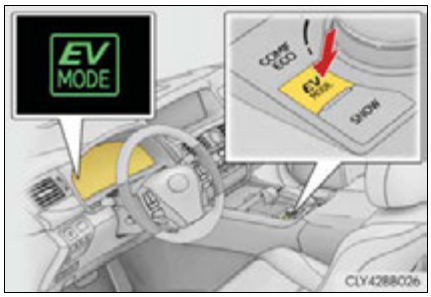
EV drive mode

In EV drive mode the electric motor (traction motor), powered by the hybrid battery (traction battery), is used to drive the vehicle.

This mode allows you to drive in residential areas early in the morning and late at night, or in indoor parking lots etc. without concern for noises and gas emissions.
However, when the vehicle proximity notification system is active, the vehicle may produce sound.

Turns EV drive mode on/off

When EV drive mode is turned on, the EV drive mode indicator will come on. Pressing the switch when in EV drive mode will return the vehicle to normal driving (using the gasoline engine and electric motor [traction motor]).



■ Situations in which EV drive mode cannot be turned on

It may not be possible to turn EV drive mode on in the following situations. If it cannot be turned on, a buzzer will sound and a message will be shown on the multi-information display.

- The temperature of the hybrid system is high.
  The vehicle has been left in the sun, driven on a hill, driven at high speeds, etc.
- The temperature of the hybrid system is low.
  The vehicle has been left in temperatures lower than about 32°F (0°C) for a long period of time etc.
- The gasoline engine is warming up.
- The hybrid battery (traction battery) is low.
  The remaining battery level indicated in the "Energy Monitor" display is low. (→P. 113)
- Vehicle speed is about 25 mph (40 km/h) or more.
- The accelerator pedal is depressed firmly or the vehicle is on a hill etc.
- The windshield defogger is in use.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Automatic cancelation of EV drive mode**

When driving in EV drive mode, the gasoline engine may automatically restart in the following situations. When EV drive mode is canceled, a buzzer will sound and the EV drive mode indicator will flash and go off.

- The hybrid battery (traction battery) becomes low.
  The remaining battery level indicated in the "Energy Monitor" display is low.
  (→P. 113)
- Vehicle speed becomes more than about 25 mph (40 km/h).
- The accelerator pedal is depressed firmly or the vehicle is on a hill etc.

When it is possible to inform the driver of automatic cancelation in advance, a prior notice screen will appear on the multi-information display.

■ **Possible driving distance when driving in EV drive mode**

EV drive mode's possible driving distance ranges from a few hundred meters to approximately 0.6 mile (1 km). Driving is possible at speeds of less than approximately 25 mph (40 km/h). However, depending on vehicle conditions, there are situations when EV drive mode cannot be used. (The distance that is possible depends on the hybrid battery [traction battery] level and driving conditions.)

■ **Fuel economy**

Your Lexus is designed to achieve the best possible fuel economy during normal driving (using the gasoline engine and electric motor [traction motor]). Driving in EV drive mode more than necessary may lower fuel economy.

⚠ CAUTION

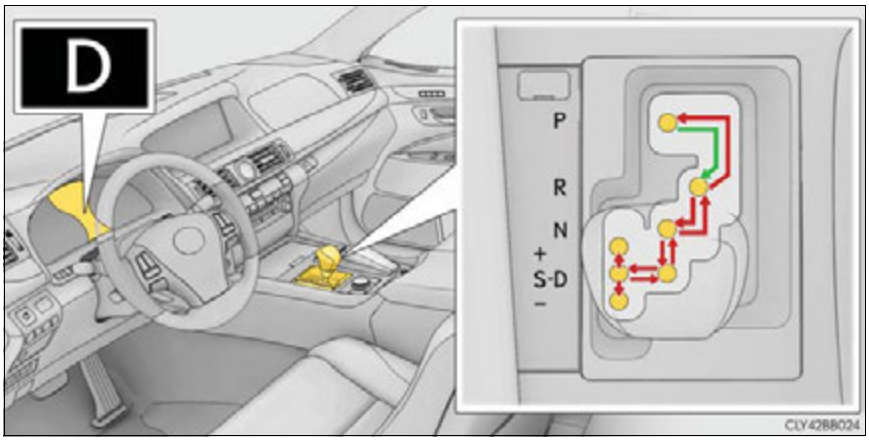
■ **Caution while driving**

When driving in EV drive mode no engine noise is made. As such, pedestrians, people riding bicycles or other people and vehicles in the surrounding area may not be aware of the vehicle starting off or approaching them. Therefore, take extra care while driving even if the vehicle proximity notification system is active.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Hybrid transmission

Shifting the shift lever



While the power switch is in ON mode, move the shift lever with the brake pedal depressed.

When shifting the shift lever between P and D, make sure that the vehicle is completely stopped.

Shift position purpose

Shift position	Purpose and condition
P	Parking the vehicle/starting the hybrid system
R	Reversing
N	Condition in which the power is not transmitted
D	Normal driving*1
S	S mode driving*2 (→P. 226)

*1: To improve fuel efficiency and reduce noises, set the shift lever in D for normal driving.

*2: By selecting shift ranges using S mode, you can control accelerating forces and engine braking forces.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Selecting shift ranges in S mode

To enter S mode, shift the shift lever to the S position.

Changing the shift range allows restriction of the highest shift range, preventing unnecessary upshifting and enabling the level of engine braking force to be selected.
Also, by controlling the transmission so that engine speed is higher when compared with normal driving, acceleration response is improved.

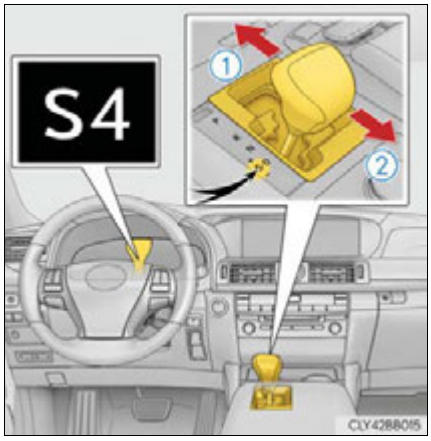
The shift range can be selected by the shift lever.

① Upshifting

② Downshifting

The selected shift range, from S1 to S8, will be displayed in the meter.

The initial shift range in S mode is automatically set to S4, S5, S6 or S7 according to vehicle speed.



Shift ranges and their functions

- You can choose from 8 levels of accelerating force and engine braking force.
- A lower shift range will provide greater accelerating force and engine braking force than a higher shift range, and the engine speed will also increase.
- If you accelerate while in ranges 1 to 5, the shift range may automatically range up in accordance with the vehicle's speed.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Selecting the driving mode

■ Sport mode/Comfort mode/Eco drive mode

→P. 285

■ Snow mode

Snow mode can be selected to suit the conditions when driving on slippery road surfaces, such as on snow.

Press the switch.

The snow mode indicator light will come on.

Press the switch again to return to normal mode.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ S mode

- When the shift range is 6 or lower, holding the shift lever toward "+" sets the shift range to 8.
- When the shift lever is moved toward "-", the shift range is downshifted to a range that enables engine braking force that is suitable to driving conditions.

■ Downshifting restrictions warning buzzer (in the S mode)

To help ensure safety and driving performance, downshifting operation may sometimes be restricted. In some circumstances, downshifting may not be possible even when the shift lever is operated. (A buzzer will sound twice.)

■ When driving with cruise control or dynamic radar cruise control with full speed range activated

Even when performing the following actions with the intent of enabling engine braking, engine braking will not activate because cruise control or dynamic radar cruise control with full speed range will not be canceled.

- While driving in S mode, downshifting to 7, 6, 5 or 4. (→ P. 255, 259)
- When switching the driving mode to sport mode while driving in D position. (→ P. 285)

■ Snow mode automatic deactivation

Snow mode is automatically deactivated if the power switch is turned off after driving in snow mode.

■ If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P

→P. 526

⚠ CAUTION

■ When driving on slippery road surfaces

Be careful of downshifting and sudden acceleration, as this could result in the vehicle skidding to the side or spinning.

NOTICE

■ Hybrid battery (traction battery) charge

If the shift lever is in N, the hybrid battery (traction battery) will not be charged even when the engine is running. Therefore, if the vehicle is left with the shift lever in N for a long period of time, the hybrid battery (traction battery) will discharge, and this may result in the vehicle not being able to start.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Turn signal lever

Operating instructions

① Right turn

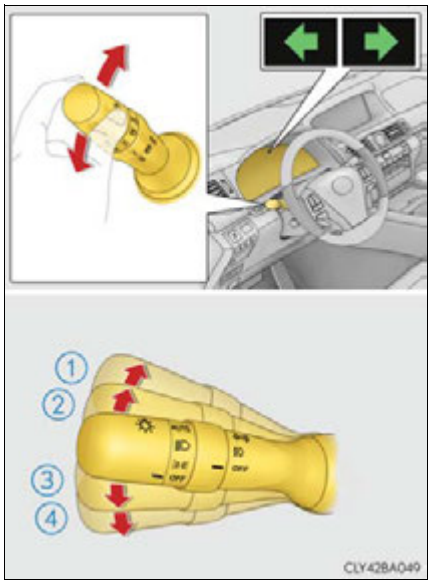
② Lane change to the right (move the lever partway and release it)

The right hand signals will flash 3 times.

③ Lane change to the left (move the lever partway and release it)

The left hand signals will flash 3 times.

④ Left turn



■ **Turn signals can be operated when**

The power switch is in ON mode.

■ **If the indicator flashes faster than usual**

Check that a light bulb in the front or rear turn signal lights has not burned out.

■ **If the turn signals stop flashing before a lane change has been performed**

Operate the lever again.

■ **To discontinue flashing of the turn signals during a lane change**

Operate the lever in the opposite direction.

■ **Customization**

The number of times the turn signals flash during a lane change can be changed. (Customizable features →P. 571)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Parking brake

A selections can be made as desired from the following modes.

Manual mode

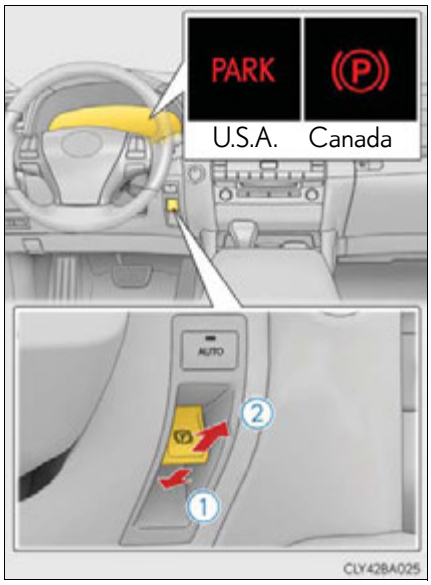
① Sets the parking brake

The parking brake indicator light will come on. (→P. 232)

Press and hold the parking brake switch if an emergency occurs and it is necessary to operate the parking brake while driving. The parking brake is applied only while the switch is being pressed.

② Releases the parking brake

Operate the parking brake switch while depressing the brake pedal. Make sure that the parking brake indicator light goes off.



DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Automatic mode

The parking brake is set or released automatically according to shift lever operation.

Turns automatic mode on/off

When automatic mode is turned on, the indicator on the switch comes on and it operates in the following manner:

- When the shift lever is moved into P, the parking brake will be set.
- When the shift lever is moved out of P, the parking brake will be released.

  Operate the shift lever with the brake pedal depressed.

Parking brake operation

- When the power switch is not in ON mode, the parking brake cannot be released using the parking brake switch.
- When the power switch is not in ON mode, automatic mode (automatic brake setting and releasing) is not available.
- If the parking brake is operated repeatedly over a short period of time, the system may restrict operation to prevent overheating. If this happens, refrain from operating the parking brake. Normal operation will return after about 1 minute.

Parking brake operation sound

When the parking brake operates, a motor sound (whirring sound) may be heard. This does not indicate a malfunction.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Parking brake indicator light**

- Depending on the power switch mode, the parking brake indicator light will come on and stay on as described below:

  ON mode: Comes on until the parking brake is released.
  Not in ON mode: Stays on for approximately 15 seconds.

- When the power switch is turned off with the parking brake set, the parking brake indicator light will stay on for about 15 seconds. This does not indicate a malfunction.

■ **Parking brake engaged warning buzzer**

A buzzer will sound if the vehicle is driven at a speed of approximately 3 mph (5 km/h) or more with the parking brake engaged.

■ **When there is a malfunction in the system**

Warning lights and/or warning message will turn on or flash. (→P. 501, 509)
Depending on the condition, the parking brake indicator light may flash.

■ **Usage in winter time**

→P. 327

⚠ NOTICE

■ **When parking the vehicle**

Before you leave the vehicle, set the parking brake, shift the shift lever to P and make sure that the vehicle does not move.

■ **When the system malfunctions**

Stop the vehicle in a safe place and check the warning messages.

■ **When the parking brake cannot be released due to a malfunction**

Use the parking brake release tool to manually release the parking brake. (→P. 527)
Driving the vehicle with the parking brake set will lead to brake components overheating, which may affect braking performance and increase brake wear.

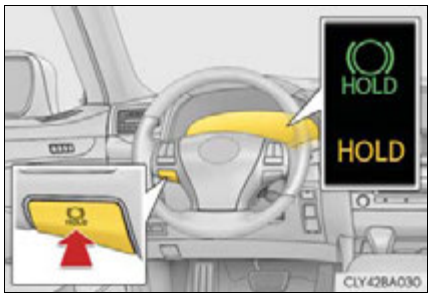
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Brake Hold

The brake hold system keeps the brake applied when the shift lever is in D, S or N with the system on and the brake pedal has been depressed to stop the vehicle. The system releases the brake when the accelerator pedal is depressed with the shift lever in D or S to allow smooth start off.

Turns the brake hold system on

The brake hold standby indicator (green) comes on. While the system is holding the brake, the brake hold operated indicator (yellow) comes on.



Brake hold system operating conditions

The brake hold system cannot be turned on in the following conditions:

- The trunk or hood is not closed.
- The driver's door is not closed.
- The driver is not wearing the seat belt.

If any of the conditions above are detected when the brake hold system is enabled, the system will turn off and the brake hold standby indicator light will go off. In addition, if any of the conditions are detected while the system is holding the brake, a warning buzzer will sound and a message will be shown on the multi-information display. The parking brake will then be set automatically.

Brake hold function

- If the brake pedal is left released for a period of about 3 minutes after the system has started holding the brake, the parking brake will be set automatically. In this case, a warning buzzer sounds and a message is shown on the multi-information display.
- To turn the system off while the system is holding the brake, firmly depress the brake pedal and press the switch again.
- The brake hold function may not hold the vehicle when the vehicle is on a steep incline. In this situation, it may be necessary for the driver to apply the brakes. The multi-information display will inform the driver of this situation.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **When the parking brake is set automatically while the system is holding the brakes**

The parking brake will not be released automatically. Release the parking brake by operating the parking brake switch, making sure that the parking brake indicator light goes off. (→P. 230)

■ **When there is a malfunction in the system**

Warning lights and/or warning messages will turn on or flash. (→P. 501, 509)

⚠ CAUTION

■ **When the vehicle is on a steep incline**

When using the brake hold system on a steep incline exercise caution. The brake hold function may not hold the vehicle in such a situation.

■ **When stopped on a slippery road**

The system cannot stop the vehicle when the gripping ability of the tires has been exceeded. Do not use the system when stopped on a slippery road.

⚠ NOTICE

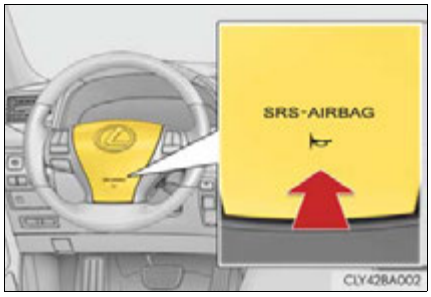
■ **When parking the vehicle**

The brake hold system is not designed for use when parking the vehicle for a long period of time. Turning the power switch off while the system is holding the brake may release the brake, which would cause the vehicle to move. When operating the power switch, depress the brake pedal, set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to P.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Horn

To sound the horn, press on or close to the mark.



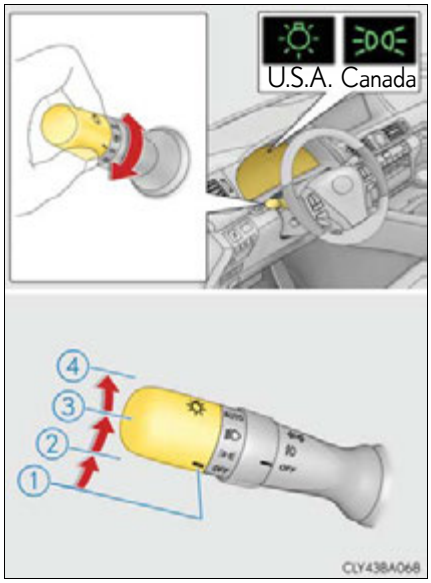
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Headlight switch

The headlights can be operated manually or automatically.

Operating instructions

Turning the end of the lever turns on the lights as follows:



① OFF (U.S.A.) or o (Canada)
The daytime running lights turn on. (→P. 238)

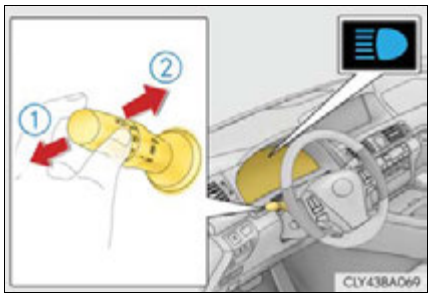
② The side marker, tail, license plate, instrument panel and daytime running lights (→P. 238) turn on.

③ The headlights, parking lights and all lights listed (except daytime running lights) above turn on.

④ AUTO The headlights, parking lights, daytime running lights (→P. 238) and all the lights listed above turn on and off automatically.
(When the power switch is in ON mode.)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Turning on the high beam headlights



① With the headlights on, push the lever away from you to turn on the high beams.

Pull the lever toward you to the center position to turn the high beams off.

② Pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the high beams once.

You can flash the high beams with the headlights on or off.

AFS (Adaptive Front-lighting System)

AFS (Adaptive Front-lighting System) secures excellent visibility at intersections and on curves by automatically adjusting the direction of the light axis of the headlights according to vehicle speed and the degree of the tire's angle as controlled by steering input.

AFS operates at speeds of 6 mph (10 km/h) or higher.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Daytime running light system**

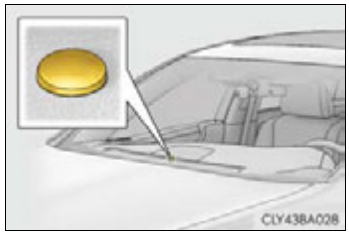
- To make your vehicle more visible to other drivers during daytime driving, the daytime running lights turn on automatically whenever the hybrid system is started and the parking brake is released with the headlight switch off or in the AUTO position. (Illuminate brighter than the parking lights.)

  Daytime running lights are not designed for use at night.

- Compared to turning on the headlights, the daytime running light system offers greater durability and consumes less electricity, so it can help improve fuel economy.

■ **Headlight control sensor**

The sensor may not function properly if an object is placed on the sensor, or anything that blocks the sensor is affixed to the windshield.
Doing so interferes with the sensor detecting the level of ambient light and may cause the automatic headlight system to malfunction.



■ **Automatic light off system**

- When the headlights are on: The headlights and tail lights turn off 30 seconds after a door is opened and closed if the power switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or turned off. (The lights turn off immediately if on the key is pressed after all the doors are closed.)
- When only the tail lights are on: The tail lights turn off automatically if the power switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or turned off and the driver's door is opened.

To turn the lights on again, turn the power switch to ON mode, or turn the light switch off once and then back to or .
If any of the doors or trunk lid is kept open, the lights automatically turn off after 20 minutes.

■ **Light reminder buzzer**

A buzzer sounds when the power switch is turned off or turned to ACCESSORY mode and the driver's door is opened while the lights are turned on.

■ **Automatic headlight leveling system**

The level of the headlights is automatically adjusted according to the number of passengers and the loading condition of the vehicle to ensure that the headlights do not interfere with other road users.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Battery-saving function**

In the following conditions, the remaining lights will go off automatically after 20 minutes in order to prevent the vehicle battery from being discharged:

- The headlights and/or tail lights are on.
- The power switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or turned off.

This function will be canceled in any of the following situations:

- When the power switch is turned to ON mode.
- When the light switch is operated.
- When the door or trunk is opened or closed.

■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. light sensor sensitivity) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 571)

⚠ NOTICE

■ **To prevent 12-volt battery discharge**

Do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the hybrid system is off.

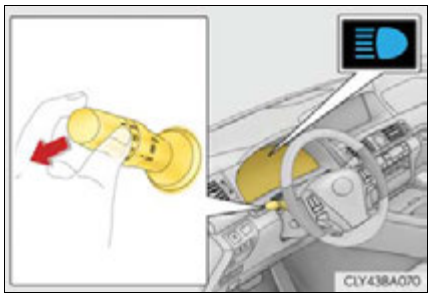
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Automatic High Beam

The Automatic High Beam uses an in-vehicle camera sensor to assess the brightness of streetlights, the lights of oncoming and preceding vehicles, etc., and automatically turns high beam on or off as necessary.

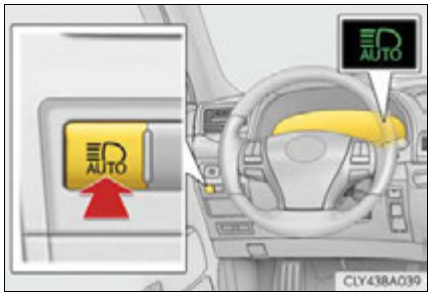
Activating the Automatic High Beam system

1 Push the lever away from you with the headlight switch in AUTO or position.



2 Press the Automatic High Beam switch.

The Automatic High Beam indicator will come on when the headlights are turned on automatically to indicate that the system is active.



DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

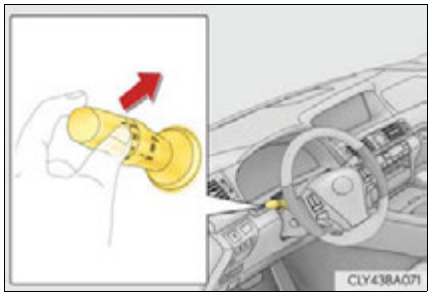
Turning the high beam on/off manually

■ Switching to low beam

Pull the lever to original position.

The Automatic High Beam indicator will turn off.

Push the lever away from you to activate the Automatic High Beam system again.

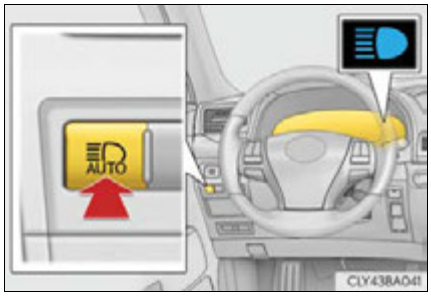


■ Switching to high beam

Press the Automatic High Beam switch.

The Automatic High Beam indicator will turn off and the high beam indicator will turn on.

Press the switch to activate the Automatic High Beam system again.



High beam automatic turning on or off conditions

- When all of the following conditions are fulfilled, high beam will be automatically turned on (after approximately 1 second):
  - Vehicle speed is above approximately 21 mph (34 km/h).
  - The area ahead of the vehicle is dark.
  - There are no oncoming or preceding vehicles with headlights or tail lights turned on.
- If any of the following conditions are fulfilled, high beam will be automatically turned off:
  - Vehicle speed drops below approximately 17 mph (27 km/h).
  - The area ahead of the vehicle is not dark.
  - Oncoming or preceding vehicles have headlights or tail lights turned on.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **The Automatic High Beam can be operated when**

The power switch is in ON mode.

■ **Camera sensor detection information**

- High beam may not be automatically turned off in the following situations:
  - When oncoming vehicles suddenly appear from a curve
  - When the vehicle is cut in front of by another
  - When oncoming or preceding vehicles are hidden from sight due to repeated curves, road dividers or roadside trees
- High beam may be turned off if an oncoming vehicle that is using fog lights without using the headlights is detected.
- House lights, street lights, red traffic signals, and illuminated billboards or signs may cause the high beam to turn off.
- The following factors may affect the amount of time taken to turn high beam on or off:
  - The brightness of headlights, fog lights, and tail lights of oncoming and preceding vehicles
  - The movement and direction of oncoming and preceding vehicles
  - When a oncoming or preceding vehicle only has operational lights on one side
  - When a oncoming or preceding vehicle is a two-wheeled vehicle
  - The condition of the road (gradient, curve, condition of the road surface etc.)
  - The number of passengers and amount of luggage
- High beam may be turned on or off when unexpected by the driver.
- Small vehicles, such as bicycles, may not be detected.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

● In the situations below, the system may not be able to correctly detect the surrounding brightness levels, and may flash or expose oncoming or preceding vehicles to the high beam or may continue using the low beam. Therefore, in these situations you should consider turning the high beams on or off manually rather than relying on the Automatic High Beam system.

- In bad weather (rain, snow, fog, sandstorms etc.)
- The windshield is obscured by fog, mist, ice, dirt etc.
- The windshield is cracked or damaged.
- The inside rear view mirror or camera sensor is deformed or dirty.
- The camera sensor temperature is extremely high.
- Surrounding brightness levels are equal to those of headlights, tail lights or fog lights.
- Vehicles ahead have headlights that are either switched off, dirty, are changing color, or have are not aimed properly.
- When driving through an area of intermittently changing brightness and darkness.
- When frequently and repeatedly driving ascending/descending roads, or roads with rough, bumpy or uneven surfaces (such as stone-paved roads, gravel tracks etc.).
- When frequently and repeatedly taking curves or driving on a winding road.
- There is a highly reflective object ahead of the vehicle, such as a sign or a mirror.
- The back of a vehicle ahead is highly reflective, such as a container on a truck.
- The vehicle's headlights are damaged or dirty.
- The vehicle is listing or tilting, due to a flat tire, a trailer being towed etc.

■ Temporary lowering sensor sensitivity

The sensitivity of the sensor can be temporarily lowered.
To lower the sensitivity, push and hold the "AUTO" button on the inside rear view mirror for 15 to 20 seconds, and release. The indicator light on the inside rear view mirror will flash to indicate that the sensitivity has been lowered.

When the power switch is turned off, the sensitivity will be returned to its normal level.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Limitations of the Automatic High Beam

Do not rely on the Automatic High Beam. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings and turn the high beam on or off manually if necessary.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

■ Notes when using the Automatic High Beam system

Observe the following to ensure that the Automatic High Beam functions correctly.

- Do not touch the camera sensor.
- Do not subject the inside rear view mirror or the camera sensor to a strong impact.
- Do not disassemble the camera sensor.
- Do not spill liquid onto the inside rear view mirror or the camera sensor.
- Do not apply window tinting or stickers to the camera sensor or the area of windshield near the camera sensor.
- Do not place items on the dashboard. There is a possibility that the camera sensor will mistake items reflected in the windshield for streetlights, the headlights of other vehicles, etc.
- Do not install a parking tag or any other accessories near or around the inside rear view mirror and the camera sensor.
- Do not overload the vehicle.
- Do not modify the vehicle.
- If the windshield needs to be replaced, contact your Lexus dealer.

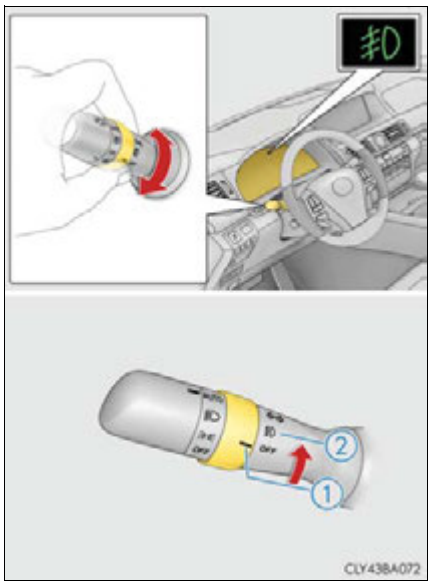
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Fog light switch

The fog lights secure excellent visibility in difficult driving conditions, such as in rain and fog.

① OFF (U.S.A.) or o (Canada)
Turns the front fog lights off

② Turns the front fog lights on



■ **Fog lights can be used when**

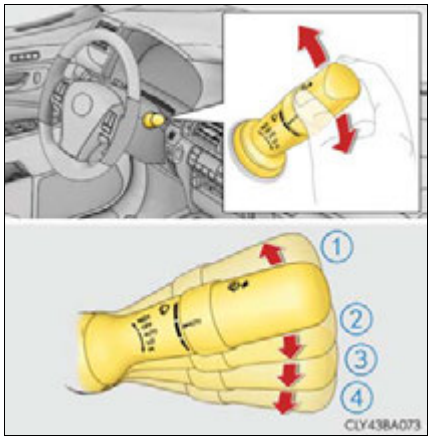
The headlights are on in low beam.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Windshield wipers and washer

Operating the wiper lever

Operate the lever as follows to operate the wipers.



① MIST (U.S.A.) or ⏢ (Canada)
Temporary operation

② AUTO Rain-sensing wiper operation

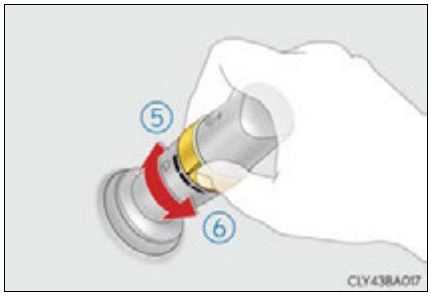
The wipers will operate automatically when the sensor detects falling rain. The system automatically adjusts wiper timing in accordance with rain volume and vehicle speed.

③ LO (U.S.A.) or ▼ (Canada)
Low speed wiper operation

④ HI (U.S.A.) or ▼▼ (Canada)
High speed wiper operation

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

When "AUTO" mode is selected, the sensor sensitivity can be adjusted by turning the switch ring.

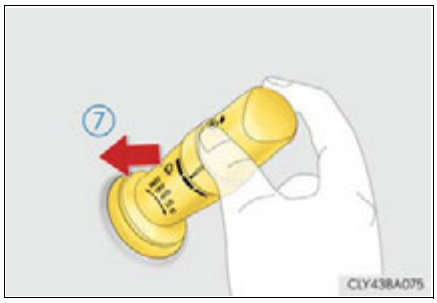


⑤ Increases the sensitivity

⑥ Decreases the sensitivity

⑦ Washer/wiper dual operation

Wipers will automatically operate a couple of times after the washer squirts.



■ **The windshield wiper and washer can be operated when**

The power switch is in ON mode.

■ **Dripping prevention wiper sweep**

After washing and the wiper has operated several times, the wipers operate one more time after a short delay to prevent dripping.

However, the last sweep will not happen if the vehicle is traveling above 106 mph (170 km/h).

■ **Effects of vehicle speed on wiper operation**

Even when the wipers are not in "AUTO" mode, vehicle speed affects the time until the drip prevention wiper sweep occurs.

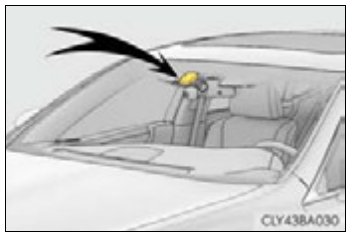
With low speed windshield wiper operation selected, wiper operation will be switched from low speed to intermittent wiper operation only when the vehicle is stationary.
(However, when the sensor sensitivity is adjusted to the highest level, the mode cannot be switched.)

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Raindrop sensor

● The raindrop sensor judges the amount of raindrops.

An optical sensor is adopted. It may not operate properly when sunlight from the rising or setting of the sun intermittently strikes the windshield, or if bugs etc. are present on the windshield.



● If the wiper is turned to "AUTO" mode while the power switch is in ON mode, the wipers will operate once to show that "AUTO" mode is activated.

● If the temperature of the raindrop sensor is 194°F (90°C) or higher, or 5°F (-15°C) or lower, automatic operation may not occur. In this case, operate the wipers in any mode other than "AUTO" mode.

■ If no windshield washer fluid sprays

Check that the washer nozzles are not blocked if there is washer fluid in the windshield washer fluid reservoir.

■ Outside rear view mirror defogger activation linked to windshield wiper operation

The outside rear view mirror defoggers automatically turn on when you operate the windshield wipers.
The outside rear view mirror defoggers automatically turn off approximately 15 minutes after the wipers stop.
For details about the outside rear view mirror defoggers: →P. 362

⚠ CAUTION

■ Caution regarding the use of windshield wipers in "AUTO" mode

The windshield wipers may operate unexpectedly if the sensor is touched or the windshield is subject to vibration in "AUTO" mode. Take care that your fingers or anything else do not become caught in the windshield wipers.

■ Caution regarding the use of washer fluid

When it is cold, do not use the washer fluid until the windshield becomes warm. The fluid may freeze on the windshield and cause low visibility. This may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

■ **When the windshield is dry**

Do not use the wipers, as they may damage the windshield.

■ **When there is no washer fluid spray from the nozzle**

Damage to the washer fluid pump may be caused if the lever is pulled toward you and held continually.

■ **When a nozzle becomes blocked**

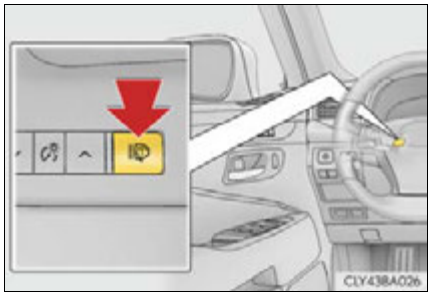
In this case, contact your Lexus dealer.
Do not try to clear it with a pin or other object. The nozzle will be damaged.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Headlight cleaner switch

Washer fluid can be sprayed on the headlights.

Press the switch to clean the headlights.



■ **The headlight cleaners can be operated when**

The power switch is in ON mode and the headlight switch is turned on.

■ **Windshield washer linked operation**

When the windshield washer is operated with the power switch in ON mode and the headlights on, the headlight cleaners will operate once. (→P. 246)

⚠ NOTICE

■ **When the washer fluid tank is empty**

Do not press the switch continually as the washer fluid pump may overheat.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Opening the fuel tank cap

The fuel tank of your vehicle has a special structure, which requires a reduction in fuel tank pressure before refueling. After the opener switch has been pressed, it will take several seconds until the vehicle is ready for refueling.

Before refueling the vehicle

- Close all the doors and windows, and turn the power switch off.
- Confirm the type of fuel.

Fuel types

→P. 557

Fuel tank opening for unleaded gasoline

To help prevent incorrect fueling, your vehicle has a fuel tank opening that only accommodates the special nozzle on unleaded fuel pumps.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ When refueling the vehicle

Observe the following precautions while refueling the vehicle. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- After exiting the vehicle and before opening the fuel door, touch an unpainted metal surface to discharge any static electricity. It is important to discharge static electricity before refueling because sparks resulting from static electricity can cause fuel vapors to ignite while refueling.
- Always hold the grips on the fuel tank cap and turn it slowly to remove it.
  A whooshing sound may be heard when the fuel tank cap is loosened. Wait until the sound cannot be heard before fully removing the cap. In hot weather, pressurized fuel may spray out the filler neck and cause injury.
- Do not allow anyone that has not discharged static electricity from their body to come close to an open fuel tank.
- Do not inhale vaporized fuel.
  Fuel contains substances that are harmful if inhaled.
- Do not smoke while refueling the vehicle.
  Doing so may cause the fuel to ignite and cause a fire.
- Do not return to the vehicle or touch any person or object that is statically charged.
  This may cause static electricity to build up, resulting in a possible ignition hazard.

■ When refueling

Observe the following precautions to prevent fuel overflowing from the fuel tank:

- Securely insert the fuel nozzle into the fuel filler neck.
- Stop filling the tank after the fuel nozzle automatically clicks off.
- Do not top off the fuel tank.

⚠ NOTICE

■ Refueling

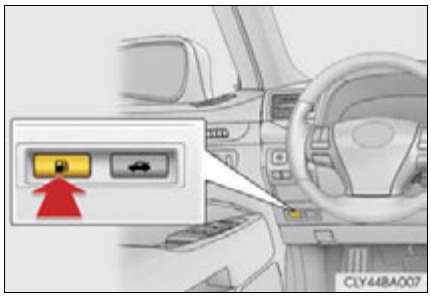
Do not spill fuel during refueling.
Doing so may damage the vehicle, such as causing the emission control system to operate abnormally or damaging fuel system components or the vehicle's painted surface.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

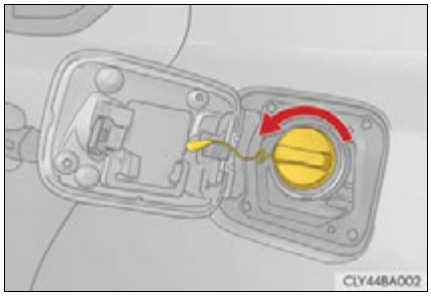
Opening the fuel tank cap

1 Press the opener switch.

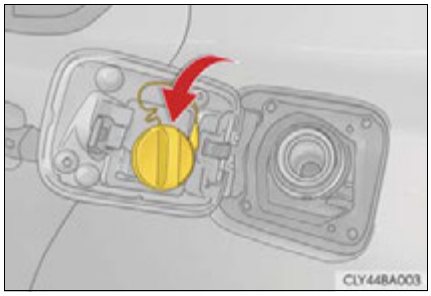
The fuel filler door will open within about 10 seconds of the switch being pressed. Before refueling is possible, a message will be shown on the multi-information display in the instrument cluster to indicate the progress of the fuel filler door opener.



2 Turn the fuel tank cap slowly to open.



3 Hang the fuel tank cap on the back of the fuel filler door.



DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

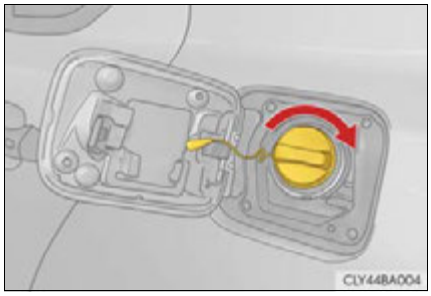
■ When the fuel filler door cannot be opened by pressing the inside switch

● If the fuel filler door opener switch cannot be operated, contact your Lexus dealer to service the vehicle. In case where refueling is urgently necessary, the fuel filler door can be opened using the lever in the trunk.

● Using the lever to open the fuel filler door may not allow for an adequate reduction in fuel tank pressure before refueling. To prevent fuel from spilling out, turn the cap slowly when removing it.
During refueling, fuel may spill out from the filler opening due to air being discharged from inside the fuel tank. Therefore, fill the fuel tank carefully and slowly.

Closing the fuel tank cap

After refueling, turn the fuel tank cap until you hear a click. Once the cap is released, it will turn slightly in the opposite direction.



⚠ CAUTION

■ When replacing the fuel tank cap

Do not use anything but a genuine Lexus fuel tank cap designed for your vehicle. Doing so may cause a fire or other incident which may result in death or serious injury.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

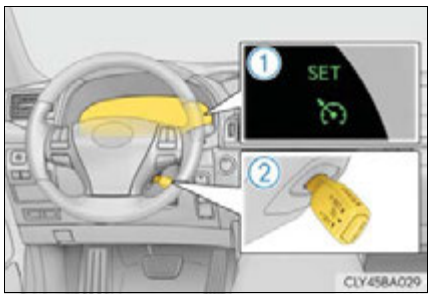
Cruise control*

Summary of functions

Use the cruise control to maintain a set speed without depressing the accelerator pedal.

① Indicators

② Cruise control switch

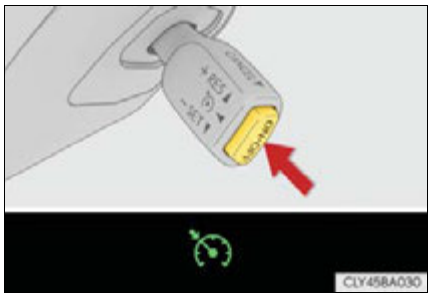


Setting the vehicle speed

1 Press the "ON•OFF" button to activate the cruise control.

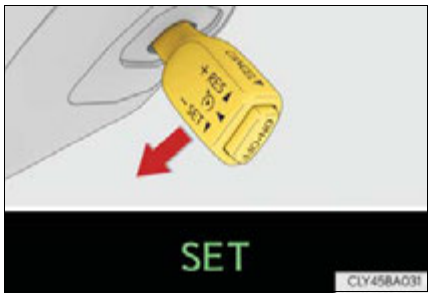
Cruise control indicator will come on.

Press the button again to deactivate the cruise control.



2 Accelerate or decelerate the vehicle to the desired speed, and push the lever down to set the speed.

"SET" indicator will come on.
The vehicle speed at the moment the lever is released becomes the set speed.



*: If equipped

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Adjusting the set speed

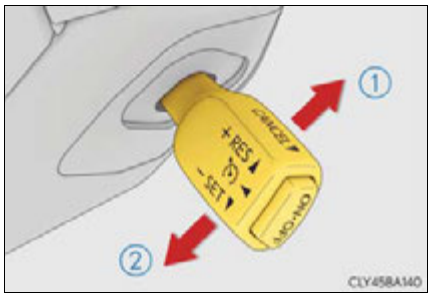
To change the set speed, operate the lever until the desired set speed is obtained.

① Increases the speed

② Decreases the speed

Fine adjustment: Momentarily move the lever in the desired direction.

Large adjustment: Hold the lever in the desired direction.



The set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment: By approximately 1 mph (1.6 km/h) each time the lever is operated.

Large adjustment: The set speed can be increased or decreased continually until the lever is released.

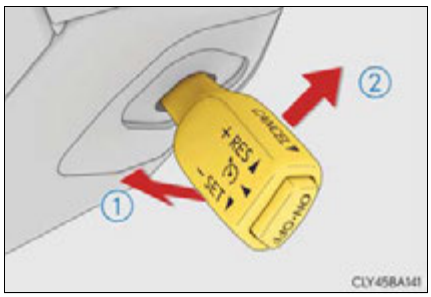
Canceling and resuming the constant speed control

① Pulling the lever toward you cancels the constant speed control.

The speed setting is also canceled when the brakes are applied.

② Pushing the lever up resumes the constant speed control.

Resuming is available when the vehicle speed is more than approximately 25 mph (40 km/h).



DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Cruise control can be set when**

- The shift lever is in D or range 4 or higher of S has been selected.
- Vehicle speed is above approximately 25 mph (40 km/h).

■ **Accelerating after setting the vehicle speed**

- The vehicle can be accelerated normally. After acceleration, the set speed resumes.
- Even without canceling the cruise control, the set speed can be increased by first accelerating the vehicle to the desired speed and then pushing the lever down to set the new speed.

■ **Automatic cruise control cancelation**

Cruise control will stop maintaining the vehicle speed in any of the following situations.

- Actual vehicle speed falls more than approximately 10 mph (16 km/h) below the preset vehicle speed.
  At this time, the memorized set speed is not retained.
- Actual vehicle speed is below approximately 25 mph (40 km/h).
- VSC is activated.
- TRAC is activated for a period of time.
- When the VSC or TRAC system is turned off by pressing the VSC OFF switch.

■ **If the warning message for the cruise control is shown on the multi-information display**

Press the "ON•OFF" button once to deactivate the system, and then press the button again to reactivate the system.
If the cruise control speed cannot be set or if the cruise control cancels immediately after being activated, there may be a malfunction in the cruise control system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ To avoid operating the cruise control by mistake

Switch the cruise control off using the "ON•OFF" button when not in use.

■ Situations unsuitable for cruise control

Do not use cruise control in any of the following situations.
Doing so may result in loss of control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- On steep hills
  Vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when driving down a steep hill.

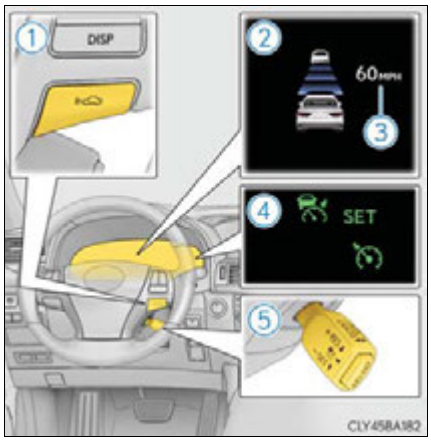
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range*

Summary of functions

Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range supplements conventional cruise control with a vehicle-to-vehicle distance control. In vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle automatically accelerates, decelerates or stops in order to maintain a set following distance from vehicles ahead. See cautions on P. 271

① Vehicle-to-vehicle distance button
② Display
③ Set speed
④ Indicators
⑤ Cruise control switch

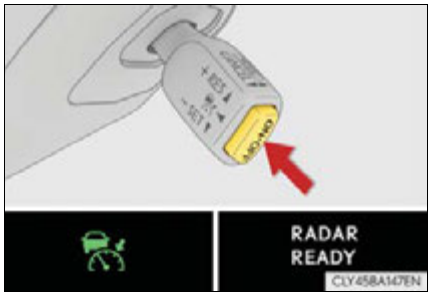


*: If equipped

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Setting the vehicle speed (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

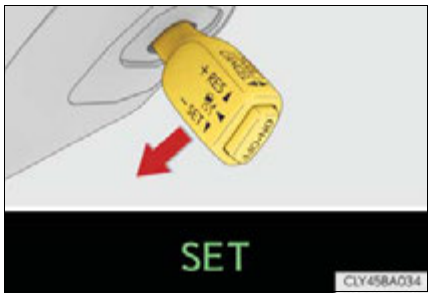
1 Press the "ON•OFF" button to activate the cruise control.



Radar cruise control indicator will come on and a message will be shown on the multi-information display.

Press the button again to deactivate the cruise control.

2 Accelerate or decelerate the vehicle to the desired speed, and push the lever down to set the speed.



"SET" indicator will be displayed.

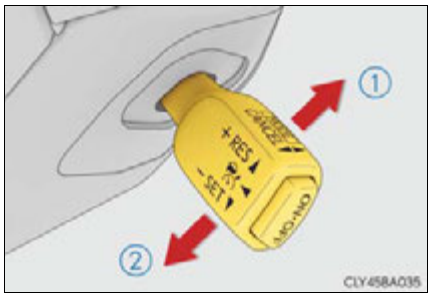
The vehicle speed at the moment the lever is released becomes the set speed.

While the vehicle is in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, if the lever is released when vehicle speed is less than 30 mph (50 km/h) and a vehicle ahead can be detected, the vehicle will start following the vehicle ahead at a set speed of 30 mph (50 km/h).

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Adjusting the set speed

To change the set speed, operate the lever until the desired set speed is displayed.



① Increases the speed

(Except when the vehicle has been stopped by system control in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

② Decreases the speed

Fine adjustment: Momentarily move the lever in the desired direction.

Large adjustment: Hold the lever in the desired direction.

In the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

- When the set speed is shown in "MPH"

  Fine adjustment: By approximately 1 mph (1.6 km/h) each time the lever is operated

  Large adjustment: By approximately 5 mph (8 km/h) for each 0.75 seconds the lever is held
- When the set speed is shown in "km/h"

  Fine adjustment: By approximately 0.6 mph (1 km/h) each time the lever is operated

  Large adjustment: By approximately 3.1 mph (5 km/h) for each 0.75 seconds the lever is held

In the constant speed control mode (→P. 267), the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment: By approximately 1 mph (1.6 km/h) each time the lever is operated

Large adjustment: The set speed can be increased or decreased continually until the lever is released.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Changing the vehicle-to-vehicle distance

Pressing the button changes the vehicle-to-vehicle distance as follows:

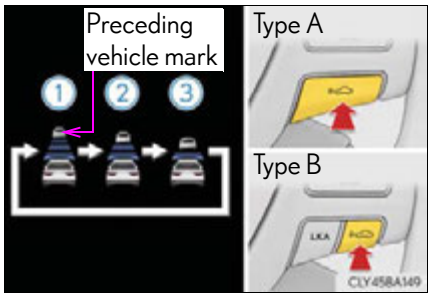
① Long

② Medium

③ Short

The vehicle-to-vehicle distance is set automatically to long mode when the power switch is turned to ON mode.

If a vehicle is running ahead of you, the preceding vehicle mark will also be displayed.



Vehicle-to-vehicle distance settings

Select a distance from the table below. Note that the distances shown correspond to a vehicle speed of 50 mph (80 km/h). Vehicle-to-vehicle distance increases/decreases in accordance with vehicle speed. When the vehicle is stopped by system control, the vehicle-to-vehicle distance will be about 10 ft. (3 m) to 16 ft. (5 m) regardless of the vehicle-to-vehicle distance setting.

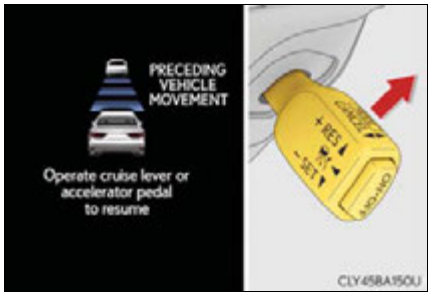
Distance options	Vehicle-to-vehicle distance
Long	Approximately 160 ft. (50 m)
Medium	Approximately 130 ft. (40 m)
Short	Approximately 100 ft. (30 m)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Resuming follow-up cruising when the vehicle has been stopped by system control

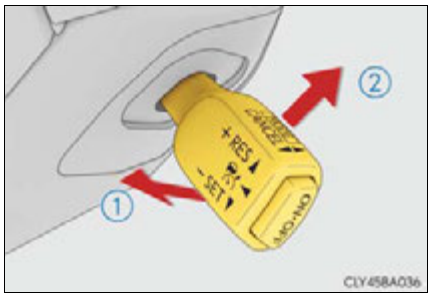
After the vehicle ahead of you starts off, push the lever up.

Your vehicle will also resume follow-up cruising if the accelerator pedal is depressed after the vehicle ahead of you starts off.



DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Canceling and resuming the speed control



① Pulling the lever toward you cancels the cruise control.

The setting is also canceled when the brake pedal is depressed while driving.
(When the vehicle has been stopped by system control, applying the brakes does not cancel the setting.)

② Pushing the lever up resumes the cruise control and returns vehicle speed to the set speed.

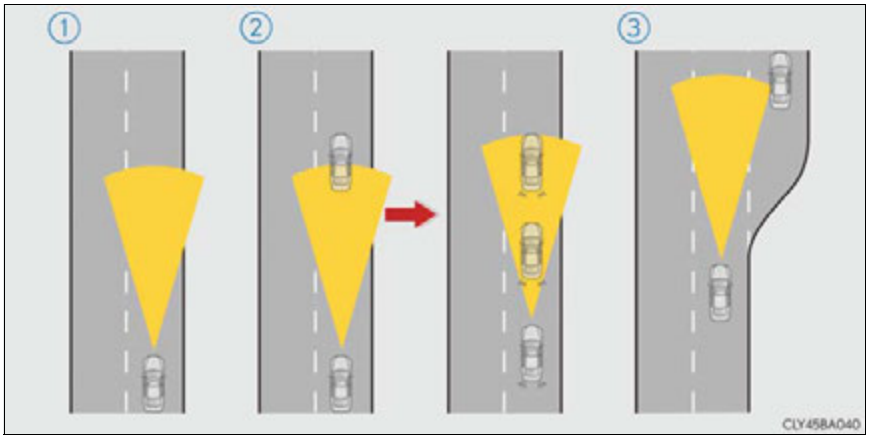
However, when a vehicle ahead is not detected in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, cruise control does not resume when the actual vehicle speed is approximately 25 mph (40 km/h) or less. Also, when the vehicle is in constant speed control mode and the actual vehicle speed is approximately 25 mph (40 km/h) or less, cruise control does not resume as the set speed is cleared.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Driving in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode

This mode employs a radar sensor to detect the presence of vehicles up to approximately 400 ft. (120 m) ahead, determines the current vehicle-to-vehicle following distance, and operates to maintain a suitable following distance from the vehicle ahead.

Note that vehicle-to-vehicle distance will close in when traveling on long downhill slopes.



① Example of constant speed cruising
When there are no vehicles ahead

The vehicle travels at the speed set by the driver. The desired vehicle-to-vehicle distance can also be set by operating the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control.

② Example of deceleration cruising and follow-up cruising
When the vehicle ahead is driving slower than the set speed

When a vehicle is detected running ahead of you, the system automatically decelerates your vehicle. When a greater reduction in vehicle speed is necessary, the system applies the brakes. The system will respond to changes in the speed of the vehicle ahead in order to maintain the vehicle-to-vehicle distance set by the driver. A warning tone warns you when the system cannot decelerate sufficiently to prevent your vehicle from closing in on the vehicle ahead. When the vehicle ahead of you stops, your vehicle will also stop. After the vehicle ahead starts off, pushing the cruise control lever up or depressing the accelerator pedal will resume follow-up cruising.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

③ Example of acceleration

When there are no longer any vehicles ahead driving slower than the set speed

The system accelerates until the set speed is reached. The system then returns to constant speed cruising.

Approach warning

When your vehicle is too close to a vehicle ahead, and sufficient automatic deceleration via the cruise control is not possible, the display will flash and the buzzer will sound to alert the driver. An example of this would be if another driver cuts in front of you while you are following a vehicle. Apply the brakes to ensure an appropriate vehicle-to-vehicle distance.

■ Warnings may not occur when

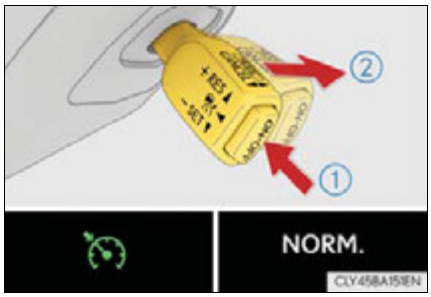
In the following instances, there is a possibility that the warnings will not occur:

- When the speed of the vehicle ahead matches or exceeds your vehicle speed
- When the vehicle ahead is traveling at an extremely slow speed or is stationary
- Immediately after the cruise control speed was set
- At the instant the accelerator is applied

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Selecting conventional constant speed control mode

When constant speed control mode is selected, your vehicle will maintain a set speed without controlling the vehicle-to-vehicle distance. Select this mode only when vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode does not function correctly due to dirt etc.



① Press the "ON•OFF" button to activate the cruise control.

Radar cruise control indicator will come on and a message will be shown on the multi-information display.

Press the button again to deactivate the cruise control.

② Switch to constant speed control mode.
(Push the lever forward and hold for approximately 1 second.)

Cruise control indicator will come on and a message will be shown on the multi-information display.

When in constant speed control mode, to return to vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, push the lever forward again and hold for approximately 1 second.

After the desired speed has been set, it is not possible to return to vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode.

If the power switch is turned off and then turned to ON mode again, the vehicle will automatically return to vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Adjusting the speed setting: →P. 261

Canceling and resuming the speed setting: →P. 264

■ **Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range can be set when**

- The shift lever is in D or range 4 or higher of S has been selected.
- Vehicle speed is above approximately 30 mph (50 km/h).

■ **Accelerating after setting the vehicle speed**

The vehicle can accelerate normally. After acceleration, the set speed resumes. However, during vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle speed may decrease below the set speed in order to maintain the distance to the vehicle ahead.

■ **Automatic cancelation of vehicle-to-vehicle distance control**

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control driving is automatically canceled in the following situations:

- Actual vehicle speed falls below approximately 25 mph (40 km/h) when there are no vehicle ahead.
- The preceding vehicle leaves the lane when your vehicle is following at a speed below 25 mph (40 km/h).
- VSC is activated.
- TRAC is activated for a period of time.
- When the VSC or TRAC system is turned off by pressing the VSC OFF switch.
- The sensor cannot operate correctly because it is covered in some way.
- The windshield wipers are operating at high speed (when the wiper switch is set to the "AUTO" mode or the high speed wiper operation position).
- When snow mode is set.
- The parking brake is operated.
- The vehicle is stopped by system control on a steep incline.
- Pre-collision brake assist is activated.
- The following are detected when the vehicle has been stopped by system control:
  - The driver is not wearing a seat belt.
  - The driver's door is opened.
  - The trunk or hood is opened.
  - The vehicle has been stopped for about 3 minutes.

If vehicle-to-vehicle distance control driving is automatically canceled for any other reason, there may be a malfunction in the system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Automatic cancelation of constant speed control**

The cruise control will stop maintaining the vehicle speed in the following situations:

- Actual vehicle speed is more than approximately 10 mph (16 km/h) below the set vehicle speed.
  At this time, the memorized set speed is not retained.
- Actual vehicle speed falls below approximately 25 mph (40 km/h).
- VSC is activated.
- TRAC is activated for a period of time.
- When the VSC or TRAC system is turned off by pressing the VSC OFF switch.

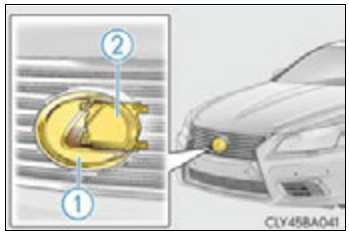
■ **When the LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) will be activated (if equipped)**

Using the radar cruise control in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, lane keeping assistance control is activated.

■ **Radar sensor and grille cover**

Always keep the sensor and grille cover clean to ensure that the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control operates properly. (Some obstructions, such as snow, ice and plastic objects, cannot be detected by the obstruction sensor.)
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range is canceled if an obstruction is detected.

① Grille cover
② Radar sensor



■ **Warning messages and buzzers for dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range**

Warning messages and buzzers are used to indicate a system malfunction or to inform the driver of the need for caution while driving. (→P. 509)

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Certification for the dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range**

▶ For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.

FCC ID: HYQDNMWR004

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Radiofrequency radiation exposure Information:

This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment.

This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance of 20 cm between the radiator (antenna) and your body.

This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

▶ For vehicles sold in Canada

This device complies with Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s).

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range is designed to detect motor vehicles intended for use on public highways, with the exception of motorcycles. It will not detect: stationary objects, pedestrians, motorcycles, bicycles, animals, and similarly sized, or smaller, moving objects. The driver must always be aware of surroundings and in control of the vehicle.

■ Before using dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range

Do not overly rely on vehicle-to-vehicle distance control.
Be aware of the set speed. If automatic deceleration/acceleration is not appropriate, adjust the vehicle speed, as well as the distance between your vehicle and vehicles ahead, by applying the brakes etc.

■ Cautions regarding the driving assist systems

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

The system, even in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, only assists the driver:

- To measure following distance
  The dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range is only intended to help the driver in determining the following distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated vehicle traveling ahead. It is not a mechanism that allows careless or inattentive driving, and it is not a system that can assist the driver in low-visibility conditions. It is still necessary for driver to pay close attention to the vehicle's surroundings.
- To judge proper following distance
  The dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range determines whether the following distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated vehicle traveling ahead is appropriate or not. It is not capable of making any other type of judgement. Therefore, it is absolutely necessary for the driver to remain vigilant and to determine whether or not there is a possibility of danger in any given situation.
- To operate the vehicle
  The dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range cannot prevent or avoid all collisions. Therefore, if there is ever any danger, the driver must take immediate and direct control of the vehicle and act appropriately in order to ensure the safety of all involved.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ To avoid inadvertent dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range activation

Switch the cruise control off using the "ON•OFF" button when not in use.

■ Situations unsuitable for dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range

Do not use dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range in any of the following situations.
Doing so may result in inappropriate speed control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- In heavy traffic
- On city streets
- On roads with sharp turns
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- On steep downhills, or where there are sudden changes between sharp up and down gradients
  Vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when driving down a steep hill.
- At entrances to expressways
- When weather conditions are bad enough that they may prevent the sensors from functioning correctly (fog, snow, sandstorm, heavy rain, etc.)
- When an approach warning buzzer is heard often
- In areas where the driver is likely to encounter pedestrians, motorcyclists, bicyclists, animals, stationary objects or other people/objects not detectable by the system. (→P. 271)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ When the sensor may not be correctly detecting a vehicle ahead

Apply the brakes as necessary when any of the following types of vehicles are in front of you.
As the sensor may not be able to correctly detect these types of vehicles, the approach warning (→P. 266) will not be activated, and a fatal or serious accident may result.

- Vehicles traveling at low speeds
- Vehicles that are stationary
- Motorcycles traveling in the same lane
- Vehicles with small rear ends (trailers with no load on board etc.)
- Vehicles that cut in suddenly

Details about other people/objects the system will not detect:
→P. 271

■ Conditions under which the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control may not function correctly

Apply the brakes as necessary in the following conditions as the radar sensor may not be able to correctly detect vehicles ahead, and a fatal or serious accident may result:

- When water or snow splashed by the surrounding vehicles hinders the functioning of the sensor
- When your vehicle is tilted upwards (due to a heavy load in the trunk etc.)
- When the road curves or when the lanes are narrow
- When steering wheel operation or your position in the lane is unstable
- When the vehicle ahead decelerates suddenly as the system is not able to respond to sudden braking.

Details about limitations:
→P. 271

Details about unsuitable conditions:
→P. 272

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Handling the radar sensor

Observe the following to ensure the cruise control system can function effectively.

Otherwise, the system may not function correctly and could result in an accident.

- Keep the sensor and grille cover clean at all times.
  Clean the sensor and grille cover with a soft cloth so you do not mark or damage them.
- Do not subject the sensor or surrounding area to a strong impact.
  If the sensor moves even slightly off position, the system may malfunction. If the sensor or surrounding area is subject to a strong impact, always have the area inspected and adjusted by your Lexus dealer.
- Do not disassemble the sensor.
- Do not attach accessories or stickers to the sensor, grille cover or surrounding area.
- Do not modify or paint the sensor and grille cover.
- If the radar sensor needs to be replaced, contact your Lexus dealer.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist)*

Summary of functions

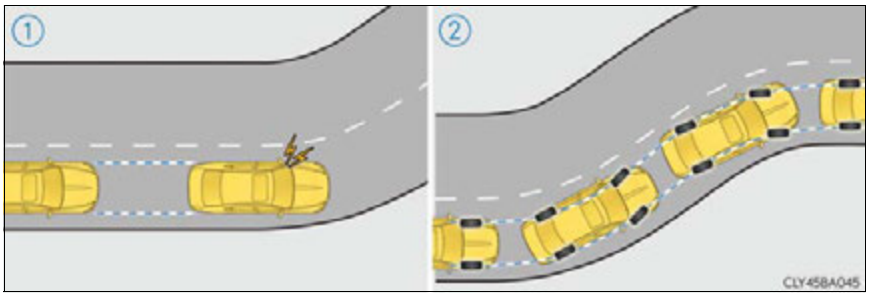
While driving on a freeway or motor highway that has lane markers and no sharp curves, the system recognizes the lanes using a camera located above the inside rear view mirror as a sensor to assist the driver with staying in the lane. The LKA system has two functions.

Camera sensor

*: If equipped

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Functions included in the LKA



① Lane departure warning function

If the system judges that the vehicle may deviate from its lane, it alerts the driver using rapid beeping, indications on the multi-information display, and a sensory warning* given via the steering wheel.

*: A slight steering torque is applied for a short period of time in the direction of the center of the lane.

② Lane keeping assist function

- This function will be active when the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode of the dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range (→P. 259) is set with vehicle speed above approximately 45 mph (72 km/h) and while the lane departure warning function is active.
- When the lane keeping assist function is active, a slight steering torque will be applied, to help the driver maintain the vehicle inside the lane.

  The lane keeping assist function will be temporarily canceled if the steering wheel is not operated, or if you continue driving with your hands lightly touching the steering wheel. (→P. 280)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

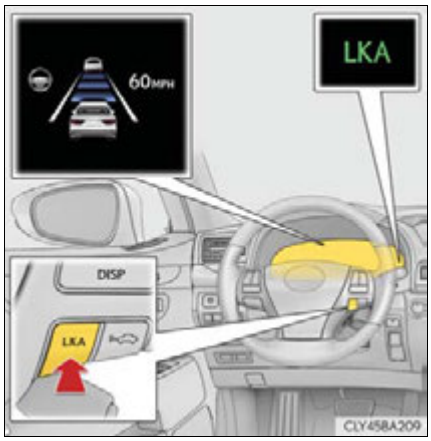
Turning the LKA system on

Press the LKA switch to activate the system.

LKA indicator will come on.

Press the switch again to turn the LKA system off.

The LKA system will revert to off each time the power switch is turned to ON mode.



DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Operating conditions for each function

Lane departure warning function

- When the vehicle speed is approximately 30 mph (48 km/h) or more
- When the lane width is more than approximately 9.8 ft. (3.0 m)
- When driving on a straight road or through a curve with a radius of more than approximately 394 ft. (120 m)

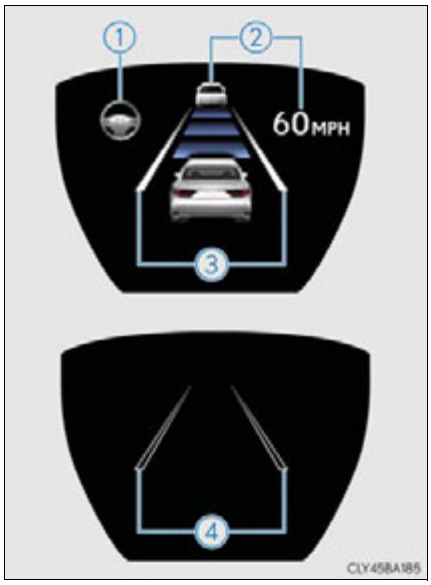
Lane keeping assist function

- When the vehicle speed is between approximately 45 and 112 mph (72 and 180 km/h)
- When the vehicle-to-vehicle distance mode of the dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range is on, and the set vehicle speed is approximately 45 mph (72 km/h) or more (the function will not operate when the dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range is in set speed mode)
- When the lane width is between approximately 9.8 and 13.1 ft. (3.0 and 4.0 m)
- When driving on a straight road or through a curve with a radius of more than approximately 656 ft. (200 m)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Indication on the multi-information display

When the LKA system is on, the lane line display and steering wheel display are shown.



① Lane keeping assist function operation indication

Steering wheel displayed:
Indicates that the function is currently operating. (If the lane departure warning operates at this time, the steering wheel flashes orange.)
Steering wheel not displayed:
Indicates that the function is not currently operating. (When the lane keeping assist function is canceled, the buzzer will beep twice.)

② Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range display

③ Lane departure warning function indication (when the inside of the white line is white):

The function has recognized lane markers. (If the lane departure warning operates at this time, the lines flash orange.)

④ Lane departure warning function indication (when the inside of the white line is black):

A lane marker is not recognized by the system, or the LKA system functions are temporarily canceled.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Temporary cancelation of the LKA system functions**

If any of the following occurs, the LKA system functions will be temporarily canceled. The functions will resume after the necessary operating conditions have returned.

- The steering wheel is turned as far as necessary to cause the vehicle to change lanes.
- When the system detects no-handed driving. (The lane keeping assist function will be temporarily canceled, but the lane departure warning function will continue.)
- The turn signal lever is operated.
- The vehicle speed deviates from the operating range of the LKA system functions. (The buzzer will beep twice when the lane keeping assist function is being canceled.)
- When the lane lines cannot be recognized while driving.
- When the wiper switch is in the high speed position or is set to "AUTO" mode with the wipers operating at high speed. (The lane keeping assist function will be temporarily canceled, but the lane departure warning function will continue.)
- If the vehicle crosses a line for approximately half a minute or more. (The lane keeping assist function will be temporarily canceled, but the lane departure warning function will continue.)
- When the lane departure warning function is activated.
  The lane departure warning function will not operate again for several seconds after it has been activated, even if the vehicle leaves the lane again.

■ **The lane departure warning**

It may be difficult to feel the sensory warning depending on the road conditions.

■ **No-handed driving warning**

If the steering wheel is not operated for approximately 15 seconds on a straight road or approximately 5 seconds on a curve, the buzzer will beep twice, indicators on the multi-information display will flash, and the lane keeping assist function will be temporarily canceled. If you drive the vehicle with your hands lightly touching the steering wheel, this may also be detected as no-handed driving.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **After the vehicle has been parked in the sun**

The LKA system functions may not be available and a warning message (→P. 509) will be displayed for a while after driving has started. In such cases, turn the LKA system off and turn it on again after normal temperature returns. When the temperature in the cabin decreases and the temperature around the camera sensor (→P. 275) becomes suitable for its operation, the functions will begin to operate.

■ **If there are lane markers on only one side of the vehicle**

The lane keeping assist function will not operate. Also, the lane departure warning will not operate for the side on which lane markers could not be recognized.

■ **Conditions in which the function may not operate correctly**

In the following conditions, the LKA system functions may not operate, or it may not be possible to ensure adequate performance. Also, the camera sensor may be unable to recognize lane lines causing the lane departure warning function to operate incorrectly, or the lane keeping assist function may not operate properly. However, this does not indicate a malfunction.

- When driving through an area with no lane markers, such as a tollbooth, a crossing or before a ticket checkpoint
- When driving on a sharp curve
- When lanes are extremely narrow or extremely wide
- When the vehicle leans to one side an unusual amount due to a heavy load or improper tire inflation pressure
- When the following distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead is extremely short
- When the lane markers are yellow (These may be more difficult for the system to recognize compared to white markers.)
- When the lane markers are broken, “Botts’ dots”, “Raised pavement marker” or stones
- When lane markers are obscured or partially obscured by sand, dirt, etc.
- When there are shadows on the road running parallel with lane markers, or if a shadow covers the lane markers
- When driving on a particularly bright road surface, such as concrete
- When driving on a road surface that is bright due to reflected light
- When driving in a location where the light level changes rapidly, such as the entrance to or exit from a tunnel
- When sunlight or the headlights of oncoming vehicles are shining directly into the camera lens
- When driving on roads that are branching or merging

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

- When driving on a road surface that is wet due to rain, previous rainfall, standing water, etc.
- When the vehicle experiences strong up-and-down motion such as when driving on an extremely rough road or on a seam in the pavement
- When headlight brightness at nighttime is reduced due to dirt on the lenses, or when the headlights are misaligned
- When driving with a strong crosswind
- When driving on winding roads or roads that are uneven
- When driving on rough or unpaved roads

When changing the tires

Depending on the tires used, such as snow tires, etc., sufficient performance may not be maintainable.

Warning messages for LKA

Warning messages are used to indicate a system malfunction or to inform the driver of the need for caution while driving. (→P. 509)

⚠ CAUTION

Before using the LKA system

Do not rely solely on the LKA system. The LKA system does not drive the vehicle automatically, nor does it reduce the amount of care you need to take. As such, the driver must always assume full responsibility for understanding his/her surroundings, for operating the steering wheel to correct the driving line, and for driving safely.
Inappropriate or negligent driving could lead to an accident.

To avoid operating the LKA by mistake

Switch the LKA off using the LKA switch when not in use.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Situations unsuitable for LKA

Do not use LKA in any of the following situations.
Otherwise, the system may not function correctly and could result in an accident.

- When driving with tire chains or similar equipment
- When the tires have been excessively worn, or when the tire inflation pressure is low
- When there are objects or structures along the roadside that might be misinterpreted as lane markers (such as guardrails, curb, reflector posts, etc.)
- When driving on snowy roads
- When pavement lane markers are difficult to see due to rain, snow, fog, sand, dirt, etc.
- When there are visible lines on the pavement from road repairs, or if the remains of old lane markers are still visible on the road
- When driving on slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- When driving in a lane other than the driving or passing lanes on a freeway or highway
- When driving on a road with lane closures due to maintenance, or when driving in a temporary lane

⚠ NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to or incorrect operation of the LKA system

- Do not modify the headlights or attach stickers to the surface of the lights.
- Do not modify the suspension.
  If any suspension parts need to be replaced, contact your Lexus dealer.
- Do not install or place anything on the hood or the grille. Also, do not install a grille guard (bull bars, kangaroo bar etc.).
- Do not modify the sun visor.
  If the sun visor needs to be replaced, contact your Lexus dealer.
- If the windshield needs to be replaced, contact your Lexus dealer.

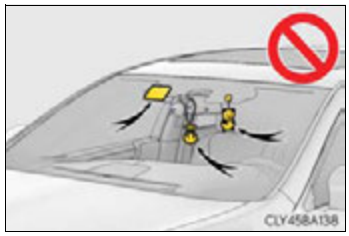
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

■ Camera sensor (→P. 275)

Observe the following to ensure that the LKA system functions correctly.

- Keep the windshield clean at all times.
  Performance could be affected if the windshield is dirty, or if raindrops, condensation or ice are adhering to the windshield.
- Do not attach a sticker or other items to the windshield near the camera sensor.
- Do not install or place anything near the camera.

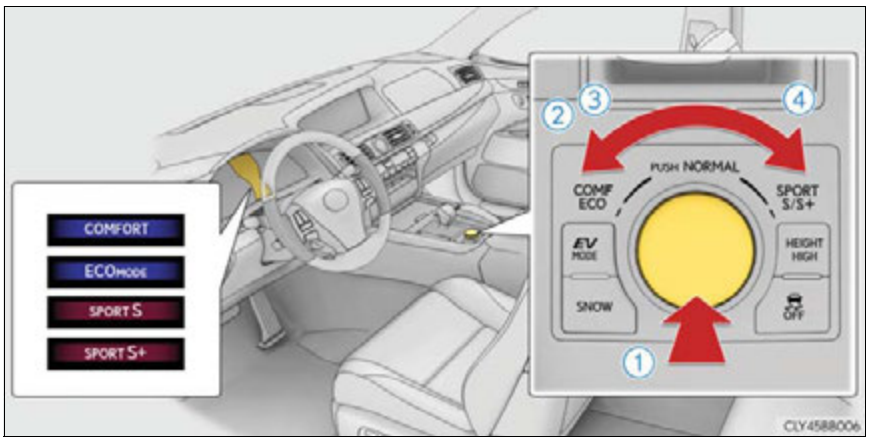


- Do not attach window tinting to the windshield.
- Do not install an antenna in front of the camera lens.
- If the windshield is fogged up, use the windshield defogger to remove fog from the windshield.
  When it is cold, using the heater with air blowing to the feet may allow the upper part of the windshield to fog up. This will have a negative effect on the images.
- Do not place anything on the dashboard.
  The camera sensor may recognize the image reflected on the windshield as lane markers by mistake.
- Do not scratch the camera lens, or let it get dirty.
  When cleaning the inside of the windshield, be careful not to get any glass cleaner etc. on the lens. Also, do not touch the lens.
  For lens repair, contact your Lexus dealer.
- Do not change the installation position or direction of the camera sensor or remove it. The direction of the camera sensor is precisely adjusted.
- Do not subject the camera sensor to strong impact or force, and do not disassemble the camera sensor.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Driving mode select switch

The driving modes can be selected to suit driving condition.



① Normal mode

For normal driving.

Press the switch to change the driving mode to normal mode when not in normal mode.

② Comfort mode

By controlling the suspension, riding comfort is further enhanced. Suitable for city driving.

When not in comfort mode and the driving mode select switch is turned to the left, the "COMFORT" indicator comes on in the multi-information display.

③ Eco drive mode

Use Eco drive mode to help achieve low fuel consumption during trips that involve frequent accelerating.

When in comfort mode and the driving mode select switch is turned to the left, the "ECO MODE" indicator comes on in the multi-information display.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

④ Sport mode

- SPORT S mode

  Assists acceleration response by controlling the hybrid system. Suitable for when powerful acceleration is desirable.

  When not in SPORT S mode and the driving mode select switch is turned to the right, the "SPORT S" indicator comes on in the multi-information display, and the Hybrid System Indicator changes to the tachometer. (→P. 99)

- SPORT S+ mode

  Helps to ensure steering performance and driving stability by simultaneously controlling the steering and suspension in addition to the hybrid system. Suitable for sporty driving.

  When in SPORT S mode and the driving mode select switch is turned to the right, the "SPORT S+" indicator comes on in the multi-information display.

■ **Operation of the air conditioning system in Eco drive mode**

Eco drive mode controls the heating/cooling operations and fan speed of the air conditioning system to enhance fuel efficiency (→P. 340). To improve air conditioning performance, adjust the fan speed or turn off Eco drive mode.

■ **Sport mode automatic deactivation**

Sport mode is automatically deactivated if the power switch is turned off after driving in sport mode.

■ **Driving mode pop-up display**

When the driving mode is changed, the selected driving mode will be temporarily displayed on the side display. (→P. 338)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Electronically modulated air suspension

By independently controlling the damping force of the shock absorbers for each of the 4 wheels according to the road and driving conditions and the selected driving mode, this system achieves ride comfort with superior steering stability, and ensures good vehicle posture.
In addition, vehicle height can be selected according to road and driving conditions.

The vehicle height is maintained at the selected level regardless of the number of occupants and luggage weight.

Turns high mode on/off.

When on, the "HEIGHT HIGH" indicator will come on.

■ **Operating sound of the air suspension compressor**

When the vehicle height is lowered, such as when entering or loading the vehicle, or high mode is selected, the compressor may operate and a whirring sound may be heard. This does not indicate a malfunction.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ **Be sure to stop the hybrid system in the following situations in order to stop operation of the electronically modulated air suspension:**

- The vehicle is parked on a curb.
- Any of the wheels is stuck in a ditch.
- It is necessary to jack up the vehicle.
- It is necessary to tow the vehicle with part of it lifted.

If the power switch remains in ON mode, the vehicle height may change, and you may catch part of your body in the vehicle, resulting in accidental damage.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Driving assist systems

To help enhance driving safety and performance, the following systems operate automatically in response to various driving situations. Be aware, however, that these systems are supplementary and should not be relied upon too heavily when operating the vehicle.

◆ ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)

Helps to prevent wheel lock when the brakes are applied suddenly, or if the brakes are applied while driving on a slippery road surface

◆ Brake assist

Generates an increased level of braking force after the brake pedal is depressed when the system detects a panic stop situation

◆ VSC (Vehicle Stability Control)

Helps the driver to control skidding when swerving suddenly or turning on slippery road surfaces

◆ TRAC (Traction Control)

Helps to maintain drive power and prevent the drive wheels from spinning when starting the vehicle or accelerating on slippery roads

◆ Hill-start assist control

Helps to prevent the vehicle from rolling backward when starting on an incline or slippery slope

◆ VGRS (Variable Gear Ratio Steering)

Adjusts the wheel turning angle in accordance with the vehicle speed and steering wheel movement

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

EPS (Electric Power Steering)

Employs an electric motor to reduce the amount of effort needed to turn the steering wheel

VDIM (Vehicle Dynamics Integrated Management)

Provides integrated control of the ABS, brake assist, TRAC, VSC, hill-start assist control, EPS and VGRS systems

Helps to maintain vehicle stability when swerving on slippery road surfaces by controlling the brakes, hybrid system output, steering assist, and steering ratio

PCS (Pre-Collision System) (if equipped)

→P. 296

BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) (if equipped)

→P. 309

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

When the TRAC/VSC/ABS/hill-start assist control systems are operating

The slip indicator light will flash while the TRAC/VSC/ABS/hill-start assist control systems are operating.

The stop lights and high mounted stoplight turn on when the hill-start assist control system is operating.

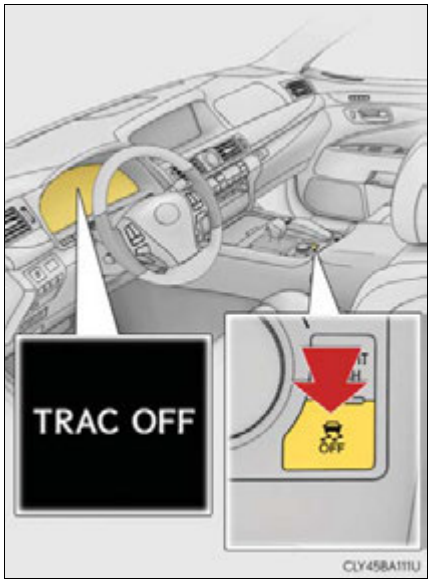
Disabling the TRAC/VSC systems

If the vehicle gets stuck in fresh snow or mud, the TRAC and VSC systems may reduce power from the hybrid system to the wheels. Pressing VSC OFF switch to turn the system off may make it easier for you to rock the vehicle in order to free it.

■ Turning off the TRAC system only

To turn the TRAC system off, quickly press and release the switch.

The "TRAC OFF" will be shown on the multi-information display. Press the switch again to turn the system back on.



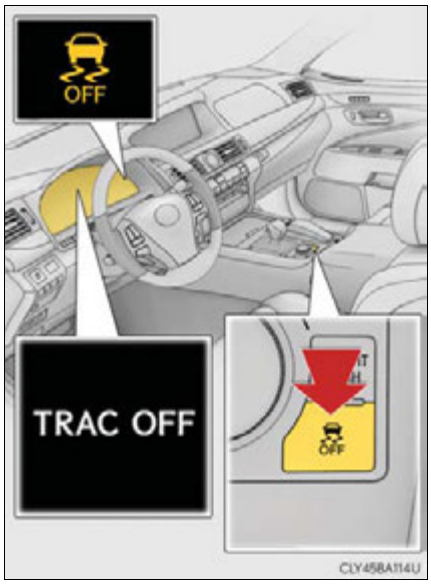
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Turning off both TRAC and VSC systems

To turn the TRAC and VSC systems off, press and hold the switch for more than 3 seconds while the vehicle is stopped.

The VSC OFF indicator light will come on and the "TRAC OFF" will be shown on the multi-information display.*

Press the switch again to turn the systems back on.



*: On vehicles with pre-collision system, pre-collision alert braking, pre-collision brake assist and pre-collision braking will also be disabled. The pre-collision system warning light will come on and the "Pre-collision brakes are disabled because VSC is OFF" will be shown on the multi-information display. (→P. 296)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Hill-start assist control is operational when**

- The system has detected that the vehicle is moving backward.
- The shift lever is in the D or S position.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.

■ **VGRS is disabled when**

VGRS may stop operating in the following situations.
In this event, the steering wheel may move from its straight forward position, but it will return when the system restarts.

- When the steering wheel is operated for an extended period of time while the vehicle is stopped or is moving very slowly
- When the steering wheel has been held fully to the left or right
- When the 12-volt battery is low or the voltage temporarily drops

The center position of the steering wheel may change when VGRS is disabled. However, the position will return to normal after VGRS is reactivated.

■ **Sounds and vibrations caused by the ABS, brake assist, TRAC, VSC, hill-start assist control and VGRS systems**

- A sound may be heard from the engine compartment when the brake pedal is depressed repeatedly, when the hybrid system is started or just after the vehicle begins to move. This sound does not indicate that a malfunction has occurred in any of these systems.
- Any of the following conditions may occur when the above systems are operating. None of these indicates that a malfunction has occurred.
  - Vibrations may be felt through the vehicle body and steering.
  - A motor sound may be heard after the vehicle comes to a stop.
- The steering wheel may be moved slightly or a sound may be heard when the hybrid system is started or stopped. None of these indicate that a malfunction has occurred.

■ **EPS operation sound**

When the steering wheel is operated, a motor sound (whirring sound) may be heard. This does not indicate a malfunction.

■ **Reactivation of the TRAC/VSC systems**

Even after the TRAC/VSC systems have been turned off, turning the hybrid system off and then on again will automatically reactivate the TRAC/VSC systems.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Reactivation of the TRAC system linked to vehicle speed**

When only the TRAC system is turned off, the TRAC system will turn on when vehicle speed increases. However, when both TRAC/VSC systems are turned off, the systems will not turn on even when vehicle speed increases.

■ **Reduced effectiveness of the EPS system**

The effectiveness of the EPS system is reduced to prevent the system from overheating when there is frequent steering input over an extended period of time. The steering wheel may feel heavy as a result.* Should this occur, refrain from excessive steering input or stop the vehicle and turn the hybrid system off. The EPS system should return to normal within 10 minutes.

*: If the LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) system cannot operate in this case, a warning message will be shown on the multi-information display.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **The ABS does not operate effectively when**

- The limits of tire gripping performance have been exceeded (such as excessively worn tires on a snow covered road).
- The vehicle hydroplanes while driving at high speed on wet or slick roads.

■ **Stopping distance when the ABS is operating may exceed that of normal conditions**

The ABS is not designed to shorten the vehicle's stopping distance. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you, especially in the following situations:

- When driving on dirt, gravel or snow-covered roads
- When driving with tire chains
- When driving over bumps in the road
- When driving over roads with potholes or uneven surfaces

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ TRAC may not operate effectively when

Directional control and power may not be achievable while driving on slippery road surfaces, even if the TRAC system is operating.
Do not drive the vehicle in conditions where stability and power may be lost.

■ Hill- start assist control does not operate effectively when

Do not overly rely on the hill-start assist control. The hill-start assist control may not operate effectively on steep inclines and roads covered with ice.

■ When the VSC is activated

The slip indicator light flashes. Always drive carefully. Reckless driving may cause an accident. Exercise particular care when the indicator light flashes.

■ When the TRAC/VSC systems are turned off

Be especially careful and drive at a speed appropriate to the road conditions. As these are the systems to help ensure vehicle stability and driving force, do not turn the TRAC/VSC systems off unless necessary.

■ Replacing tires

Make sure that all tires are of the specified size, brand, tread pattern and total load capacity. In addition, make sure that the tires are inflated to the recommended tire inflation pressure level.

The ABS, TRAC and VSC systems will not function correctly if different tires are installed on the vehicle.
Contact your Lexus dealer for further information when replacing tires or wheels.

■ Handling of tires and the suspension

Using tires with any kind of problem or modifying the suspension will affect the driving assist systems, and may cause a system to malfunction.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

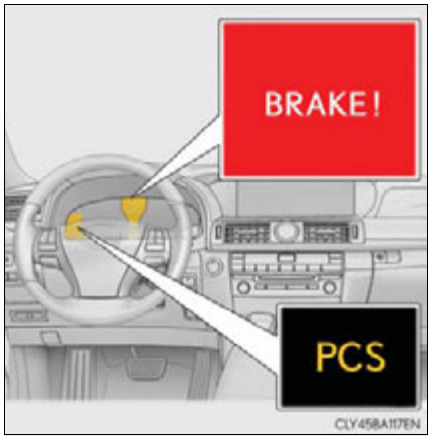
PCS (Pre-Collision System)*

When the sensor detects that a frontal collision is highly likely or even unavoidable, safety systems such as the brakes and seat belts are automatically engaged to help avoid a collision or to lessen impact as well as vehicle damage.

Pre-collision warning

When a high possibility of a frontal collision is detected, the pre-collision system warning light flashes, a buzzer sounds and a message is shown on the multi-information display to urge the driver to take evasive action.

Pre-collision warning can be disabled using the pre-collision braking off switch.



Pre-collision seat belts (front seat only)

If the pre-collision sensor detects that a collision is unavoidable, the pre-collision system will retract the seat belt before the collision occurs. The same will happen if the driver makes an emergency braking or loses control of the vehicle. (→P. 38)

Pre-collision brake assist

When there is a high possibility of a frontal collision, the system applies greater braking force in relation to how strongly the brake pedal is depressed.

*: If equipped

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Pre-collision braking

When there is a high possibility of a frontal collision, the system warns the driver using a warning light, warning display and buzzer. If the system determines that a collision is unavoidable, the brakes are automatically applied to help avoid a collision or to reduce the collision speed.

When the vehicle is being stopped by pre-collision braking, the brake will be engaged for a maximum of 2 seconds and then released automatically. This pre-collision braking can be canceled by depressing the accelerator pedal or brake pedal.

Pre-collision braking can be disabled using the pre-collision braking off switch.

Suspension control

When there is a high possibility of a frontal collision, the operation of suspension control helps prevent the front of the vehicle from dropping when the brakes are applied suddenly.

Steering gear control (VGRS) (vehicles with camera sensors)

When the system determines that a collision is unavoidable, the steering gear ratio is changed to help improve the response to steering input.

Driver monitor system (if equipped)

When the system determines that there is a possibility of a collision, and either the driver is not facing forward or the driver's eyes are closed, pre-collision warnings are given in advance to warn the driver. If the system determines that the conditions to operate pre-collision alert braking have been met even when the possibility of a collision increases further, pre-collision alert braking will operate.

Pre-collision alert braking can be disabled using the pre-collision braking off switch.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

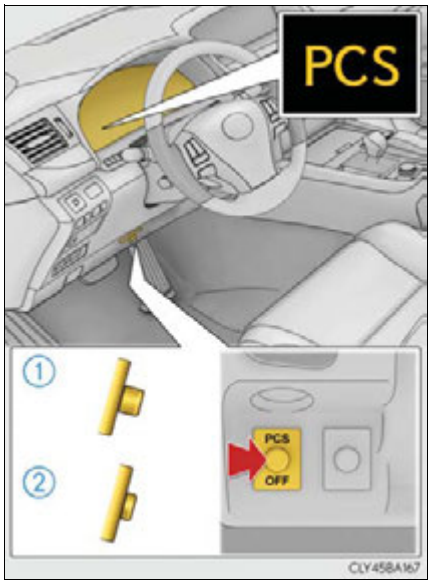
Disabling pre-collision braking

Pre-collision warning, pre-collision braking and pre-collision alert braking (vehicles with driver monitor system) can be switched between enabled and disabled by pressing the pre-collision braking off switch.

① Enabled

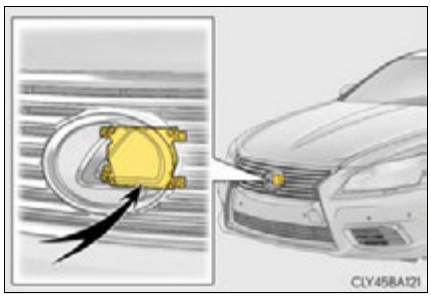
② Disabled

The pre-collision system warning light comes on when the system is disabled.



Radar sensor

The radar sensor detects vehicles or other obstacles on or near the road ahead and determines whether a collision is imminent based on the position, speed, and heading of the obstacles.



DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

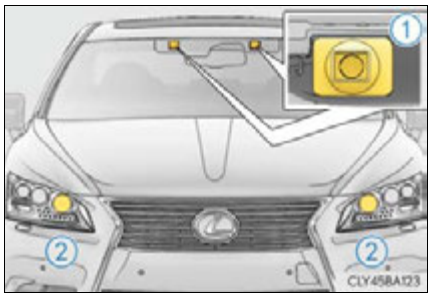
Camera sensors (if equipped)

The camera sensors detect pedestrians and other three-dimensional objects on or near the road ahead together with the radar sensor while the vehicle is moving.

When the headlights are on, near-infrared rays are projected to ensure proper detection performance in the night time.

① Camera sensors

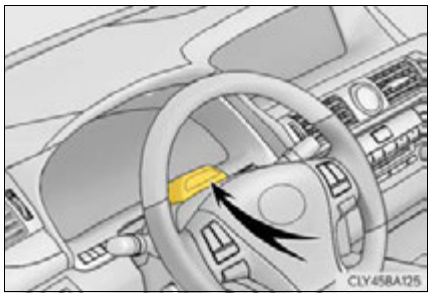
② Near-infrared ray transmitters



Driver monitor sensor (vehicles with driver monitor system)

The driver monitor sensor detects the direction the driver is facing and whether the driver's eyes are open or closed.

The system determines whether the driver is facing forward and whether or not the driver's eyes are closed.



DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ The pre-collision system is operational when

● Pre-collision warning:

▶ Vehicles without camera sensors

- The pre-collision braking off switch is not pressed.
- Vehicle speed is greater than about 10 mph (15 km/h).
- The speed at which your vehicle is approaching the obstacle or the vehicle running ahead of you is greater than about 10 mph (15 km/h).

▶ Vehicles with camera sensors

- The pre-collision braking off switch is not pressed.
- Vehicle speed is greater than about 4 mph (5 km/h).
- The speed at which your vehicle is approaching the obstacle or the vehicle running ahead of you is greater than about 4 mph (5 km/h).

● Pre-collision seat belts (operating conditions A):

- Vehicle speed is greater than about 19 mph (30 km/h).
- The system detects sudden braking or skidding.
- The front occupants are wearing a seat belt.

● Pre-collision seat belts (operating conditions B):

- Vehicle speed is greater than about 4 mph (5 km/h).
- The speed at which your vehicle is approaching the obstacle or the vehicle running ahead of you is greater than about 19 mph (30 km/h).
- The front occupants are wearing a seat belt.

● Pre-collision brake assist:

- The VSC OFF switch is not pressed.
- Vehicle speed is greater than about 19 mph (30 km/h).
- The speed at which your vehicle is approaching the obstacle or the vehicle running ahead of you is greater than about 19 mph (30 km/h).
- The brake pedal is depressed.

● Pre-collision braking:

▶ Vehicles without camera sensors

- The pre-collision braking off switch is not pressed.
- The VSC OFF switch is not pressed.
- Vehicle speed is greater than about 10 mph (15 km/h).
- The speed at which your vehicle is approaching the obstacle or the vehicle running ahead of you is greater than about 10 mph (15 km/h).

▶ Vehicles with camera sensors

- The pre-collision braking off switch is not pressed.
- The VSC OFF switch is not pressed.
- Vehicle speed is greater than about 4 mph (5 km/h).
- The speed at which your vehicle is approaching the obstacle or the vehicle running ahead of you is greater than about 4 mph (5 km/h).

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

● Suspension control:

- Vehicle speed is greater than about 4 mph (5 km/h).
- The speed at which your vehicle is approaching the obstacle or the vehicle running ahead of you is greater than about 19 mph (30 km/h).

● Steering gear control (VGRS) (vehicles with camera sensors):

- Vehicle speed is greater than about 19 mph (30 km/h).
- The speed at which your vehicle is approaching the obstacle or the vehicle running ahead of you is greater than about 19 mph (30 km/h).

● Pre-collision alert braking (vehicles with driver monitor system):

- The pre-collision braking off switch is not pressed.
- The VSC OFF switch is not pressed.
- The system determines that the driver is not facing forward, or that the driver's eyes are closed.
- Vehicle speed is greater than about 25 mph (40 km/h).
- The speed at which your vehicle is approaching the vehicle running ahead of you is greater than about 25 mph (40 km/h).
- The steering is not being turned.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Conditions that may trigger the system even if there is no danger of a collision**

In any of the following situations where the frontal area of the radar sensor is interrupted, the radar sensor may detect possibility of a frontal collision and the system may be activated.

- When passing by an oncoming vehicle in a curve or a turn to the right or the left.
- When rapidly approaching an obstacle ahead (e.g. preceding vehicle, toll gate barrier, etc.)
- When there is a structural object (billboard, low ceiling, fluorescent light, etc.) above the uphill road ahead
- When driving on a narrow road or through under a low overhead structure (bridge, tunnel, fly-under, etc.)
- When driving on an uneven road surface
- When there is a metal object, bump, or protrusion on the road surface
- When vehicle front part is raised or lowered depending on loading conditions
- When the direction of radar sensor is misaligned by strong impact applied on an area around the radar sensor, etc.
- When there is an obstacle (guard rail, etc.) by the roadside at the entrance to a curve
- When the front of your vehicle is pointing upwards (caused by putting a heavy load in the trunk etc.)
- When driving through an area filled with steam or smoke

When the system is activated in the situations described above, there is also a possibility that the seat belts will retract quickly and the brakes may be applied with a force greater than normal. When the seat belt is locked in the retracted position, stop the vehicle in a safe place, release the seat belt and refasten it.

■ **Obstacles not detected**

The radar sensor cannot detect plastic obstacles such as traffic cones. There may also be occasions when the sensor cannot detect pedestrians, animals, bicycles, motorcycles, trees, or snowdrifts.

■ **A camera sensor cannot detect obstacles in the following situations:**

- A camera sensor is directly receiving intense light, such as sunlight.
- Visibility is poor because of bad weather or other reasons.
- The sensor temperature is extremely high.
- The headlights are not turned on in darkness such as at night or in a tunnel.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Situations in which the pre-collision system does not function properly**

The system may not function effectively in situations such as the following:

- On roads with sharp bends or uneven surfaces
- If a vehicle suddenly moves in front of your vehicle, such as at an intersection
- If a vehicle suddenly cuts in front of your vehicle, such as when overtaking
- In inclement weather such as heavy rain, fog, snow or sand storms
- If the vehicle is skidding when VSC is not operating
- When an extreme change in vehicle height occurs
- When only part of your vehicle's front end collides with, or contacts, a vehicle or object in a frontal collision
- When the radar sensor moves off position due to its surrounding area being subjected to a strong impact
- If an obstacle in front of the vehicle is small
- When the system judges that the driver performed a collision avoidance operation via the accelerator pedal, brake pedal, or steering wheel

■ **Automatic cancelation of the pre-collision system**

When a malfunction occurs due to sensor contamination, etc. that results in the sensors being unable to detect obstacles, the pre-collision system will be automatically disabled. In this case, the system will not activate even if there is a collision possibility.

■ **When there is a malfunction in the system**

The pre-collision system warning light will flash and warning messages will be displayed. (→P. 501, 509)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Certification for the pre-collision system

▶ For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.

FCC ID: HYQDNMWR004

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Radiofrequency radiation exposure Information:

This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment.

This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance of 20 cm between the radiator (antenna) and your body.

This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

▶ For vehicles sold in Canada

This device complies with Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s).

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Limitations of the pre-collision system

The driver is solely responsible for safe driving. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings.

Do not use the pre-collision system instead of normal braking operations under any circumstances. This system will not prevent collisions or lessen damage or injuries in all cases. Do not overly rely on this system. Failure to do so may cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

This system has been designed to help avoid and reduce the impact of collisions. However, the system operates differently depending on the situation (→P. 300, 302). As a result, the same level of performance may not be expected in all cases. Also, the pre-collision brakes may not operate if the driver is depressing the brake pedal or turning the steering wheel, as the system will determine such conditions as collision avoidance operations.

■ Handling the radar sensor

Observe the following to ensure the pre-collision system can function effectively. Otherwise, the system may not function correctly and could result in an accident.

- Keep the sensor and grille cover clean at all times.
  Clean the sensor and grille cover with a soft cloth so you do not mark or damage them.
- Do not subject the sensor or surrounding area to a strong impact.
  If the sensor moves even slightly off position, the system may malfunction. If the sensor or surrounding area is subject to a strong impact, always have the area inspected and adjusted by your Lexus dealer.
- Do not disassemble the sensor.
- Do not attach accessories or stickers to the sensor, grille cover or surrounding area.
- Do not modify or paint the sensor and grille cover.
- If the radar sensor needs to be replaced, contact your Lexus dealer.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Handling the camera sensors (if equipped)

Observe the following to ensure that the PCS functions effectively:

- Keep the windshield clean at all times.
  PCS effectiveness may be reduced due to the presence of raindrops, condensation, ice or snow on the windshield.
- Do not subject the camera sensor to a strong impact or force, and do not disassemble the camera sensor.
- Do not change the installation position of the camera sensor, or remove and reinstall it. The direction of the camera sensor is precisely adjusted.
- When the windshield fogs up, use the windshield defogger to dry the windshield. During cold weather, using the heater with air blowing to the feet may allow the upper part of the windshield to fog up, having a negative effect on the images.
- Do not place anything on the dashboard.
  Images reflected on the windshield may reduce the effectiveness of the camera sensor.
- Do not scratch the camera lens, or let it get dirty.
- Do not attach a sticker or other items to the windshield near the camera sensor.

■ Headlights (vehicles with camera sensors)

- Observe the following to ensure proper near-infrared ray projection:
  - Keep the headlights clean at all times.
  - The detection performance may deteriorate if the high beams are misaligned or inoperative.
- The near-infrared ray transmitters project strong energy that is not visible. Although the transmitters normally turn off when the vehicle is stopped, never look into the headlights for your safety.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Determining the direction the driver is facing and whether the driver's eyes are open or closed (vehicles with driver monitor system)

The direction the driver is facing and whether the driver's eyes are open or closed may not be determined correctly if the following conditions exist:

- There is an object between the driver monitor sensor and the driver's face, such as when the sensor is blocked.
- A part of the driver's face is covered.
- The sensor or the driver's face is exposed to intense light such as sunlight.
- The driving posture is improper.
- The vehicle is parked.

■ Handling the driver monitor sensor (vehicles with driver monitor system)

Observe the following to ensure the driver monitor sensor can function effectively.

Failure to do so may result in a malfunction or may prevent the system from correctly determining the direction the driver is facing and whether the driver's eyes are open or closed, resulting in an unexpected accident.

- Do not disassemble, damage, lift or pull on the sensor.
- Do not select the sensor while driving.
- Do not wet or spill water on the sensor.
- Do not drop anything on or allow anything to hit against the sensor. Do not subject the sensor to an impact.
- Make sure that there are no scratches, dirt or stickers on the side of the sensor that faces the driver.
- Do not place any objects in front of the side of the sensor that faces the driver or cover the sensor.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Cautions regarding the assist contents of the system

By means of alarms and brake control, the pre-collision system is intended to assist the driver in avoiding collisions through the process of LOOK-JUDGE-ACT. There are limits to the degree of assistance the system can provide, so please keep in mind the following important points.

- Assisting the driver in watching the road
  The pre-collision system is only able to detect obstacles directly in front of the vehicle, and only within a limited range. It is not a mechanism that allows careless or inattentive driving, and it is not a system that can assist the driver in low-visibility conditions. It is still necessary for the driver to pay close attention to the vehicle's surroundings.
- Assisting the driver in making correct judgment
  When attempting to estimate the likelihood of a collision, the only data available to the pre-collision system is that from obstacles it has detected directly in front of the vehicle. Therefore, it is absolutely necessary for the driver to remain vigilant and to determine whether or not there is a possibility of collision in any given situation.
- Assisting the driver in taking action
  The pre-collision system's braking assist feature is designed to help reduce the severity of a collision, and so only acts when the system has judged that a collision is unavoidable. This system is not capable of automatically avoiding a collision or bringing the vehicle to a stop safely without appropriate operations performed by the driver. For this reason, when encountering a dangerous situation the driver must take direct and immediate action in order to ensure the safety of all involved.

⚠ NOTICE

■ Precautions for cleaning the driver monitor sensor (vehicles with driver monitor system)

- Gently wipe the sensor with a soft cloth to prevent damage.
- Wipe any excess dirt with a cloth dampened with neutral detergent, all liquids having been wringed out of the cloth. After that, wipe again with a dry cloth.
- Do not use benzene, thinner, glass cleaners, wax, etc.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

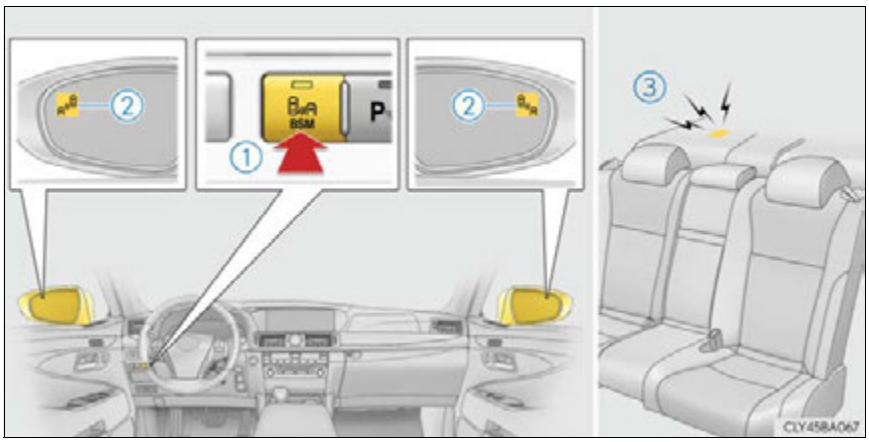
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor)*

Summary of the Blind Spot Monitor

The Blind Spot Monitor is a system that has 2 functions;

- The Blind Spot Monitor function
  Assists the driver in making the decision when changing lanes
- The Rear Cross Traffic Alert function
  Assists the driver when backing up

These functions use same sensors.



① BSM main switch

Pressing the switch turns the system on or off. When the switch is set to on, the switch's indicator illuminates and the buzzer sounds. Common switch for Blind Spot Monitor function and Rear Cross Traffic Alert function.

*: If equipped

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

② Outside rear view mirror indicators

Blind Spot Monitor function:
When a vehicle is detected in the blind spot, the outside rear view mirror indicator comes on while the turn signal lever is not operated and the outside rear view mirror indicator flashes while the turn signal lever is operated.

Rear Cross Traffic Alert function:
When a vehicle approaching from the right or left rear of the vehicle is detected, the outside rear view mirror indicators flash.

③ Rear Cross Traffic Alert buzzer (Rear Cross Traffic Alert function only)

When a vehicle approaching from the right or left rear of the vehicle is detected, a buzzer sounds from behind the rear seat.

■ **The outside rear view mirror indicators visibility**

When under strong sunlight, the outside rear view mirror indicator may be difficult to see.

■ **Rear Cross Traffic Alert buzzer hearing**

Rear Cross Traffic Alert function may be difficult to hear over loud noises such as high audio volume.

■ **When there is a malfunction in the Blind Spot Monitor**

If a system malfunction is detected due to any of the following reasons, warning messages will be displayed: (→P. 509)

- There is a malfunction with the sensors
- The sensors have become dirty
- The outside temperature is extremely high or low
- The sensor voltage has become abnormal

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Certification for the Blind Spot Monitor

▶ For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.

FCC ID : OAYSRR2A

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC Warning

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

▶ For vehicles sold in Canada

Applicable law : Canada 310

This device complies with Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Frequency bands : 24.05 - 24.25GHz

Output power : less than 20 milliwatts

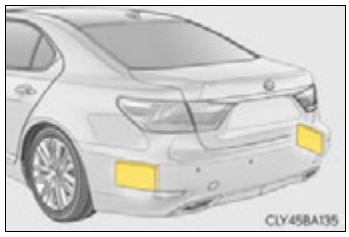
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Handling the radar sensor

One Blind Spot Monitor sensor is installed inside the left and right side of the vehicle rear bumper respectively. Observe the following to ensure the Blind Spot Monitor can function correctly.

- Keep the sensor and its surrounding area on the bumper clean at all times.



- Do not subject the sensor or surrounding area on the bumper to a strong impact. If the sensor moves even slightly off position, the system may malfunction and vehicles that enter the detection area may not be detected. If the sensor or surrounding area is subject to a strong impact, always have the area inspected by your Lexus dealer.
- Do not disassemble the sensor.
- Do not attach accessories or stickers to the sensor or surrounding area on the bumper.
- Do not modify the sensor or surrounding area on the bumper.
- Do not paint the sensor or surrounding area on the bumper.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

The Blind Spot Monitor function

The Blind Spot Monitor function uses radar sensors to detect vehicles that are traveling in an adjacent lane in the area that is not reflected in the outside rear view mirror (the blind spot), and advises the driver of the vehicles existence via the outside rear view mirror indicator.

The Blind Spot Monitor function detection areas

The areas that vehicles can be detected in are outlined below.

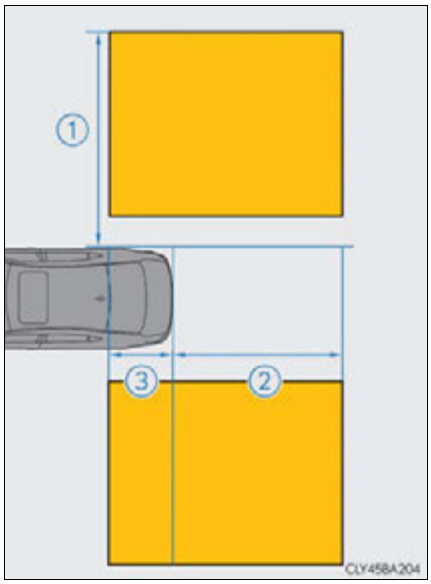
The range of the detection area extends to:

① Approximately 11.5 ft. (3.5 m) from the side of the vehicle

The first 1.6 ft. (0.5 m) from the side of the vehicle is not in the detection area

② Approximately 9.8 ft. (3 m) from the rear bumper

③ Approximately 3.3 ft. (1 m) forward of the rear bumper



⚠ CAUTION

■ Cautions regarding the use of the system

The driver is solely responsible for safe driving. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings.

The Blind Spot Monitor function is a supplementary function which alerts the driver that a vehicle is present in the blind spot. Do not overly rely on the Blind Spot Monitor function. The function cannot judge if it is safe to change lanes, therefore over reliance could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

According to conditions, the system may not function correctly. Therefore the driver's own visual confirmation of safety is necessary.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **The Blind Spot Monitor function is operational when**

- The BSM main switch is set to on
- Vehicle speed is greater than approximately 10 mph (16 km/h).

■ **The Blind Spot Monitor function will detect a vehicle when**

- A vehicle in an adjacent lane overtakes your vehicle.
- Another vehicle enters the detection area when it changes lanes.

■ **Conditions under which the Blind Spot Monitor function will not detect a vehicle**

The Blind Spot Monitor function is not designed to detect the following types of vehicles and/or objects:

- Small motorcycles, bicycles, pedestrians etc.*
- Vehicles traveling in the opposite direction
- Guardrails, walls, signs, parked vehicles and similar stationary objects*
- Following vehicles that are in the same lane*
- Vehicles driving 2 lanes across from your vehicle*

*: Depending on conditions, detection of a vehicle and/or object may occur.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Conditions under which the Blind Spot Monitor function may not function correctly**

● The Blind Spot Monitor function may not detect vehicles correctly in the following conditions:

- During bad weather such as heavy rain, fog, snow etc.
- When ice or mud etc. is attached to the rear bumper
- When driving on a road surface that is wet due to rain, standing water etc.
- When there is a significant difference in speed between your vehicle and the vehicle that enters the detection area
- When a vehicle is in the detection area from a stop and remains in the detection area as your vehicle accelerates
- When driving up or down consecutive steep inclines, such as hills, a dip in the road etc.
- When multiple vehicles approach with only a small gap between each vehicle
- When vehicle lanes are wide, and the vehicle in the next lane is too far away from your vehicle
- When the vehicle that enters the detection area is traveling at about the same speed as your vehicle
- When there is a significant difference in height between your vehicle and the vehicle that enters the detection area
- Directly after the BSM main switch is set to on

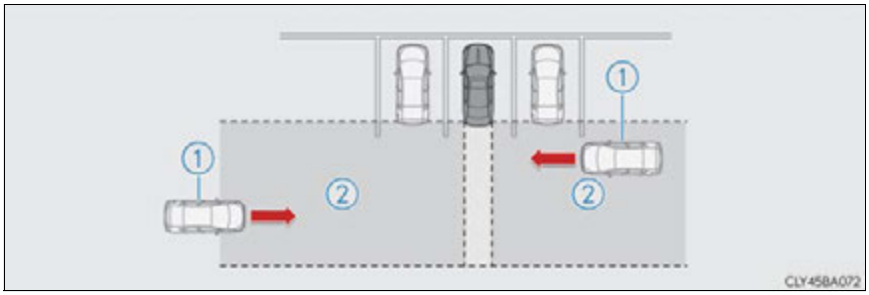
● Instances of the Blind Spot Monitor function unnecessarily detecting a vehicle and/or object may increase under the following conditions:

- When there is only a short distance between your vehicle and a guardrail, wall etc.
- When there is only a short distance between your vehicle and a following vehicle
- When vehicle lanes are narrow and a vehicle driving 2 lanes across from your vehicle enters the detection area
- When items such as a bicycle carrier are installed on the rear of the vehicle

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

The Rear Cross Traffic Alert function

The Rear Cross Traffic Alert functions when your vehicle is in reverse. It can detect other vehicles approaching from the right or left rear of the vehicle. It uses radar sensors to alert the driver of the other vehicle's existence through flashing the outside rear view mirror indicators and sounding a buzzer.



① Approaching vehicles ② Detection areas

⚠ CAUTION

■ Cautions regarding the use of the system

The driver is solely responsible for safe driving. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings.

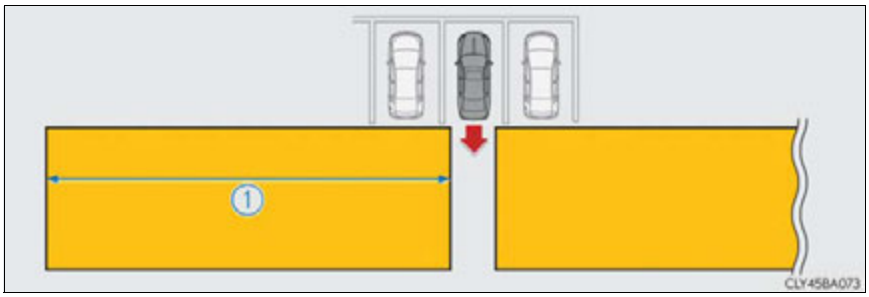
The Rear Cross Traffic Alert function is only an assist and is not a replacement for careful driving. Driver must be careful when backing up, even when using Rear Cross Traffic Alert function. The driver's own visual confirmation of behind you and your vehicle is necessary and be sure there are no pedestrians, other vehicles etc. before backing up. Failure to do so could cause death or serious injury.

According to conditions, the system may not function correctly. Therefore the driver's own visual confirmation of safety is necessary.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

The Rear Cross Traffic Alert function detection areas

The areas that vehicles can be detected in are outlined below.



To give the driver a more consistent time to react, the buzzer can alert for faster vehicles from farther away.

Example:

Approaching vehicle	Speed	① Approximate alert distance
Fast	18 mph (28 km/h)	65 ft. (20 m)
Slow	5 mph (8 km/h)	18 ft. (5.5 m)

The Rear Cross Traffic Alert function is operational when

- The BSM main switch is set to on.
- The shift lever is in R.
- Vehicle speed is less than approximately 5 mph (8 km/h).
- Approaching vehicle speed is between approximately 5 mph (8 km/h) and 18 mph (28 km/h).

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Conditions under which the Rear Cross Traffic Alert function will not detect a vehicle**

The Rear Cross Traffic Alert function is not designed to detect the following types of vehicles and/or objects.

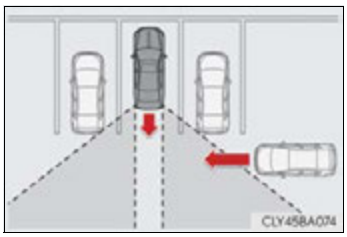
- Small motorcycles, bicycles, pedestrians etc.*
- Vehicles approaching from directly behind
- Guardrails, walls, signs, parked vehicles and similar stationary objects*
- Vehicles moving away from your vehicle
- Vehicles approaching from the parking spaces next to your vehicle*
- Vehicles backing up in the parking space next to your vehicle

*: Depending on conditions, detection of a vehicle and/or object may occur.

■ **Conditions under which the Rear Cross Traffic Alert function may not function correctly**

The Rear Cross Traffic Alert function may not detect vehicles correctly in the following conditions:

- During bad weather such as heavy rain, fog, snow etc.
- When ice or mud etc. is attached to the rear bumper
- When multiple vehicles approach continuously
- Shallow angle parking
- When a vehicle is approaching at high speed
- When parking on a steep incline, such as hills, a dip in the road etc.
- Directly after the BSM main switch is set to on
- Directly after the hybrid system is started with the BSM main switch on
- Vehicles that the sensors cannot detect because of obstacles



DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Lexus night view*

Lexus night view is a system which assists with nighttime driving.

Near-infrared rays are irradiated forward and an image converted from the irradiated light is shown on the Remote Touch screen. The image shows pedestrians, obstacles, and road conditions ahead of the vehicle, which are difficult to see at nighttime with the naked eye.

Displaying the Lexus night view

1 Turn the power switch to ON mode.

2 Turn the headlights on.

3 Press the Lexus night view switch.

The Lexus night view is displayed on the Remote Touch screen.

To return the screen to its previous state, press the switch again.

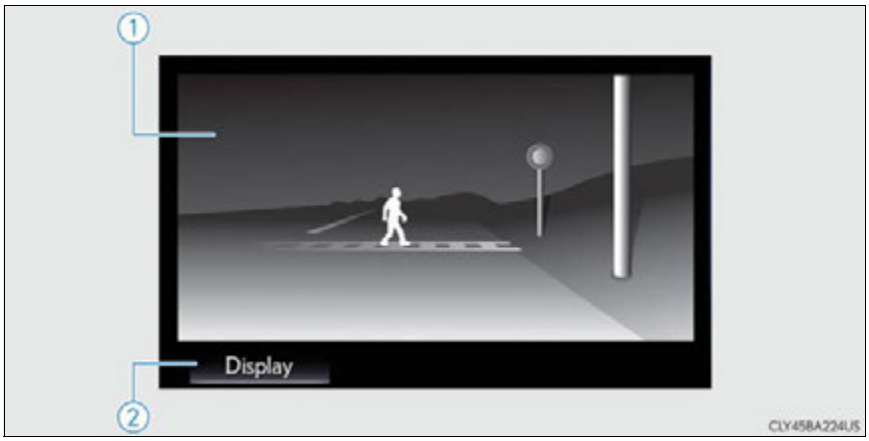
When the light sensor (→P. 238) determines that it is currently night time from the brightness of the surrounding area, the Lexus night view can be operated by pressing the Lexus night view switch while the headlights are on.

*: If equipped

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

The Lexus night view display

■ When displaying on the main display (→P. 337)



① Lexus night view screen

② Brightness adjustment button

The brightness of the display can be adjusted by selecting this button using Remote Touch.

"-": Darker

"+": Brighter

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

When displaying on the side display

When another screen is displayed on the main display while the Lexus night view is being shown on the main display, the Lexus night view screen will be displayed on the side display.

① Lexus night view screen

② Main display switching button

Switches the Lexus night view from the side display to the main display.

Imaging range

The image is shown ranging from the tip of the low beam to the high beam.

If the vehicle speed is less than approximately 9 mph (15 km/h) when the Lexus night view is operating

An image will be displayed on the Lexus night view screen, but both the range and the distance of the projection will be limited as near-infrared rays are not being radiated outward.

When the Lexus night view switch is pressed while the Lexus night view cannot be operated

Advice information will be displayed on the Lexus night view screen. Follow the displayed advice.

If the Lexus night view switch is pressed at a time when the Lexus night view operation is not possible

Follow the advice displayed on the Remote Touch screen.

When the shift lever is shifted to R while the Lexus night view is operating

The Lexus night view screen switches as follows.
Main display: Switches to the Lexus parking assist monitor screen.
Side display: The display blacks out and no image is displayed.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Before using the Lexus night view

Never depend on this system only.
Lexus night view is intended as a supplemental aid to help you see pedestrians and road conditions ahead of the vehicle. As there are limits to the system, do not rely solely on the system while in use, and drive safely while observing the following precautions.

■ When using the Lexus night view

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Never drive while looking at the Lexus night view screen only.
- Do not look continuously at the Lexus night view screen while driving. Pedestrians, objects etc. ahead of the vehicle may be overlooked by the system. The system should always be used as a supplemental aid only.
- Lexus night view is designed to help you see objects better when driving in darkness on a road with few curves. Do not use the Lexus night view in well-lit areas or on roads with many curves or slopes. There may be areas that cannot be displayed by the system due to the road conditions (curve size, gradient, etc.)
- Lexus night view may be unable to project some features at an appropriate level of brightness. Some or all parts of certain features may be dark or difficult to see. Do not rely solely on the Lexus night view, and drive carefully while checking the surroundings for safety, as you would with a normal vehicle. Also, the following features and conditions may not be displayed clearly.

  Features that are difficult to display:

  - Clothing of a pedestrian made of a certain kind of material (ex. leather jackets)
  - The characters on signs and billboards
  - The information on road signs

  Conditions in which display is difficult:

  - Unfavorable weather conditions such as rain, fog, snowfall, snow storms etc.
  - There are large puddles of water on the road surface following rainfall
  - The area of the windshield in front of the camera is fogged up, dirty or icy
  - The areas around the headlights are covered with ice, snow, mud etc.
  - The 12-volt battery voltage is remarkably low
  - There are bright lights ahead of the vehicle

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

The near-infrared light

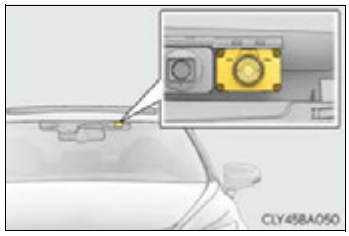
Follow these precautions to avoid damage to or incorrect operation of the Lexus night view system.

- System performance may deteriorate if the areas around the headlights are dirty. Clean the vehicle if it is dirty.
- The near-infrared ray transmitters irradiate strong energy not visible to the eyes. Do not stare at the light at close range for a long time.

NOTICE

The near-infrared camera

Follow these precautions to avoid damage to or incorrect operation of the Lexus night view.



- Make sure the windshield is kept clean.
- System performance may deteriorate if rain water, condensation or ice adheres to the camera. If you notice the inner lens of the camera is dirty, the garnish will have to be replaced. Consult your Lexus dealer.
- Do not subject the camera to strong impacts, or disassemble the camera.
- As the alignment of the camera has been very finely adjusted, do not change or remove the mounting.
- If the windshield fogs up, defog the windshield using the front defroster.
- Do not dirty or scratch the camera lens.
- Night view may not function properly if an object is placed on the sensor, or anything that blocks the sensor is affixed to the windshield.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Hybrid vehicle driving tips

For economical and ecological driving, pay attention to the following points:

■ Using Eco drive mode

When using Eco drive mode, the torque corresponding to the accelerator pedal depression amount can be generated more smoothly than it is in normal conditions. In addition, the operation of the air conditioning system (heating/cooling) will be minimized, improving the fuel economy. (→P. 285)

■ Use of Hybrid System Indicator

The Eco-friendly driving is possible by keeping the indicate of Hybrid System Indicator within Eco area. (→P. 103)

■ When braking the vehicle

Make sure to operate the brakes gently and in good time. A greater amount of electrical energy can be retained when slowing down.

■ Delays

Repeated acceleration and deceleration, as well as long waits at traffic lights, will lead to bad fuel consumption. Check traffic reports before leaving and avoid delays as much as possible. When encountering a delay, gently release the brake pedal to allow the vehicle to move forward slightly while avoiding overuse of the accelerator pedal. Doing so can help control excessive gasoline consumption.

■ Highway driving

Control your speed and keep at a constant speed. Also, before stopping at a toll booth or similar, allow plenty of time to release the accelerator and gently apply the brakes. A greater amount of electrical energy can be retained when slowing down.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Air conditioning

Use the air conditioning only when necessary. Doing so can help control excessive gasoline consumption.
In summer: In high temperatures, use the recirculated air mode. Doing so will help to reduce the burden on the air conditioner and reduce fuel consumption as well.
In winter: Because the gasoline engine will not automatically cut out until the gasoline engine and the interior of the vehicle are warm, it will consume fuel. Also, fuel consumption can be improved by avoiding overuse of the heater.

Checking tire inflation pressure

Make sure to check the tire inflation pressure frequently. Improper tire inflation pressure can cause poor fuel consumption.
Also, as snow tires can cause large amounts of friction, their use on dry roads can lead to poor fuel consumption. Use a tire that is appropriate for the season.

Luggage

Carrying heavy luggage can lead to poor fuel consumption. Avoid carrying unnecessary luggage. Installing a large roof rack can also cause poor fuel consumption.

Warming up before driving

Since the gasoline engine starts up and cuts out automatically when cold, warming up the engine is unnecessary. Moreover, frequently driving short distances will cause the engine to repeatedly warm up, which can lead to poor fuel consumption.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Winter driving tips

Carry out the necessary preparations and inspections before driving the vehicle in winter. Always drive the vehicle in a manner appropriate to the prevailing weather conditions.

Preparation for winter

- Use fluids that are appropriate to the prevailing outside temperatures.
  - Engine oil
  - Engine/power control unit coolant
  - Washer fluid
- Have a service technician inspect the condition of the 12-volt battery.
- Have the vehicle fitted with four snow tires or purchase a set of tire chains for the rear tires.

  Ensure that all tires are the specified size and brand, and that chains match the size of the tires.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Before driving the vehicle

Perform the following according to the driving conditions:

- Do not try to forcibly open a window or move a wiper that is frozen. Pour warm water over the frozen area to melt the ice. Wipe away the water immediately to prevent it from freezing.
- To ensure proper operation of the climate control system fan, remove any snow that has accumulated on the air inlet vents in front of the windshield.
- Check for and remove any excess ice or snow that may have accumulated on the exterior lights, vehicle's roof, chassis, around the tires or on the brakes.
- Remove any snow or mud from the bottom of your shoes before getting in the vehicle.

When driving the vehicle

Accelerate the vehicle slowly, keep a safe distance between you and the vehicle ahead, and drive at a reduced speed suitable to road conditions.

When parking the vehicle

Park the vehicle and move the shift lever to P without setting the parking brake. The parking brake may freeze up, preventing it from being released. If necessary, block the wheels to prevent inadvertent sliding or creeping.

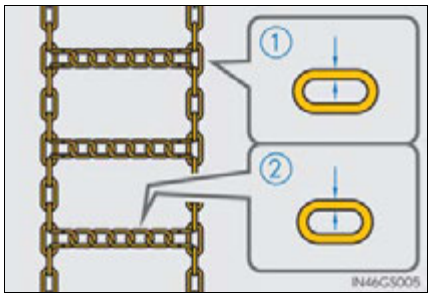
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Selecting tire chains

Use the correct tire chain size when mounting the tire chains.
Chain size is regulated for each tire size.

① Side chain
(0.12 in. [3 mm] in diameter)

② Cross chain
(0.16 in. [4 mm] in diameter)



Regulations on the use of tire chains

Regulations regarding the use of tire chains vary depending on location and type of road. Always check local regulations before installing chains.

Tire chain installation

Observe the following precautions when installing and removing chains:

- Install and remove tire chains in a safe location.
- Install tire chains on the rear tires. Do not install tire chains on the front tires.
- Install tire chains on rear tires as tightly as possible. Retighten chains after driving 1/4 — 1/2 mile (0.5 — 1.0 km).
- Install tire chains following the instructions provided with the tire chains.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Driving with snow tires

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents.
Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control and cause death or serious injury.

- Use tires of the specified size.
- Maintain the recommended level of air pressure.
- Do not drive in excess of 75 mph (120 km/h), regardless of the type of snow tires being used.
- Use snow tires on all, not just some wheels.

■ Driving with tire chains

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents.
Failure to do so may result in the vehicle being unable to be driven safely, and may cause death or serious injury.

- Do not drive in excess of the speed limit specified for the tire chains being used, or 30 mph (50 km/h), whichever is lower.
- Avoid driving on bumpy road surfaces or over potholes.
- Avoid sudden acceleration, abrupt steering, sudden braking and shifting operations that cause sudden engine braking.
- Slow down sufficiently before entering a curve to ensure that vehicle control is maintained.
- Do not use LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) system. (if equipped)

⚠ NOTICE

■ Repairing or replacing snow tires

Request repairs or replacement of snow tires from Lexus dealers or legitimate tire retailers.
This is because the removal and attachment of snow tires affects the operation of the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters.

■ Fitting tire chains

The tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may not function correctly when tire chains are fitted.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

5-1. Remote Touch screen

Remote Touch.....332

12.3-inch display.....336

5-2. Lexus Climate Concierge

Lexus Climate Concierge.....339

5-3. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

Front automatic air conditioning system.....340

Rear air conditioning system.....355

Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers.....362

Windshield wiper de-icer.....363

5-4. Using the interior lights

Interior lights list.....364

• Interior lights.....365

• Personal lights.....366

5-5. Using the storage features

List of storage features.....368

• Glove box.....370

• Coin holder.....371

• Door pockets.....371

• Cup holders.....372

• Console box.....373

• Auxiliary boxes.....375

Trunk features.....377

5-6. Other interior features

Sun visors and vanity mirrors.....380

Clock.....382

Ashtrays.....383

Cigarette lighters.....384

Power outlets.....386

Heated steering wheel.....389

Climate control seats.....391

Armrest.....396

Retractable table.....397

Rear sunshade.....399

Rear door sunshades.....402

Coat hooks.....405

Assist grips.....406

Garage door opener.....407

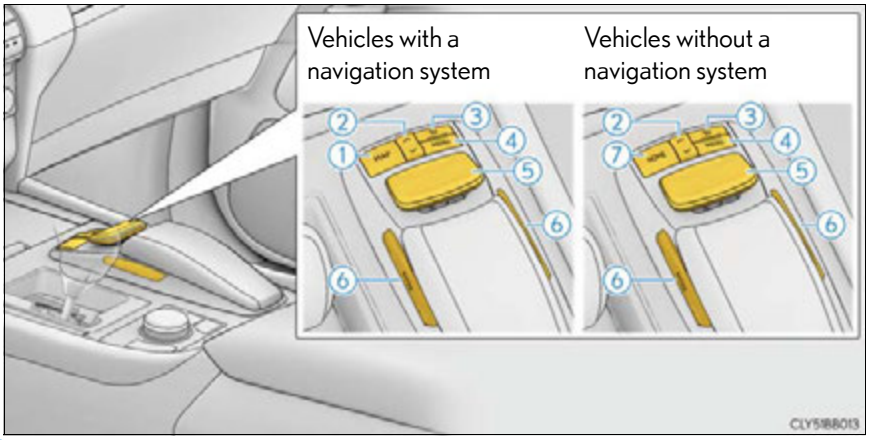
LEXUS Enform Safety Connect.....414

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Remote Touch

The Remote Touch can be used to operate the Remote Touch screens.

For details, refer to "NAVIGATION AND MULTIMEDIA SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".



① "MAP" button

Press this button to display the current position, cancel the screen scroll, start guidance, and repeat a voice guidance.

② "∧•∨" button

▶ Vehicles with a navigation system

Press this button to scroll the list screen and to change the scale of the map.

▶ Vehicles without a navigation system

Press this button to scroll the list screen.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

③ Back button

Press this button to display the previous screen.

④ “MENU” button

Press this button to display the “Menu” screen. (→P. 335)

⑤ Remote Touch knob

Move in the desired direction to select a function, letter and screen button.
Press the knob to enter the selected function, letter or screen button.

⑥ “ENTER” button

Press this button to enter the selected function, letter or screen button.

⑦ “HOME” button

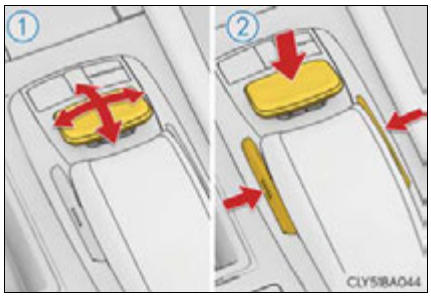
Press this button to display the compass mode screen.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Remote Touch operation

① Select: Move the Remote Touch knob in the desired direction.

② Enter: Push the Remote Touch knob or an “ENTER” button.



Screen display during low temperatures

When the ambient temperature is extremely low, screen response may be delayed even if the Remote Touch is operated.

⚠ CAUTION

When using the Remote Touch

- Do not allow fingers, fingernails or hair to become caught in the Remote Touch as this may cause an injury.
- Be careful when touching the Remote Touch in extreme temperatures as it may become very hot or cold due to the temperature inside the vehicle.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the Remote Touch

- Do not allow the Remote Touch to come into contact with food, liquid, stickers or lit cigarettes as doing so may cause it to change color, emit a strange odor or stop functioning.
- Do not subject the Remote Touch to excessive pressure or strong impact as the knob may bend or break off.
- Do not allow coins, contact lenses or other such items to become caught in the Remote Touch as this may cause it to stop functioning.
- Items of clothing may rip if they become caught on the Remote Touch knob.
- If your hand or any object is on the Remote Touch knob when the power switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode, the Remote Touch knob may not operate properly.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

"Menu" screen

Press the "MENU" button on the Remote Touch to display the "Menu" screen.

The display may differ depending on the type of the system.

When the split-screen display is selected, the "Menu" screen will be displayed on the main display.
(→P. 337)

Switch	Function
*1	Select to display the "Destination" screen.*3
	Select to display the radio control screen.*3
	Select to display the media control screen.*3
	Select to display the hands-free operation screen.*3
*1, 2	Select to display the "LEXUS App Suite" screen.*3
	Select to display the "Information" screen.*3(→P. 113, 115)
	Select to display the air conditioning control screen. (→P. 341)
	Select to display the "Setup" screen.*3
"Display"	Select to adjust the contrast and brightness of the screens, turn the screen off, etc.*3

*1: Vehicles with a navigation system

*2: This function is not made available on some models.

*3: For details, refer to "NAVIGATION AND MULTIMEDIA SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

12.3-inch display

12.3-inch display overview

■ Full screen display

The following functions can be displayed full screen:

- Initial screen
- "Menu" screen (→P. 335)
- Map screen*

*: For details, refer to "NAVIGATION AND MULTIMEDIA SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Split-screen display

Different information can be displayed on the left and right of the screen. For example, audio screen can be displayed and operated while the fuel consumption information screen is being displayed.
The large screen on the left of the display is called the main display, and the small screen to the right is called the side display.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Split-screen display operation

■ Selecting the operation screen

When selecting the main display, move the Remote Touch knob to the left. When selecting the side display, move the Remote Touch knob to the right.

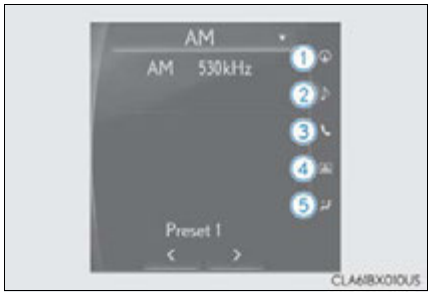
■ Main display

For details about the functions and operation of the main display, refer to the respective section and "NAVIGATION AND MULTIMEDIA SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".

■ Side display

▶ Basic screens

To change the screen displayed on the side display, use the screen buttons on the right side of the display.



① Navigation system*
② Audio*
③ Phone*
④ Vehicle information (→P. 118)
⑤ Air conditioning system (→P. 342)

▶ Interruption screens

Each of the following screens is displayed automatically in accordance with conditions.

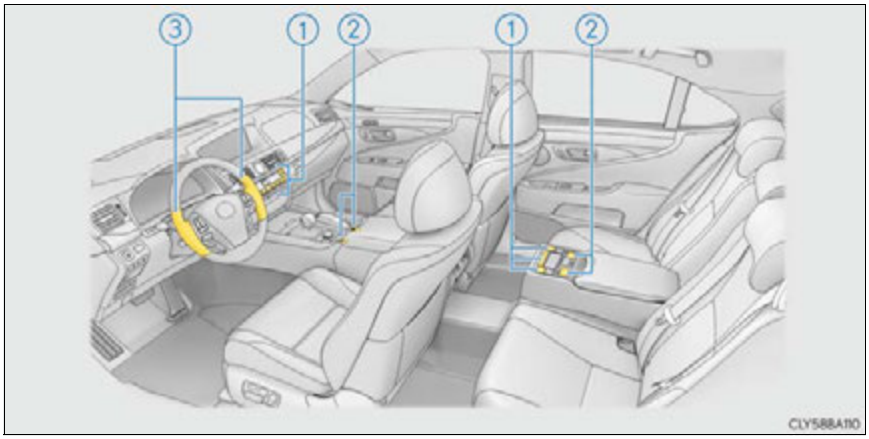
- Intuitive parking assist
- Phone*
- Destination Assist*
- Driving mode
- Lexus night view (if equipped) (→P. 321)

*: For details, refer to "NAVIGATION AND MULTIMEDIA SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Lexus Climate Concierge

The climate control seats on each seat and heated steering wheel are automatically controlled according to the set temperature of the air conditioning system, outside temperature, cabin temperature, etc. Lexus Climate Concierge allows a comfortable condition to be maintained without adjusting each system.



① Automatic air conditioning system (→P. 343, 356)

Set the air conditioning system to automatic mode.

The temperature for the driver's seat, front passenger's seat and both rear seats can be adjusted individually.

② Climate control seats (→P. 391, 392)

Select "AUTO" mode on each seat.

Seat heater, off, ventilation or seat cooler is automatically selected according to the set temperature of the air conditioning system, outside temperature, etc.

③ Heated steering wheel (→P. 389)

Turned on automatically according to the outside temperature and cabin temperature.

Operates for a maximum of 30 minutes.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Front automatic air conditioning system

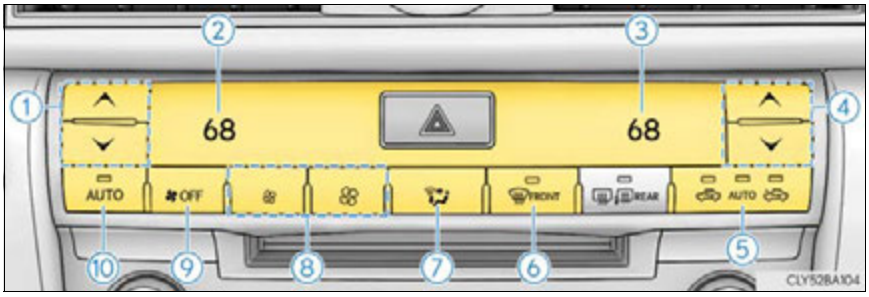
Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

Press the "MENU" button on the Remote Touch, and then select to display the air conditioning operation screen.

The air conditioning system can be displayed and operated on the side display. (→P. 337)

The display and button positions will differ depending on the type of the system.

■ Control panel



① Left-hand front seat side temperature control
② Left-hand front seat side temperature display
③ Right-hand front seat side temperature display
④ Right-hand front seat side temperature control
⑤ Outside/recirculated air mode
⑥ Windshield defogger
⑦ Air outlet selector
⑧ Fan speed control
⑨ Off
⑩ Automatic mode

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Operation screen (Main display)

① Left-hand front seat side temperature control

② Fan speed control

③ Air flows to the feet and the windshield defogger operates

④ Right-hand front seat side temperature control

⑤ Option control screen

⑥ Automatic mode

⑦ Select to set cooling and dehumidification function on/off

⑧ 4-ZONE mode on/off

⑨ Eco mode on/off

⑩ Right-hand front seat side air outlet selector

⑪ Left-hand front seat side air outlet selector

⑫ Rear air conditioning operation screen

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Option control screen

① Micro dust and pollen filter on/off

② Air purifier and rear air conditioning function on/off

■ Operation screen (Side display)

① Left-hand front seat side temperature control

② Fan speed control

③ Right-hand front seat side temperature control

④ Automatic mode

⑤ Cooling and dehumidification function on/off

⑥ 4-ZONE mode on/off

⑦ Right-hand front seat side air outlet selector

⑧ Left-hand front seat side air outlet selector

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Using the voice command system

Press to operate the voice command system. For details, refer to "NAVIGATION AND MULTIMEDIA SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".

Using the automatic air conditioning system

1 Press the "AUTO" switch or select "AUTO" on the operation screen.

The dehumidification function begins to operate. Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting and humidity.

2 Press to switch to automatic air intake mode.

The air conditioning system automatically switches between outside air and recirculated air modes.

3 Press or select on the operation screen to increase the temperature and or on the operation screen to decrease the temperature.

When "4-ZONE" is selected (the indicator will be on) or the passenger's side temperature control button is pressed, the temperature for the driver's, front passenger's and rear seats (→P. 355) can be adjusted separately.

Air outlets for the driver and passenger seats may be adjusted separately depending on the temperature setting.

When the climate control seats are set to "AUTO" mode, the system is operated automatically according to the set temperature, outside temperature, etc.

Automatic mode indicator

If the fan speed setting or air flow modes are operated, the automatic mode indicator goes off. However, automatic mode for functions other than that operated is maintained.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Adjusting the settings manually

1 To adjust the fan speed, press or select on the operation screen to increase the fan speed and or on the operation screen to decrease the fan speed.

Press to turn the fan off.

2 To adjust the temperature setting, press or select on the operation screen to increase the temperature and or on the operation screen to decrease the temperature.

The air conditioning system switches between individual and simultaneous modes each time "4-ZONE" is selected.

When "4-ZONE" is selected (the indicator will be on) or the passenger's side temperature control button is pressed, the temperature for the driver's, front passenger's and rear seats (→P. 355) can be adjusted separately.

When the climate control seats are set to "AUTO" mode, the system is operated automatically according to the set temperature, outside temperature, etc.

3 To change the air outlets, press or select an air outlet switch.

① Left-hand front seat

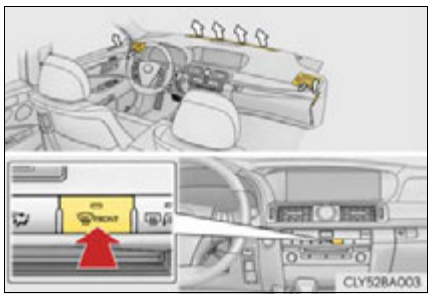
② Right-hand front seat

Different air outlets for the driver and front passenger seats can be chosen.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Defogging the windshield

Press .



The dehumidification function operates and fan speed increases.

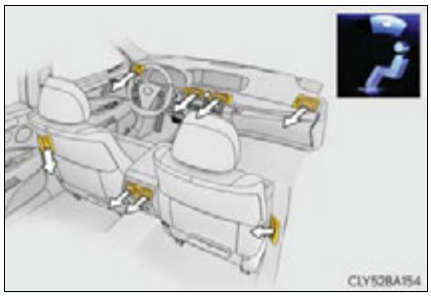
Set the outside/recirculated air mode button to outside air mode if the recirculated air mode is used. (It may switch automatically.)

To defog the windshield and the side windows early, turn the air flow and temperature up.

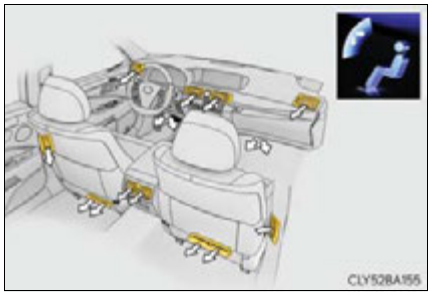
To return to the previous mode, press again when the windshield is defogged.

Air outlets and air flow

Upper body

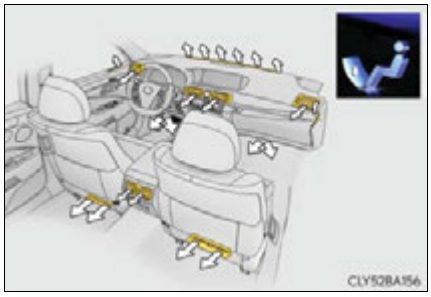


Upper body and feet

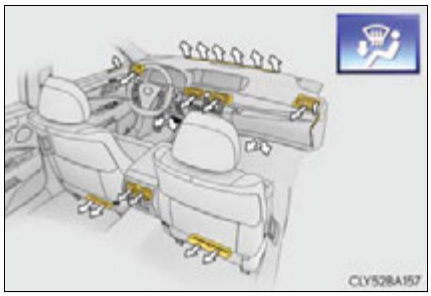


DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Feet



Feet and windshield



Switching between outside air and recirculated air modes

Press .

The mode switches among (recirculated air mode), automatic and (outside air mode) modes each time the button is pressed.

When the system is switched to automatic mode, the air conditioning system operates automatically.

Turning the air purifier off

1 Select on the operation screen.

2 Select "Air Purifier".

The air purifier will turn off when the indicator on the switch goes off. Air will not flow from the roof vents.

To turn the air purifier on, select "Air Purifier" again.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Changing the rear seat settings

■ Using the automatic mode

1 Select on the operation screen.

2 Select "REAR AUTO".

The air conditioning system and air purifier will operate, and air outlets and speed will be set automatically.

The rear climate control seats are operated automatically according to the set temperature and the outside temperature. (→P. 391)

3 Select to increase the temperature and to decrease the temperature on the operation screen.

Air outlets for the right-hand and left-hand seats may be set separately depending on the temperature setting.

When the rear climate control seats are set to "AUTO" mode, the system is operated automatically according to the set temperature, outside temperature, etc.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Adjusting the temperature setting

1 Select on the operation screen.

2 Select (increase) or (decrease).

Operating the switch will enter individual mode.

① Left-hand rear seat

② Right-hand rear seat

The air conditioning system switches between individual and simultaneous modes each time "4-ZONE" is selected.

When the rear climate control seats are set to "AUTO" mode, the system is operated automatically according to the set temperature, outside temperature, etc.

■ Adjusting the fan speed (air purifier and cool air from the roof vents)

1 Select on the operation screen.

2 To adjust the fan speed, select to increase the fan speed and to decrease the fan speed.

According to the air outlets currently selected, the fan speed of either the cool air from the roof vents or air purifier will be adjusted.
(→P. 359)

■ Turning the rear air conditioning system off

1 Select on the operation screen.

2 Select

on the operation screen.

The air purifier and the rear climate control seats also turn off.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Disabling the switches on the rear controller

1 Select on the operation screen.

2 Select .

Rear climate control seats buttons are also locked.

Micro dust and pollen filter button

1 Select on the operation screen.

2 Select .

Outside air mode switches to (recirculated air) mode. Pollen is removed from the air and the air flows to the upper part of the body.

Usually the system will turn off automatically after approximately 1 to 3 minutes.

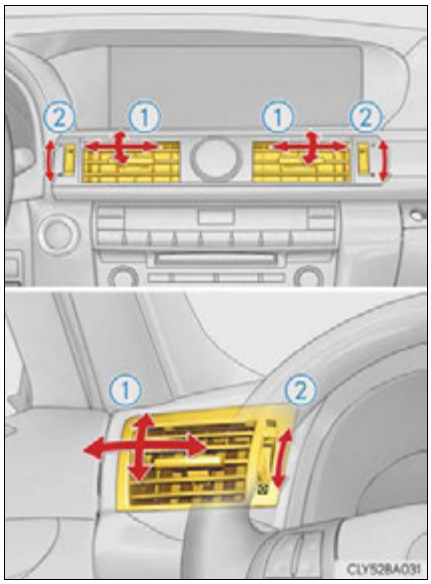
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Adjusting the position of and opening and closing the air outlets

■ Front center outlets and front side outlets

① Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.

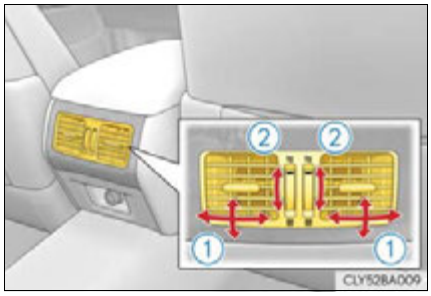
② Turn the knob to open or close the vent.



■ Rear center outlets

① Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.

② Turn the knob to open or close the vent.



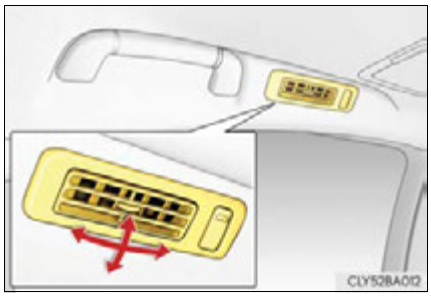
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Rear side outlets

① Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.

② Turn the knob to open or close the vent.

■ Roof side outlets



Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Operation of the air conditioning system in Eco drive mode**

- In the Eco drive mode, the air conditioning system is controlled as follows to prioritize fuel efficiency
  - Engine speed and compressor operation controlled to restrict heating/cooling capacity
  - Fan speed restricted when automatic mode is selected
- To improve air conditioning performance, perform the following operations
  - Adjust the fan speed
  - Turn off Eco drive mode

■ **Using the automatic mode**

Fan speed is adjusted automatically in accordance with the temperature setting and ambient conditions. As a result, the following may occur:

- Immediately after the "AUTO" switch is pressed, the fan may stop for a while until warm or cool air is ready to flow.
- Cool air may flow to the area around the upper body when the heater is on.

■ **Fogging up of the windows**

- The windows will easily fog up when the humidity in the vehicle is high. Selecting "A/C" on will dehumidify the air from the outlets and defog the windshield effectively.
- If you turn "A/C" off, the windows may fog up more easily.
- The windows may fog up if the recirculated air mode is used.

■ **Outside/recirculated air mode**

- When driving on dusty roads such as tunnels or in heavy traffic, set the outside/recirculated air mode button to the recirculated air mode. This is effective in preventing outside air from entering the vehicle interior. During cooling operation, setting the recirculated air mode will also cool the vehicle interior effectively.
- Outside/recirculated air mode may automatically switch depending on the temperature setting or the inside temperature.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **When the outside temperature exceeds 75°F (24°C) and the air conditioning system is on**

- In order to reduce the air conditioning power consumption, the air conditioning system may switch to recirculated air mode automatically. This may also reduce fuel consumption.
- Recirculated air mode is selected as a default mode when the power switch is turned on.
- It is possible to switch to outside air mode at any time by pressing .

■ **When the hybrid battery cooling system operates**

- If the hybrid battery cooling system operates when the air conditioning is off, a message will be shown on the multi-information display and the air conditioning will automatically turn on. (→P. 105)
- The sound of the air flow may change when cool air flows from the rear roof vents or the air purifier is in operation. This occurs when the hybrid battery is being cooled and does not indicate a malfunction.

■ **Automatic mode for air intake control**

In automatic mode, the system detects exhaust gas and other pollutants and automatically switches between outside air and recirculated air modes.

When the dehumidification function is off, and the fan is operating, turning automatic mode on will activate the dehumidification function.

■ **Micro dust and pollen filter**

- In order to prevent the windshield from fogging up when the outside air is cold, the following may occur:
  - Outside air mode does not switch to (recirculated air) mode.
  - The dehumidification function operates.
  - The operation cancels after approximately 1 minute.
- In rainy weather, the windows may fog up. Press .
- In extremely humid weather, the windows may fog up.
- The pollens are filtered out even if the micro dust and pollen filter is turned off.

■ **Air purifier**

The air purifier will turn on when turning the rear air conditioning system on.

■ **When the outside temperature falls to nearly 32°F (0°C)**

The dehumidification function may not operate even when "A/C" is selected.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Ventilation and air conditioning odors**

- To let fresh air in, set the air conditioning system to the outside air mode.
- During use, various odors from inside and outside the vehicle may enter into and accumulate in the air conditioning system. This may then cause odor to be emitted from the vents.
- To reduce potential odors from occurring:
  - It is recommended that the air conditioning system be set to outside air mode prior to turning the vehicle off.
  - The start timing of the blower may be delayed for a short period of time immediately after the air conditioning system is started in automatic mode.

■ **Air conditioning filter**

→P. 475

■ **Customization**

Some functions can be customized. (Customizable features →P. 571)

⚠ CAUTION

■ **To prevent the windshield from fogging up**

Do not use during cool air operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windshield can cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, blocking your vision.

NOTICE

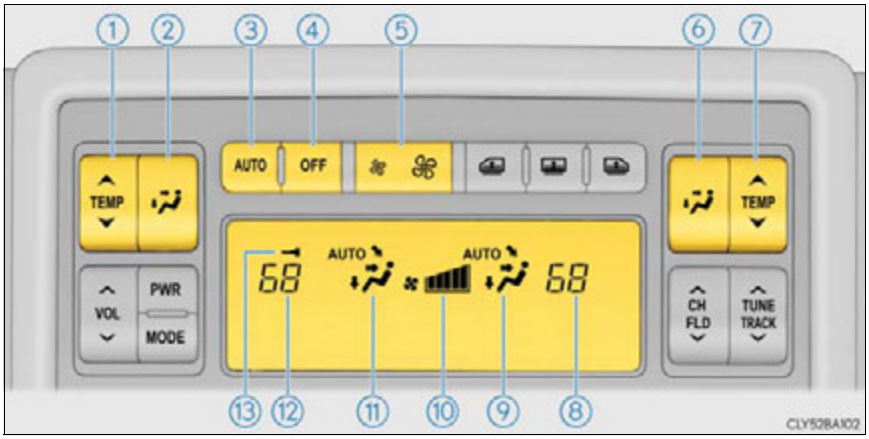
■ **To prevent 12-volt battery discharge**

Do not leave the air conditioning system on longer than necessary when the hybrid system is off.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Rear air conditioning system

Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.



① Left-hand rear seat side temperature control

② Left-hand rear seat side air outlet selector

③ Automatic mode

④ Off

⑤ Fan speed control

⑥ Right-hand rear seat side air outlet selector

⑦ Right-hand rear seat side temperature control

⑧ Right-hand rear seat side temperature display

⑨ Right-hand rear seat side air flow display

⑩ Fan speed display

⑪ Left-hand rear seat side air flow display

⑫ Left-hand rear seat side temperature display

⑬ Button lock display

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Using automatic air conditioning system

1 Press the "AUTO" button.

The air conditioning system will operate, and air outlets and fan speed will be adjusted automatically.

"AUTO" will be displayed on the control panel.

2 Press "∧" on "TEMP" to increase the temperature and "∨" to decrease the temperature.

The temperature for the right-hand and left-hand seats can be adjusted separately.

Air outlets for the right-hand and left-hand seats may be set separately depending on the temperature setting.

When the rear climate control seats are set to "AUTO" mode, the system is operated automatically according to the set temperature, outside temperature, etc.

Adjusting the settings manually

■ Adjusting the temperature setting

Press "∧" on "TEMP" to increase the temperature and "∨" to decrease the temperature.

The temperature for the right-hand and left-hand seats can be adjusted separately.

When the rear climate control seats are set to "AUTO" mode, the system is operated automatically according to the set temperature, outside temperature, etc.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Changing the air outlets

Press .

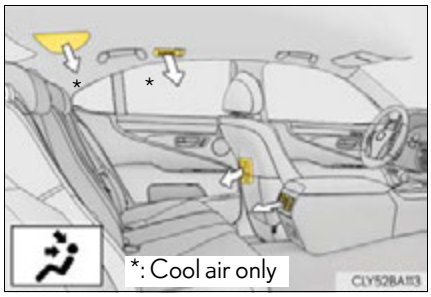
The air outlets change as follows each time is pressed.

Different air outlets for the right-hand and left-hand rear seats can be chosen.

Air flows as shown below according to the mode selected.

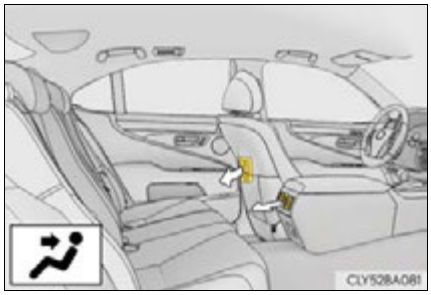
▶ When the indicator on "Air Purifier" (on the option control screen) is on

Upper body



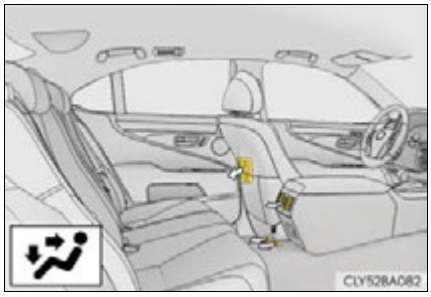
▶ When the indicator on "Air Purifier" (on the option control screen) is off

Upper body

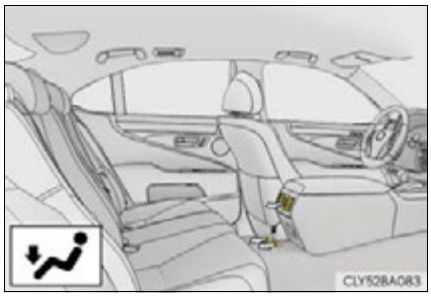


DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Upper body and feet



Feet



DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

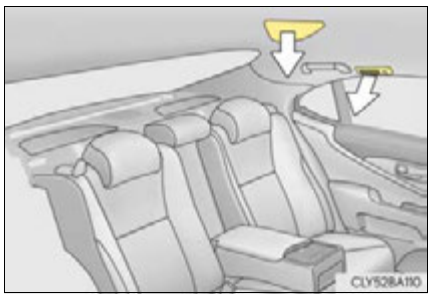
■ **Adjusting the air volume**

The volume of cool air or air from the air purifier can be adjusted according to the mode selected.

Press (increase) or (decrease) on .

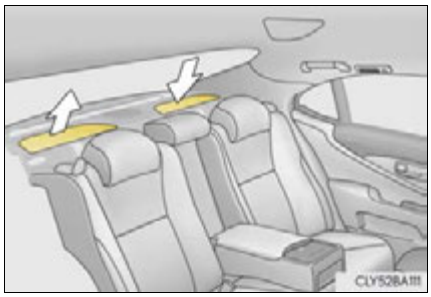
▶ When the selected air outlets mode is

Cool air flows from roof vents.



▶ When the selected air outlets mode is , or

Air from the air purifier.



Press the "OFF" button to turn the fan off.

The air purifier also turn off.

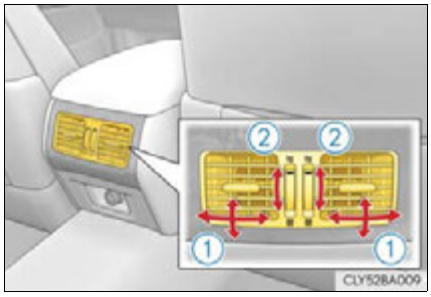
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Adjusting the position of and opening and closing the air outlets

■ Rear center outlets

① Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.

② Turn the knob to open or close the vent.



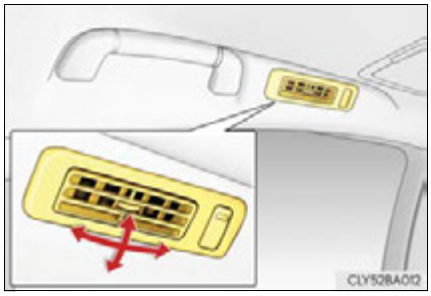
■ Rear side outlets

① Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.

② Turn the knob to open or close the vent.

■ Roof side outlets

Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.



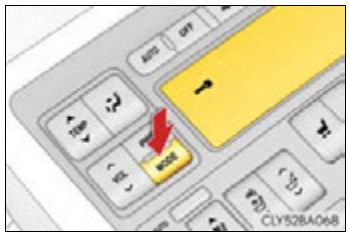
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Button lock function

To prevent inadvertent operation, the buttons on the rear controller for the air conditioning system, rear sunshade, rear door sunshades, and audio system can be locked.

Press and hold the "MODE" switch until you hear a beep to lock the buttons. Pressing the "MODE" switch again until you hear a beep will release the lock.

An indicator appears on the display when the buttons are locked.

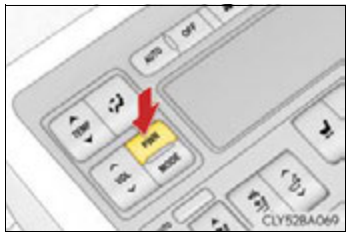


The rear controller can be locked from the air conditioning operation screen. (→P. 349)

Rear control panel illumination off function

Control panel illumination on the rear controller can be turned off.

Press and hold the "PWR" switch until you hear a beep to turn the illumination off. Pressing the "PWR" switch again until you hear a beep will turn the illumination on.



Replacing the rear air conditioning filter

Replacing the air conditioning filter when using rear air conditioning or air purifier reduces air flow or deodorizing performance. (→P. 475).

NOTICE

To prevent 12-volt battery discharge

Do not leave the air conditioning system on longer than necessary when the hybrid system is off.

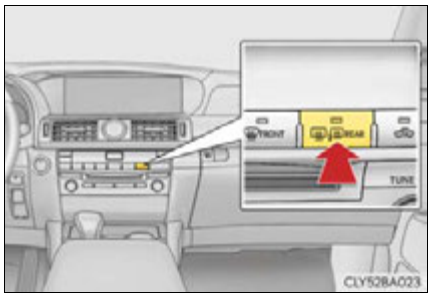
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers

These features are used to defog the rear window, and to remove raindrops, dew and frost from the outside rear view mirrors.

On/off

The defoggers will automatically turn off after approximately 15 minutes.



Operating conditions

The power switch must be in the ON mode.

CAUTION

When the outside rear view mirror defoggers are on

Do not touch the rear view mirror surfaces, as they can become very hot and burn you.

NOTICE

To prevent 12-volt battery discharge

Turn the defoggers off when the hybrid system is off.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Windshield wiper de-icer*

This feature is used to prevent ice from building up on the windshield and wiper blades.

1 Press the "MENU" button on the Remote Touch. (→P. 332)

2 Select on the "Menu" screen.

3 Select on the "Climate" screen.

4 Operates the windshield wiper de-icer on/off.

Select on the option control screen to turn on the windshield wiper de-icer, then the indicator will be on. The windshield wiper de-icer will automatically turn off after approximately 15 minutes, then the indicator will be off. Selecting on the option control screen again also turns the de-icer off.

Operating conditions

The power switch must be in the ON mode.

⚠ CAUTION

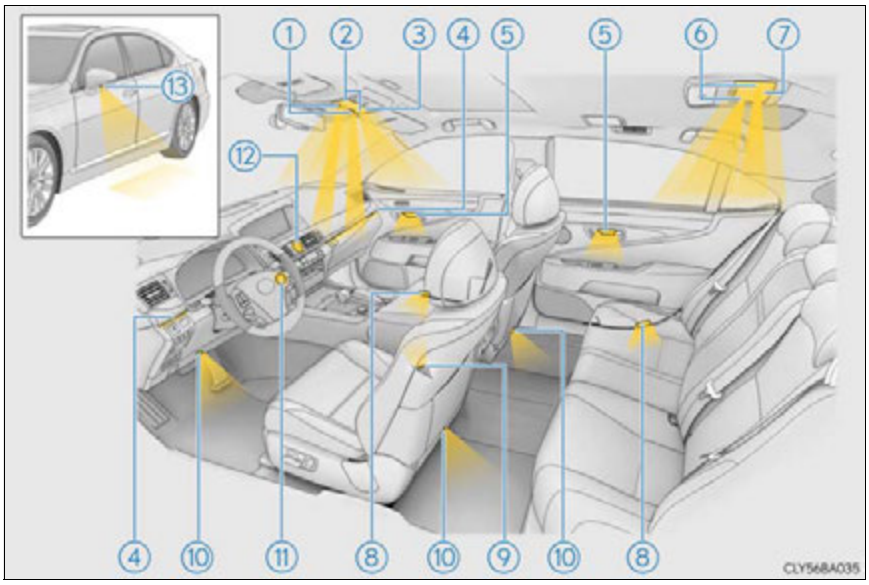
When the windshield wiper de-icer is on

Do not touch the glass at the lower part of the windshield or to the side of the front pillars as the surfaces can become very hot and burn you.

*: If equipped

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Interior lights list



1. Shift lever lights
2. Front personal lights (→P. 366)
3. Front interior lights (→P. 365)
4. Instrument panel ornament lights
5. Inside door handle lights
6. Rear personal lights (→P. 366)
7. Rear interior light (→P. 365)
8. Door courtesy lights
9. Seat belt buckle lights
10. Footwell lights
11. Power switch light
12. Clock light
13. Outer foot lights

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

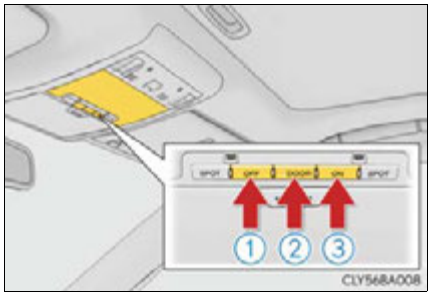
Interior lights

▶ Front

① "OFF"

② Door position on/off

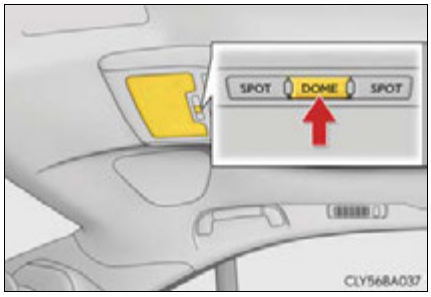
③ "ON"



▶ Rear

On/off

If door position on is selected for the front interior light, the rear interior light is also turned on/off by the opening and closing of a door.

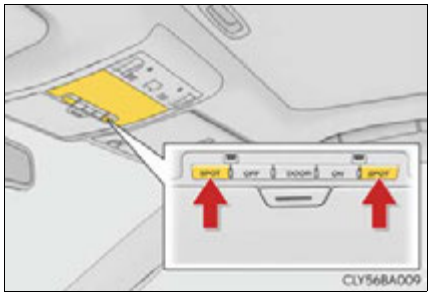


DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Personal lights

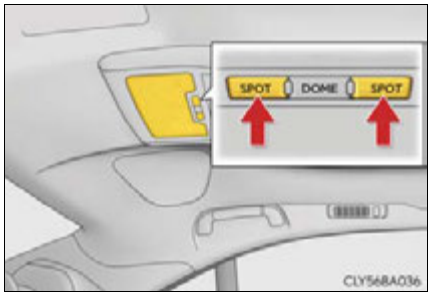
▶ Front

On/off



▶ Rear

On/off



DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Illuminated entry system**

The lights automatically turn on/off according to power switch mode, the presence of the electronic key, whether the doors are locked/unlocked, and whether the doors are opened/closed.

■ **To prevent the 12-volt battery from being discharged**

If the following lights remain on when the power switch is turned off, the lights will go off automatically after 20 minutes:

- Interior lights
- Door courtesy lights
- Personal lights
- Inside door handle lights
- Seat belt buckle lights
- Footwell lights
- Power switch light

■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. The time elapsed before lights turn off) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 571)

⚠ NOTICE

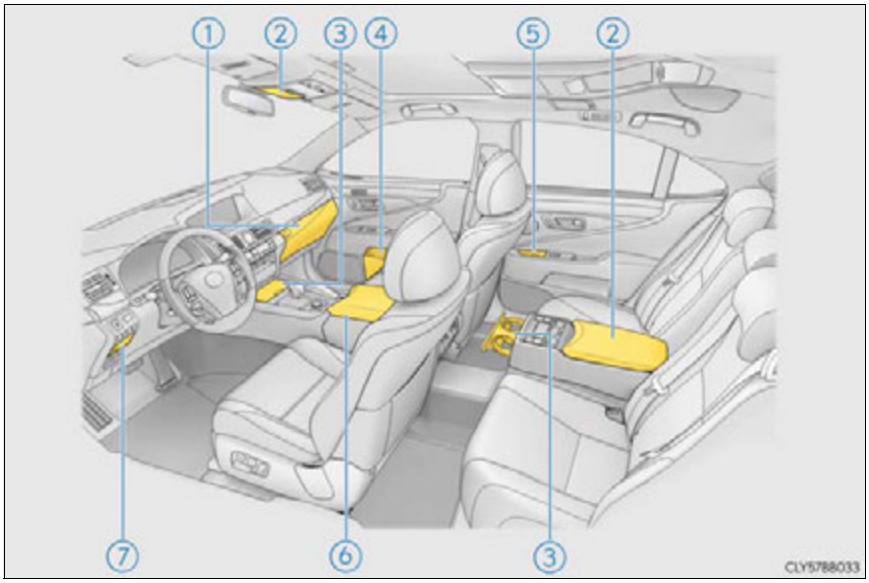
■ **To prevent 12-volt battery discharge**

Do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the hybrid system is off.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

List of storage features

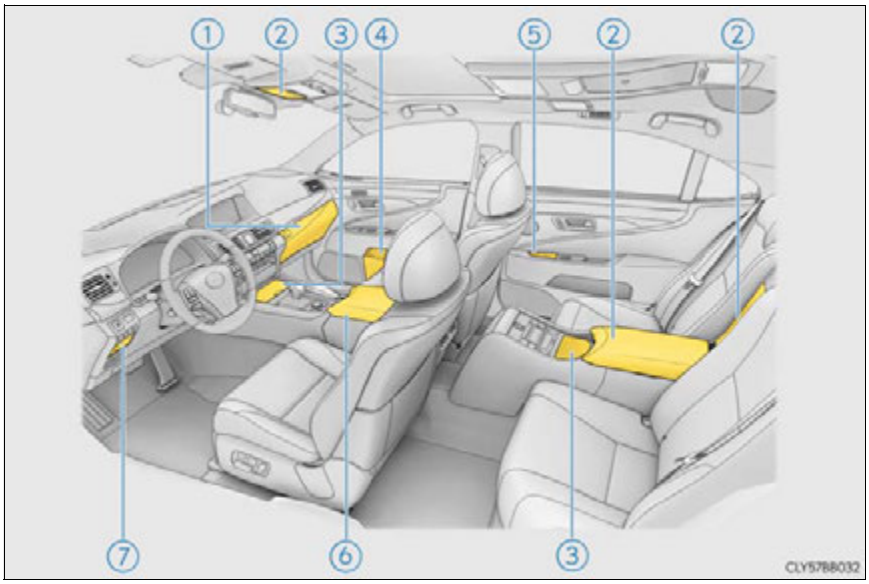
▶ 5-seat models



1. Glove box (→P. 370)
2. Auxiliary boxes (→P. 375)
3. Cup holders (→P. 372)
4. Door pockets (→P. 371)
5. Auxiliary boxes (if equipped) (→P. 375)
   Ashtrays (if equipped) (→P. 383)
6. Console box (→P. 373)
7. Coin holder (→P. 371)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

▶ 4-seat models



① Glove box (→P. 370)
② Auxiliary boxes (→P. 375)
③ Cup holders (→P. 372)
④ Door pockets (→P. 371)
⑤ Auxiliary boxes (if equipped) (→P. 375)
Ashtrays (if equipped) (→P. 383)
⑥ Console box (→P. 373)
⑦ Coin holder (→P. 371)

⚠ CAUTION

■ Items that should not be left in the storage spaces

Do not leave glasses, lighters or spray cans in the storage spaces, as this may cause the following when cabin temperature becomes high:

- Glasses may be deformed by heat or cracked if they come into contact with other stored items.
- Lighters or spray cans may explode. If they come into contact with other stored items, the lighter may catch fire or the spray can may release gas, causing a fire hazard.

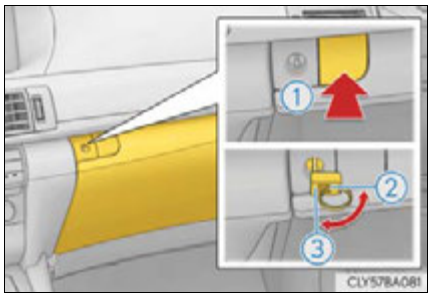
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Glove box

① Open (push button)

② Unlock with the mechanical key

③ Lock with the mechanical key



■ Glove box light

The glove box light turns on when the tail lights are on.

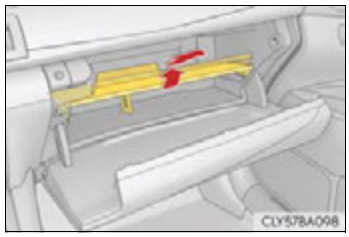
■ Trunk opener main switch

The trunk opener main switch is located in the glove box. (→P. 152)

■ Removing the partition

The partition inside the glove box can be removed.

Lift the front side of the partition and pull it out at an angle.



⚠ CAUTION

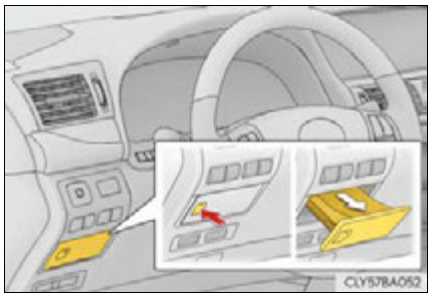
■ Caution while driving

Keep the glove box closed. In the event of sudden braking or sudden swerving, an accident may occur due to an occupant being struck by the open glove box or the items stored inside.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Coin holder

Press in the button.



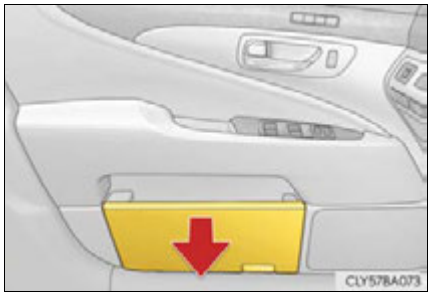
CAUTION

■ Caution while driving

Keep the coin holder closed.
Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

Door pockets (front)

The front door pockets can be opened and closed.



CAUTION

■ Caution while driving

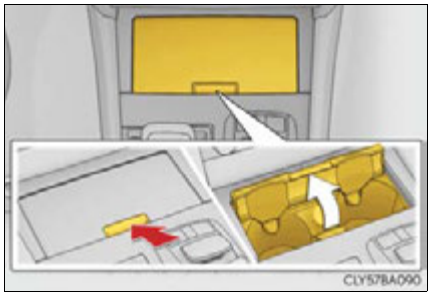
Keep the door pockets closed.
Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Cup holders

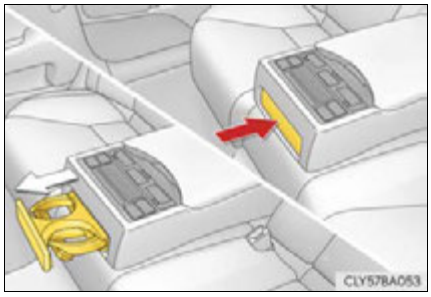
▶ Front

Press in and release the button.



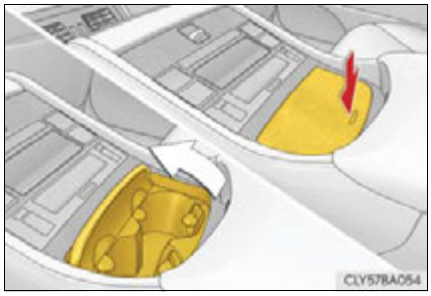
▶ Rear (5-seat models)

Press in and release the cup holder.



▶ Rear (4-seat models)

Press in and release the button.



■ **When stowing the rear cup holders (5-seat models)**

Stow the cup holder with the armrest down. The cup holder cannot be stowed if the armrest is not down.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION

■ **Items unsuitable for the cup holder**

Do not place anything other than cups or aluminum cans in the cup holders. Other items may be thrown out of the holders in the event of an accident or sudden braking and cause injury. If possible, cover hot drinks to prevent burns.

■ **To avoid burns or fires (vehicles with a cigarette lighter)**

- Do not touch the metal parts of the cigarette lighter in the front cup holder.
- Do not hold the cigarette lighter in the front cup holder down. It could overheat and cause a fire.

■ **When not in use**

Keep the cup holders closed.
Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

NOTICE

■ **To prevent damage to the rear cup holder**

Stow the cup holder before stowing the armrest.

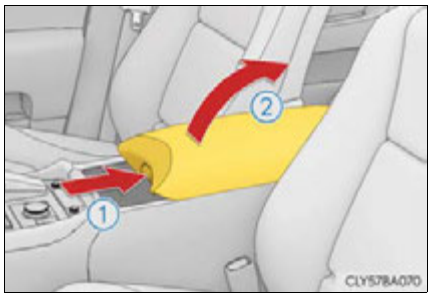
■ **To avoid damaging the power outlet (vehicles with a power outlet)**

Close the lid of the power outlet in the front cup holder when the power outlet is not in use. Foreign objects or liquids that enter the power outlet may cause a short circuit.

Console box

① Slide the armrest while pressing the button.

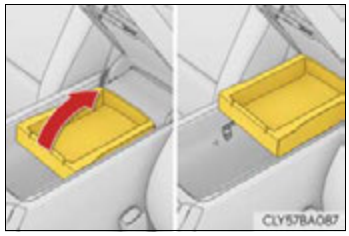
② Lift the armrest.



DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Tray in the console box

The tray can be raised backward.



■ Opening and closing assist function

When the console box is opened or closed partway, this function will apply force in the appropriate direction, helping open or close the console box.

■ Console box light

The console box light turns on when the tail lights are on.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Caution while driving

Keep the console box closed.
Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

NOTICE

■ Tray

Do not insert items exceeding the height of the tray. Doing so may prevent opening and closing of the lid.

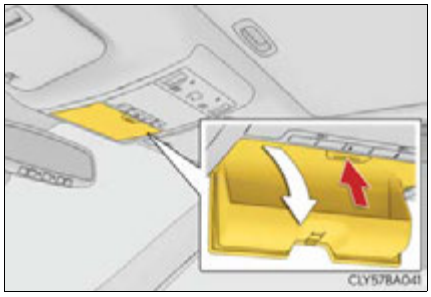
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Auxiliary boxes

▶ Overhead

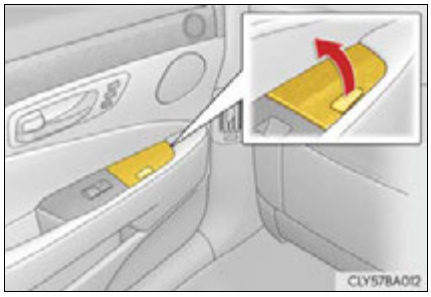
Press in the button.

This box is useful for temporarily storing sunglasses and similar small items.



▶ Rear door (if equipped)

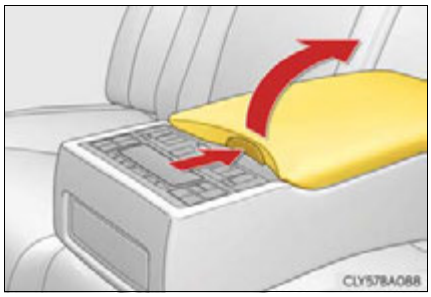
Open the lid.



▶ Rear seat (5-seat models)

1 Pull down the armrest. (→P. 396)

2 Press the button and lift the lid.

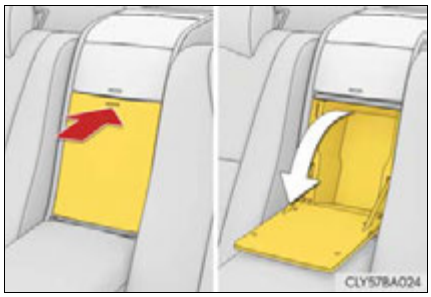


DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

▶ Rear seat (4-seat models)

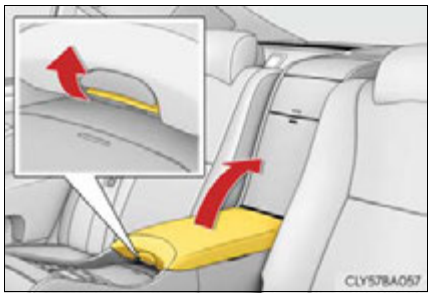
Press in the lid.

This box is useful for storing DVD discs and headphones.



▶ Rear seat (4-seat models — armrest)

Pull up the lever to release the lock and lift the lid.



⚠ CAUTION

■ Using the auxiliary boxes (rear door)

Do not use the auxiliary boxes as an ashtray.
Doing so may cause a fire.

■ Caution while driving

Do not leave the auxiliary box open while driving.
Items may fall out and cause death or serious injury in case of an accident or sudden stop.

■ Items unsuitable for storing (overhead)

Do not store items heavier than 0.4 lb. (0.2 kg).

Doing so may cause the auxiliary box to open and the items inside may fall out, resulting in an accident.

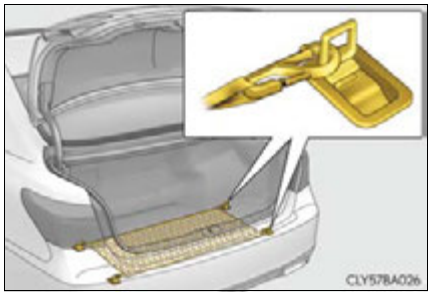
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

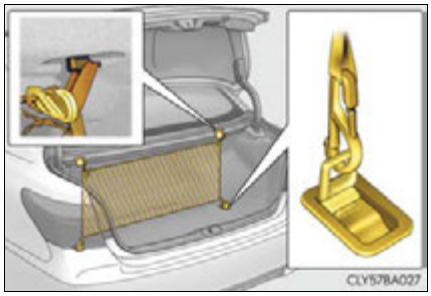
Trunk features

Cargo net

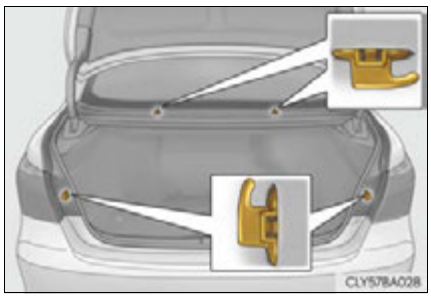
The cargo net is provided for securing loose items on the floor or items inside the trunk.

Raise the cargo hooks on the floor. Hook the net on the cargo hooks.





Shopping bag hooks

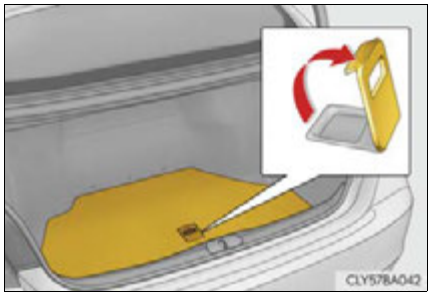


DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

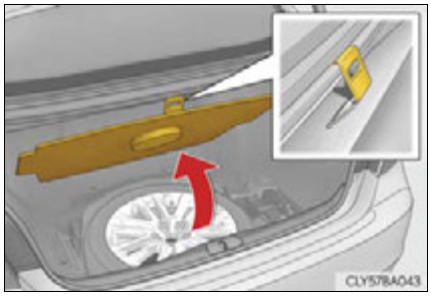
Luggage mat

▶ Vehicles with a spare tire

1 Hold the hook and lift up the luggage mat.

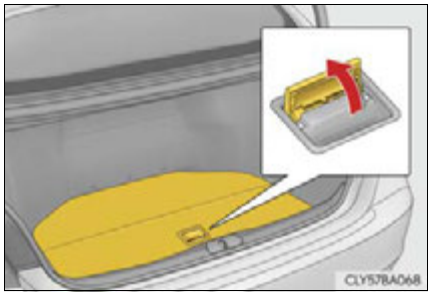


2 Secure the luggage mat using the hook.



▶ Vehicles with run-flat tires

Lift up the handle and fold the luggage mat.

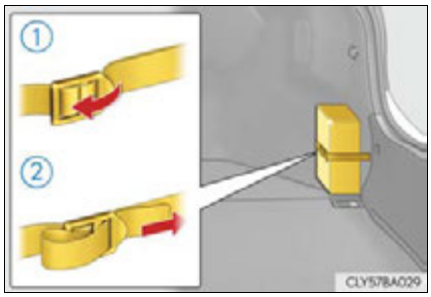


DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

First-aid kit storage belt

① Loosen

② Tighten



⚠ CAUTION

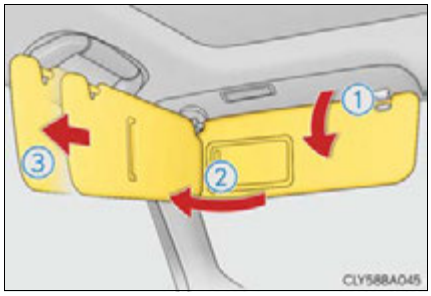
■ When the cargo net is not in use

To avoid injury, always return the cargo hooks on the floor to their stowed positions.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Sun visors and vanity mirrors

Sun visors



① To set the visor in the forward position, flip it down.

② To set the visor in the side position, flip down, unhook, and swing it to the side.

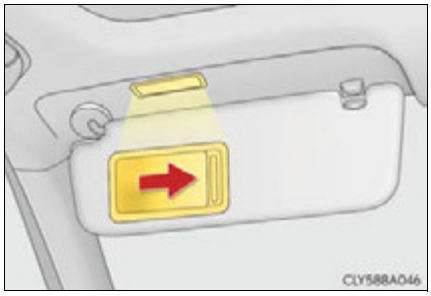
③ To use the side extender, place the visor in the side position, then slide it backward.

Vanity mirrors

▶ Front

Slide the cover to open.

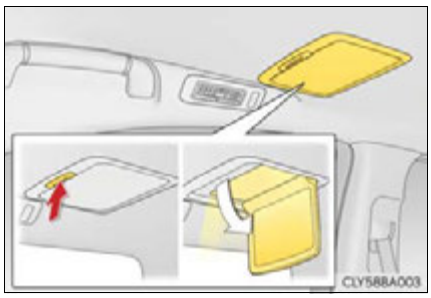
The vanity light turns on.



▶ Rear

Press the button to open.

The vanity light turns on.



DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **To prevent 12-volt battery discharge**

If the vanity lights remain on when the power switch is turned off, the lights will go off automatically after 20 minutes.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **When not in use**

Keep the rear vanity mirror closed.

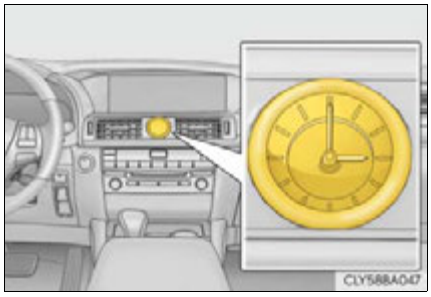
■ **To prevent the 12-volt battery from being discharged**

Do not leave the vanity lights on for extended periods while the hybrid system is off.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Clock

The GPS clock's time is automatically adjusted by utilizing GPS time information. For details, refer to "NAVIGATION AND MULTIMEDIA SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".

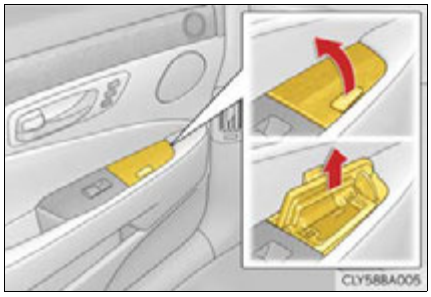


DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Ashtrays*

Open the ashtray lid.

To remove the ashtray, pull the ashtray lid upwards.



⚠ CAUTION

■ When not in use

Keep the ashtray closed. In the event of sudden braking or sudden swerving, an accident may occur due to an occupant being struck by the open ashtray or ash flying out.

■ To prevent fire

- Fully extinguish matches and cigarettes before putting them in the ashtray, then make sure the ashtray is fully closed.
- Do not place paper or any other type of flammable object in the ashtray.

*: If equipped

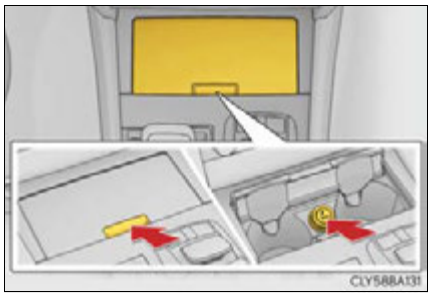
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Cigarette lighters*

▶ Front

Push the back part of the lid to open, and push the cigarette lighter down.

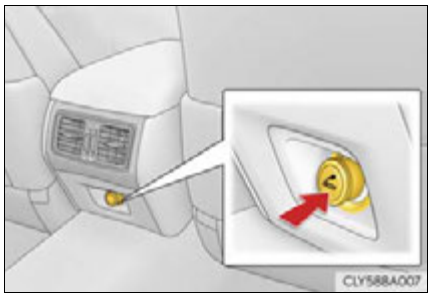
The cigarette lighter will pop up when it is ready for use.



▶ Rear (5-seat models)

Push the cigarette lighter.

The cigarette lighter will pop out when it is ready for use.



▶ Rear (4-seat models)

Open the auxiliary box and push the cigarette lighter.

The cigarette lighter will pop out when it is ready for use.

*: If equipped

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **The cigarette lighter can be used when**

The power switch is in ACCESSORY or ON mode.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **To avoid burns or fires**

- Do not touch the metal parts of the cigarette lighter.
- Do not hold the cigarette lighter down. It could overheat and cause a fire.
- Do not insert anything other than the cigarette lighter into the outlet.

■ **When not in use**

Keep the ashtray closed.
Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Power outlets

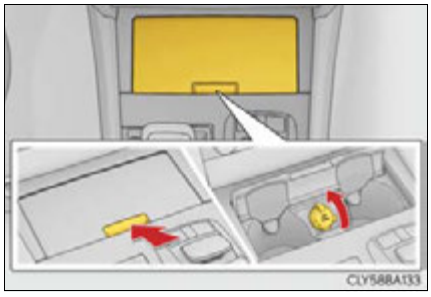
The power outlet can be used for the following components:

12 V: Accessories that run on less than 10 A.
120 VAC: Accessories that use less than 100 W.

■ 12 V

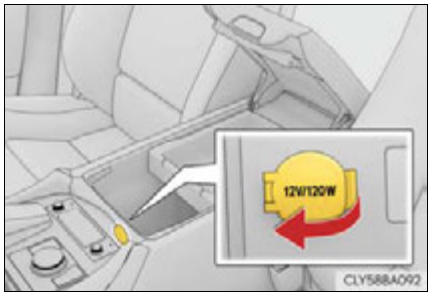
▶ Front*

Push the back part of the lid to open, and open the lid.



▶ Console box

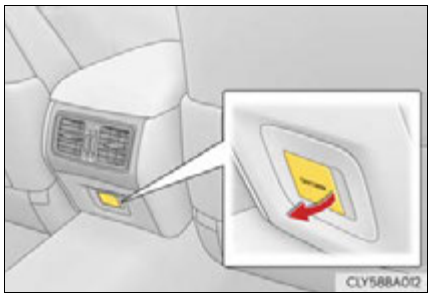
Open the console box and open the lid.



DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

▶ Rear (5-seat models)*

Open the lid.



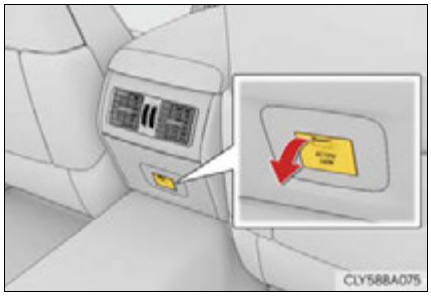
▶ Rear (4-seat models)*

Open the auxiliary box and open the lid.

*: If equipped

■ 120 VAC*

Open the lid.



*: If equipped

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **The power outlet can be used when**

▶ 12 V

The power switch is in ACCESSORY or ON mode.

▶ 120 VAC

The power switch is in ON mode.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **To avoid damaging the power outlet**

Close the power outlet lid when the power outlet is not in use.
Foreign objects or liquids that enter the power outlet may cause a short circuit.

■ **To prevent the fuse from being blown**

▶ 12 V

Do not use an accessory that uses more than 12 V 10 A.

▶ 120 VAC

Do not use a 120 VAC appliance that requires more than 100 W.

If a 120 VAC appliance that consumes more than 100 W is used, the protection circuit will cut the power supply.

■ **To prevent the 12-volt battery from being discharged**

Do not use the power outlet longer than necessary when the hybrid system is off.

■ **Appliances that may not operate properly (120 VAC)**

The following 120 VAC appliances may not operate properly even if their power consumption is under 100 W.

- Appliances with high initial peak wattage
- Measuring devices that process precise data
- Other appliances that require an extremely stable power supply

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

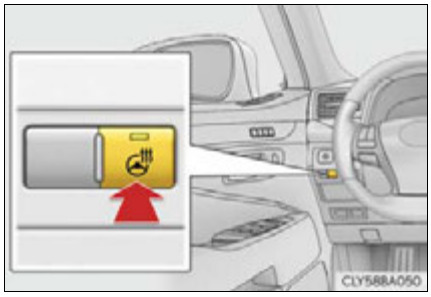
Heated steering wheel

The left and right grip portions of the steering wheel can be heated.

▶ Automatic operation

Operates automatically according to the outside and cabin temperature when the power switch is turned to ON mode. Automatic operation can be turned off using the switch.

The indicator light comes on when the heater is operating.



▶ Manual operation

Turns the heated steering wheel on/off.

The indicator light comes on when the heater is operating.

■ **Operating condition**

The power switch is in ON mode.

■ **Timer function**

Manual operation: Turns off after approximately 30 minutes.
Automatic operation: Operates for a maximum of 30 minutes. (Turns off according to outside and cabin temperature.)

■ **If the indicator light does not come on**

If the indicator light does not come on when the switch is pressed, a malfunction may have occurred in the system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ **Customization**

The automatic turning on/off of the heated steering wheel can be customized. (Customizable features →P. 571)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Burns

Only appropriately qualified and capable non-impaired persons should operate the vehicle. However, care should be taken to prevent injury if anyone in the following categories comes into contact with the steering wheel when the heated steering wheel is on:

- Babies, small children, the elderly, the sick and the disabled
- Persons with sensitive skin
- Persons who are fatigued
- Persons who have taken alcohol or drugs that induce sleep (sleeping drugs, cold remedies, etc.)

⚠ NOTICE

■ To prevent the 12-volt battery from being discharged

Turn the switch off when the hybrid system is off.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

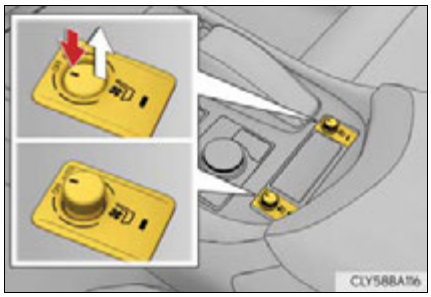
Climate control seats

The seats can be heated or cooled. When set to "AUTO" mode, the climate control seats/seat heaters are linked to the air conditioning settings and automatically adjusted.

Front climate control seats

1 Press the knob to release the lock.

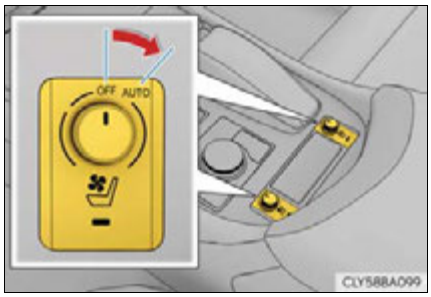
Press the knob to lock it when not in use.



▶ AUTO setting

2 Turn the knob to the "AUTO" position.

When set to "AUTO" mode, seat heater, off, ventilation or seat cooler is automatically selected according to the set temperature of the air conditioning system, outside temperature, etc.



DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

▶ Manual setting

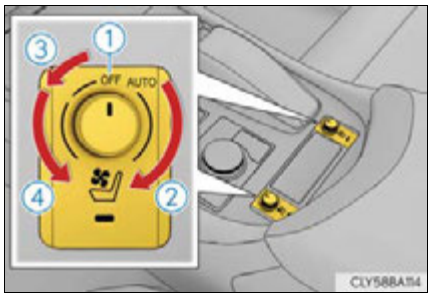
2 Set the temperature by turning the knob to the left or right.

① Off

② Seat heater

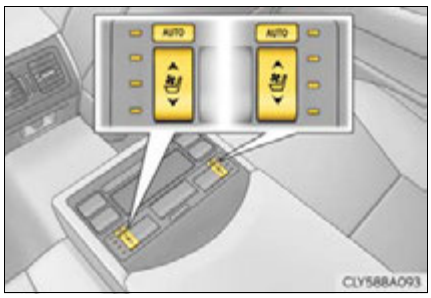
③ Ventilation

④ Seat cooler

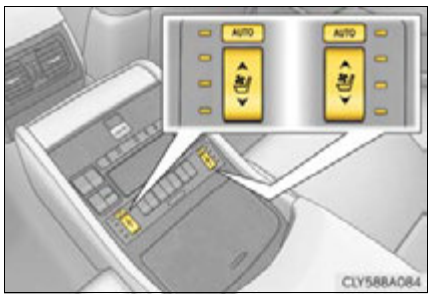


Rear climate control seats

▶ 5-seat models



▶ 4-seat models

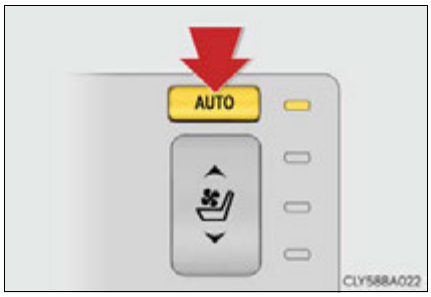


■ AUTO setting

The switch turned on/off.

When set to "AUTO" mode, the indicator illuminates.

When set to "AUTO" mode, seat heater, off, ventilation or seat cooler is automatically selected according to the set temperature of the air conditioning system, outside temperature, etc.



DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Manual setting

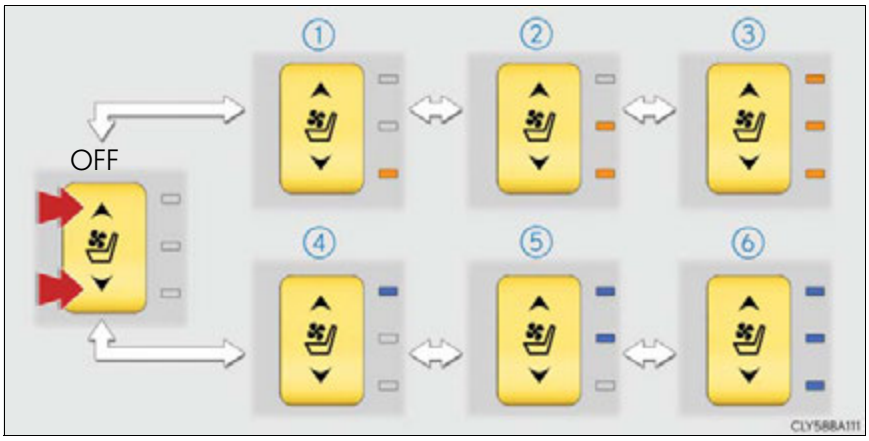
The strength of the seat heater and seat cooler can be adjusted to 3 levels each.

Seat heater*1: When the system is off, pressing "▲" turns the seat heater on.

Pressing "▲" increases the level and pressing "▼" lowers the level.

Seat cooler*2: When the system is off, pressing "▼" turns the seat cooler on.

Pressing "▼" increases the level and pressing "▲" lowers the level.



Seat heater*1

① Low
② Mid
③ Hi

Seat cooler*2

④ Low
⑤ Mid
⑥ Hi

*1: The indicator illuminates in amber.

*2: The indicator illuminates in blue.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Operating condition**

The power switch is in ON mode.

■ **Climate control seat operation**

Depending on the outside temperature and the temperature of the seat surface, there are cases when heating operation is stronger than usual.

■ **Operating the rear climate control seats from the front seats**

→P. 347

■ **Disabling the switches on the rear controller**

→P. 349

■ **Replacing the air filters**

Filters are installed in the climate control seats. For replacement of the filters, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **Customization**

Automatic operation settings can be customized. (Customizable features →P. 571)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Burns/excessive cooling

- Use caution when seating the following persons in a seat to avoid the possibility of burns or excessive cooling:
  - Babies, small children, elderly persons, sick persons and persons with a physical disability
  - Persons who have sensitive skin
  - Persons who are fatigued
  - Persons who have taken alcohol or drugs which induce sleep, such as sleeping drugs and cold remedies
- Do not cover the seat with anything when using the climate control seat. Using the climate control seat with a blanket or cushion may increase or decrease the temperature of the seat, resulting in overheating or overcooling.
- Do not use the climate control seat more than necessary. Doing so may cool the occupants excessively or may cause minor burns or overheating.

⚠ NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the climate control seat

Do not put heavy objects that have an uneven surface on the seat and do not stick sharp objects, such as needles and nails, into the seat.

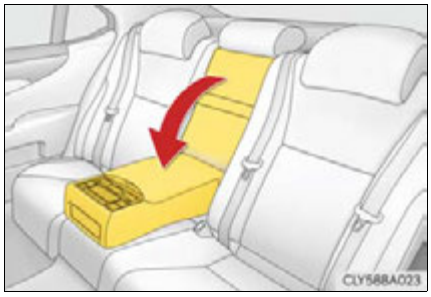
■ To prevent the 12-volt battery from being discharged

Do not leave the system on longer than necessary when the hybrid system is off.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Armrest (5-seat models)

Pull the armrest down for use.



NOTICE

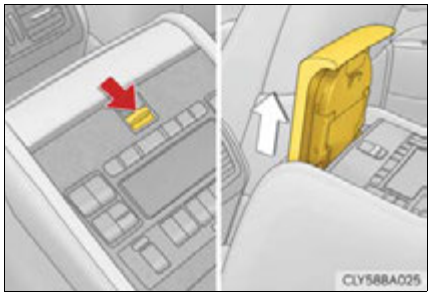
■ To prevent damage to the armrest

Do not place too much strain on the armrest.

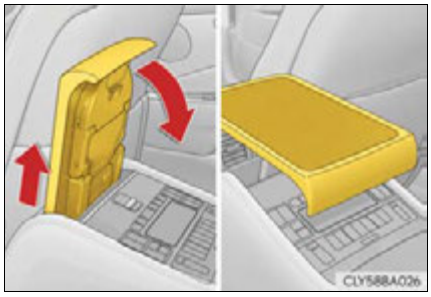
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Retractable table (4-seat models)

1 Slide the lever to raise the table.

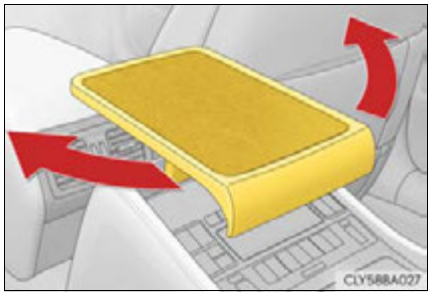


2 Pull the table up and pull down the table.

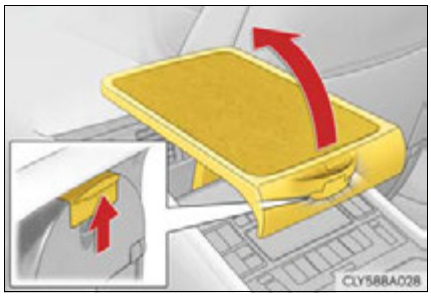


The position of the table can be changed. Before using the table, make sure that the table is securely locked.

When the table is in use, the front seats will stop if they are going to contact the table. (→P. 162, 178)



When returning the table, pull it up while pulling the lock release lever.



DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ When not in use

To avoid injury, return the table.

■ Caution while driving

Keep the table stowed properly in its place. In the event of an accident, contact with the table may result in death or serious injury.

■ When using the table

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Make sure the table is securely locked.
- Do not lean on the table.
- Do not put anything heavier than 22 lb. (10 kg) on the table.

⚠ NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the table

Do not place too much strain on the table.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

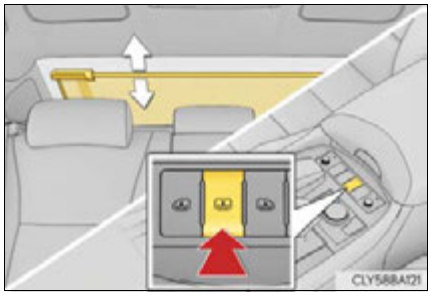
Rear sunshade

The rear sunshade can be raised and lowered by operating any of the buttons shown below.

■ From front seat

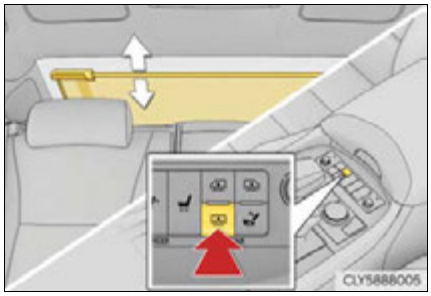
▶ 5-seat models

Extend/retract



▶ 4-seat models

Extend/retract

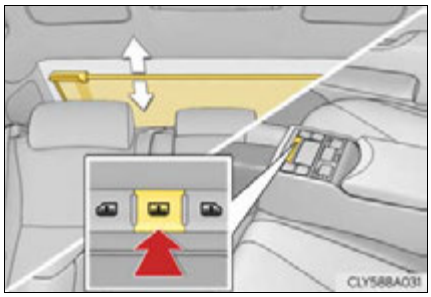


DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ From rear seat

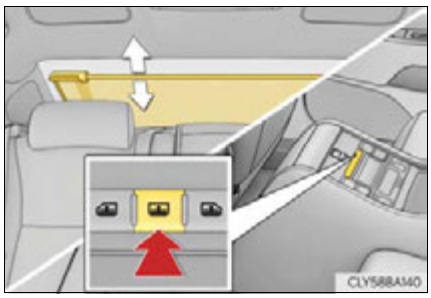
▶ 5-seat models

Extend/retract



▶ 4-seat models

Extend/retract



■ The rear sunshade can be used when

The power switch is in ON mode.

■ Operating the rear sunshade after turning the hybrid system off

The rear sunshade can be operated for approximately 60 seconds even after the power switch is switched to ACCESSORY mode or turned off.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Reverse operation feature**

To ensure adequate rear visibility, the rear sunshade automatically lowers when the shift lever is shifted to R.

However, the rear sunshade is raised again if any of the following occurs:

- The button is pressed again.
- The shift lever is shifted to P.
- The shift lever is shifted out of P and R, and the vehicle reaches a speed of 9 mph (15 km/h).

If the hybrid system is turned off when the rear sunshade has been lowered due to the reverse operation feature, it will not be raised even when the hybrid system is turned on again and the vehicle reaches a speed of 9 mph (15 km/h). To raise the sunshade again, press the button.

■ **Button lock function**

To prevent inadvertent operation, some buttons on the rear controller can be locked. (→P. 361)

⚠ CAUTION

■ **When the rear sunshade is being raised or lowered**

Do not place fingers or other objects in the shade mechanism or in the opening as injury may result.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **To prevent the 12-volt battery from being discharged**

Do not operate the rear sunshade when the hybrid system is off.

■ **To ensure normal operation of the sunshade**

Observe the following precautions:

- Do not place excessive load on the motor or other components.
- Do not place objects where they may hinder opening and closing operations.
- Do not attach items to the rear sunshade.
- Keep the opening clean and clear of obstructions.
- Do not operate the rear sunshade continuously for long periods of time.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

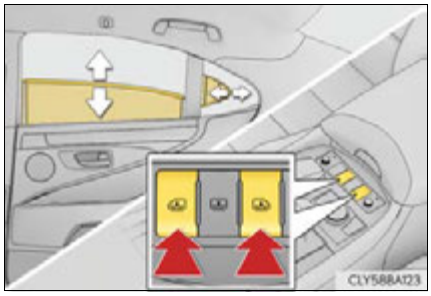
Rear door sunshades

The rear door sunshades can be extended and retracted by operating any of the buttons shown below.

■ From front seat

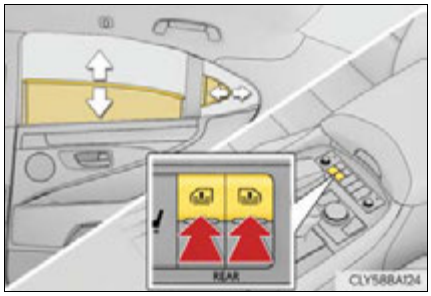
▶ 5-seat models

Extend/retract



▶ 4-seat models

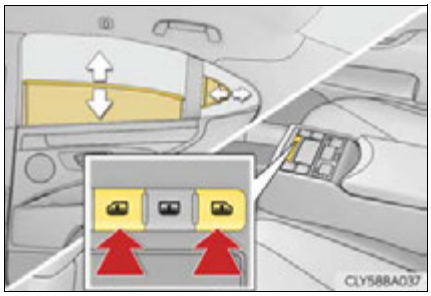
Extend/retract



■ From rear seat

▶ 5-seat models

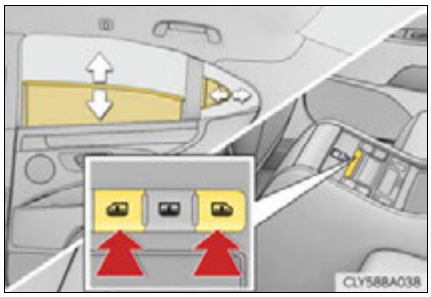
Extend/retract



DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

▶ 4-seat models

Extend/retract



■ **Operating conditions**

- The power switch is in ON mode.
- The rear windows are fully closed.
  The rear door sunshades automatically retract when the rear windows are opened.

■ **Operating the rear door sunshades after turning the hybrid system off**

The rear door sunshades can be operated for approximately 60 seconds even after the power switch is switched to ACCESSORY mode or turned off.

■ **Jam protection function**

If an object becomes caught between a rear door sunshade and the window frame, the jam protection function will cause the sunshade to detach from its drive mechanism and retract.

▶ If the jam protection function operates when extending the rear door sunshades

Pressing the button will reconnect the sunshade.
Pressing the button again will allow the sunshades to be operated.
If the sunshade does not operate after the button is pressed, press the button again.

▶ If the jam protection function operates when retracting the rear door sunshades

Press and hold the button to re-extend the rear door sunshades, and continue pressing for more than 5 seconds after the sunshades have fully extended and stopped.

■ **Button lock function**

To prevent inadvertent operation, some buttons on the rear controller can be locked. (→P. 361)

■ **When reconnecting the 12-volt battery**

The rear door sunshades will always be retracted the first time the button is pressed.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ When the rear door sunshades are being extended or retracted

Do not place fingers or other objects in the shade mechanism or in the opening as injury may result.

■ Jam protection function

Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.

⚠ NOTICE

■ To prevent the 12-volt battery from being discharged

Do not operate the rear door sunshades when the hybrid system is off.

■ To ensure normal operation of the sunshades

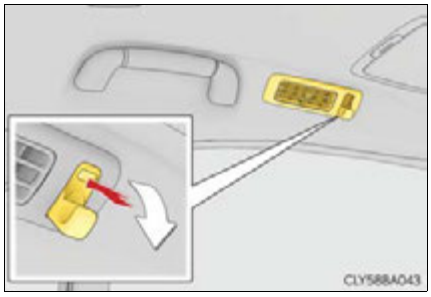
Observe the following precautions:

- Do not place excessive load on the motor or other components.
- Do not place objects where they may hinder opening and closing operations.
- Do not attach items to the rear door sunshades.
- Keep the opening clean and clear of obstructions.
- Do not operate the rear door sunshades continuously for long periods of time.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Coat hooks

To use the coat hook, push it on.



CAUTION

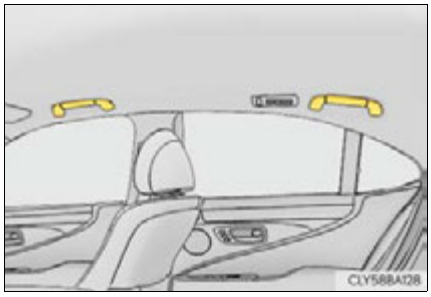
■ Items that must not be hung on the hook

Do not hang a coat hanger or other hard or sharp object on the hook. If the SRS curtain shield airbags deploy, these items may become projectiles that cause death or serious injury.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Assist grips

An assist grip installed on the ceiling can be used to support your body while sitting on the seat.



⚠ CAUTION

■ Assist grip

Do not use the assist grip when getting in or out of the vehicle or rising from your seat.

Doing so could damage the assist grip, or could cause you to injure yourself by falling over.

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the assist grip

Do not hang any heavy object or put a heavy load on the assist grip.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Garage door opener

The garage door opener can be programmed to operate garage doors, gates, entry doors, door locks, home lighting systems, security systems, and other devices.

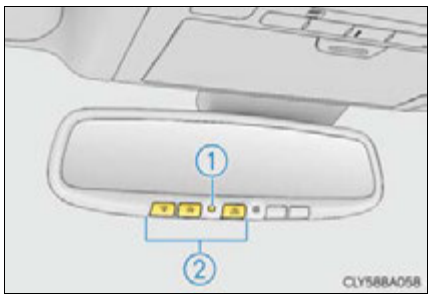
The garage door opener (HomeLink® Universal Transceiver) is manufactured under license from HomeLink®.

Programming the HomeLink®

The HomeLink® compatible transceiver in your vehicle has 3 buttons which can be programmed to operate 3 different devices. Refer to the programming method below appropriate for the device.

① Indicator

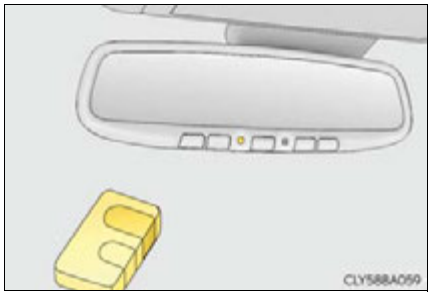
② Buttons



■ Programming the HomeLink® (for U.S.A. owners)

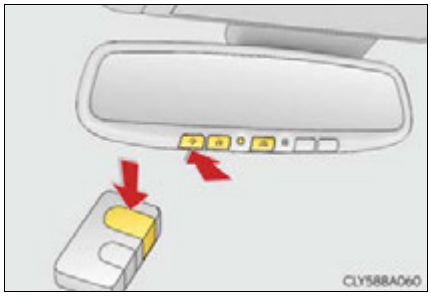
1 Point the remote control transmitter for the device 1 to 3 in. (25 to 75 mm) from the HomeLink® control buttons.

Keep the HomeLink® indicator light in view while programming.



DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

2 Press and hold one of the HomeLink® buttons and the transmitter button. When the HomeLink® indicator light changes from a slow to a rapid flash, you can release both buttons.

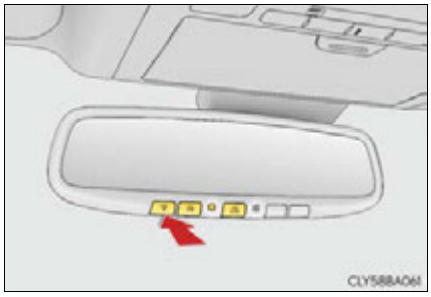


If the HomeLink® indicator light comes on but does not flash, the HomeLink® button is already programmed. Use the other buttons or follow the "Reprogramming a HomeLink® button" instructions. (→P. 411)

The remote control transmitter is of the rolling code type if the HomeLink® indicator light flashes rapidly for 2 seconds and then remains lit. If your transmitter is of the rolling code type, proceed to the heading "Programming a rolling code system".

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

3 Test the HomeLink® operation by pressing the newly programmed button.



If a HomeLink® button has been programmed for a garage door, check to see if the garage door opens and closes. If the garage door does not operate, see if your remote control transmitter is of the rolling code type. Press and hold the programmed HomeLink® button. The remote control transmitter is of the rolling code type if the HomeLink® indicator light flashes rapidly for 2 seconds and then remains lit. If your transmitter is of the rolling code type, proceed to the heading "Programming a rolling code system".

4 Repeat the steps above to program another device for each of the remaining HomeLink® buttons.

■ **Programming a Rolling Code system (for U.S.A. owners)**

If your device is Rolling Code equipped, follow the steps under the heading "Programming the HomeLink®" before proceeding with the steps listed below.

1 Locate the learn button on the ceiling mounted garage door opener motor. The exact location and color of the button may vary by brand of garage door opener motor.

Refer to the operation manual supplied with the garage door opener for the location of the learn button.

2 Press the learn button.

Following this step, you have 30 seconds in which to initiate step 3 below.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

3 Press and hold the vehicle's programmed HomeLink® button for 2 seconds and release it. Repeat this step once again. The garage door may open.

If the garage door opens, the programming process is complete. If the door does not open, press and release the button a third time. This third press and release will complete the programming process by opening the garage door.

The ceiling mounted garage door opener motor should now recognize the HomeLink® signal and operate the garage door.

4 Repeat the steps above to program another rolling code system for any of the remaining HomeLink® buttons.

■ **Programming an entry gate (for U.S.A. owners)/Programming all devices in the Canadian market**

1 Place your transmitter 1 to 3 in. (25 to 75 mm) away from the surface of the HomeLink®.

Keep the HomeLink® indicator light in view while programming.

2 Press and hold the selected HomeLink® button.

3 Repeatedly press and release (cycle) the device's remote control button for two seconds each until step 4 is completed.

4 When the indicator light on the HomeLink® compatible transceiver starts to flash rapidly, release the buttons.

5 Test the operation of the HomeLink® by pressing the newly programmed button. Check to see if the gate/device operates correctly.

6 Repeat the steps above to program another device for each of the remaining HomeLink® buttons.

■ **Programming other devices**

To program other devices such as home security systems, home door locks or lighting, contact your Lexus dealer for assistance.

■ **Reprogramming a button**

The individual HomeLink® buttons cannot be erased but can be reprogrammed. To reprogram a button, follow the "Reprogramming a HomeLink® button" instructions.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Operating HomeLink®

Press the appropriate HomeLink® button. The HomeLink® indicator light should turn on.

The HomeLink® compatible transceiver in your vehicle continues to send a signal for up to 20 seconds as long as the button is pressed.

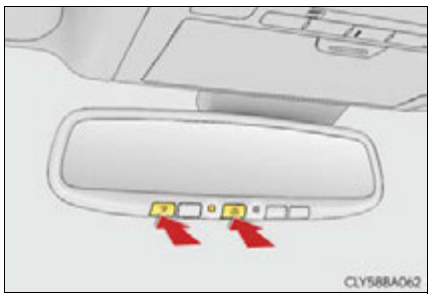
Reprogramming a HomeLink® button

Press and hold the desired HomeLink® button. After 20 seconds, the HomeLink® indicator light will start flashing slowly. Next, while still pressing and holding the HomeLink® button, press and hold the button on the transmitter until the HomeLink® indicator light changes from a slow to a rapid flash.

Erasing the entire HomeLink® memory (all three programs)

Press and hold the 2 outside buttons for 10 seconds until the indicator light flashes.

If you sell your vehicle, be sure to erase the programs stored in the HomeLink® memory.



DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Before programming**

- Install a new battery in the remote control transmitter.
- The battery side of the remote control transmitter must be pointed away from the HomeLink® button.

■ **Certification for the garage door opener**

▶ For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.

FCC ID: NZLOBIHL4

FCC ID: NZLWZLHL4

FCC ID: NZLHSLMHL4

NOTE:
This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING:
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

▶ For vehicles sold in Canada

NOTE:
This device complies with Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

REMARQUE:
Le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Industrie Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes : (1) l'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage, et (2) l'utilisateur de l'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

■ **When support is necessary**

Visit on the web at www.homelink.com or call 1-800-355-3515.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION

■ When programming a garage door or other remote control device

The garage door on other device may operate, so ensure people and objects are out of danger to prevent potential harm.

■ Conforming to federal safety standards

Do not use the HomeLink® compatible transceiver with any garage door opener or device that lacks safety stop and reverse features as required by federal safety standards.
This includes any garage door that cannot detect an obstruction object. A door or device without these features increases the risk of death or serious injury.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

LEXUS Enform Safety Connect*

Safety Connect is a subscription-based telematics service that uses Global Positioning System (GPS) data and embedded cellular technology to provide safety and security features to subscribers. Safety Connect is supported by Lexus' designated response center, which operates 24 hours per day, 7 days per week.

Safety Connect service is available by subscription on select, telematics hardware-equipped vehicles.

By using the Safety Connect service, you are agreeing to be bound by the Telematics Subscription Service Agreement and its Terms and Conditions, as in effect and amended from time to time, a current copy of which is available at Lexus.com. All use of the Safety Connect service is subject to such then-applicable Terms and Conditions.

■ System components

① Microphone
② "SOS" button
③ LED light indicators

*: If equipped

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Services**

Subscribers have the following Safety Connect services available:

- Automatic Collision Notification*
  Helps drivers receive necessary response from emergency service providers. (→P. 417)

  *: U.S. Patent No. 7,508,298 B2
- Stolen Vehicle Location
  Helps drivers in the event of vehicle theft. (→P. 418)
- Emergency Assistance Button (SOS)
  Connects drivers to response-center support. (→P. 418)
- Enhanced Roadside Assistance
  Provides drivers various on-road assistance. (→P. 418)

■ **Subscription**

After you have signed the Telematics Subscription Service Agreement and are enrolled, you can begin receiving services.

A variety of subscription terms is available for purchase. Contact your Lexus dealer, call 1-800-25-LEXUS (1-800-255-3987) or push the "SOS" button in your vehicle for further subscription details.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Safety Connect Services Information**

- Phone calls using the vehicles Bluetooth® technology will not be possible during Safety Connect.
- Safety Connect is available beginning Fall 2009 on select Lexus models. Contact with the Safety Connect response center is dependent upon the telematics device being in operative condition, cellular connection availability, and GPS satellite signal reception, which can limit the ability to reach the response center or receive emergency service support. Enrollment and Telematics Subscription Service Agreement required. A variety of subscription terms is available; charges vary by subscription term selected.
- Automatic Collision Notification, Emergency Assistance and Stolen Vehicle Location will function in the United States, including Hawaii and Alaska, and in Canada, and Enhanced Roadside Assistance will function in the United States (except Hawaii) and in Canada. No Safety Connect services will function outside of the United States in countries other than Canada.
- Safety Connect services are not subject to section 255 of the Telecommunications Act and the device is not TTY compatible.

■ **Languages**

The Safety Connect response center will offer support in multiple languages. The Safety Connect system will offer voice prompts in English and Spanish. Please indicate your language of choice when enrolling.

■ **When contacting the response center**

You may be unable to contact the response center if the network is busy.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Safety Connect LED light Indicators

When the power switch is turned to ON mode, the red indicator light comes on for 2 seconds then turns off. Afterward, the green indicator light comes on, indicating that the service is active.
The following indicator light patterns indicate specific system usage conditions:

- Green indicator light on = Active service
- Green indicator light flashing = Safety Connect call in process
- Red indicator light (except at vehicle start-up) = System malfunction (contact your Lexus dealer)
- No indicator light (off) = Safety Connect service not active

Safety Connect services

Automatic Collision Notification

In case of either airbag deployment or severe rear-end collision, the system is designed to automatically call the response center. The responding agent receives the vehicle's location and attempts to speak with the vehicle occupants to assess the level of emergency. If the occupants are unable to communicate, the agent automatically treats the call as an emergency, contacts the nearest emergency services provider to describe the situation, and requests that assistance be sent to the location.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Stolen Vehicle Location

If your vehicle is stolen, Safety Connect can work with local authorities to assist them in locating and recovering the vehicle. After filing a police report, call the Safety Connect response center at 1-800-25-LEXUS (1-800-255-3987) and follow the prompts for Safety Connect to initiate this service.

In addition to assisting law enforcement with recovery of a stolen vehicle, Safety-Connect-equipped vehicle location data may, under certain circumstances, be shared with third parties to locate your vehicle. Further information is available at Lexus.com.

■ Emergency Assistance Button ("SOS")

In the event of an emergency on the road, push the "SOS" button to reach the Safety Connect response center. The answering agent will determine your vehicle's location, assess the emergency, and dispatch the necessary assistance required.

If you accidentally press the "SOS" button, tell the response-center agent that you are not experiencing an emergency.

■ Enhanced Roadside Assistance

Enhanced Roadside Assistance adds GPS data to the already included warranty-based Lexus roadside service.

Subscribers can press the "SOS" button to reach a Safety Connect response-center agent, who can help with a wide range of needs, such as: towing, flat tire, fuel delivery, etc. For a description of the Enhanced Roadside Assistance services and their limitations, please see the Safety Connect Terms and Conditions, which are available at Lexus.com.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Safety information for Safety Connect

Important! Read this information before using Safety Connect.

Exposure to radio frequency signals

The Safety Connect system installed in your vehicle is a low-power radio transmitter and receiver. It receives and also sends out radio frequency (RF) signals.

In August 1996, the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) adopted RF exposure guidelines with safety levels for mobile wireless phones. Those guidelines are consistent with the safety standards previously set by the following U.S. and international standards bodies.

- ANSI (American National Standards Institute) C95.1 [1992]
- NCRP (National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurement) Report 86 [1986]
- ICNIRP (International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection) [1996]

Those standards were based on comprehensive and periodic evaluations of the relevant scientific literature. Over 120 scientists, engineers, and physicians from universities, and government health agencies and industries reviewed the available body of research to develop the ANSI Standard (C95.1).

The design of Safety Connect complies with the FCC guidelines in addition to those standards.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Certification for Lexus Enform

FCC ID: O6Y-CDMRF101

FCC ID: XOECDMRF101B

FCC ID: N7NGTM2

NOTE:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

6-1. Maintenance and care

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior 422

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior 426

6-2. Maintenance

Maintenance requirements 429

General maintenance 432

Emission inspection and maintenance (I/M) programs 436

6-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Do-it-yourself service precautions 437

Hood 440

Positioning a floor jack 441

Engine compartment 443

12-volt battery 455

Tires 459

Tire inflation pressure 470

Wheels 473

Air conditioning filter 475

Electronic key battery 478

Checking and replacing fuses 480

Headlight aim 485

Light bulbs 487

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior

Perform the following to protect the vehicle and maintain it in prime condition:

- Working from top to bottom, liberally apply water to the vehicle body, wheel wells and underside of the vehicle to remove any dirt and dust.
- Wash the vehicle body using a sponge or soft cloth, such as a chamois.
- For hard-to-remove marks, use car wash soap and rinse thoroughly with water.
- Wipe away any water.
- Wax the vehicle when the waterproof coating deteriorates.

  If water does not bead on a clean surface, apply wax when the vehicle body is cool.

Self-restoring coat

The vehicle body has a self-restoring coating that is resistant to small surface scratches caused in a car wash etc.

- The coating lasts for 5 to 8 years from when the vehicle is delivered from the plant.
- The restoration time differs depending on the depth of the scratch and outside temperature.
  The restoration time may become shorter when the coating is warmed by applying warm water.
- Deep scratches caused by keys, coins, etc. cannot be restored.
- Do not use wax that contain abrasives.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Automatic car washes**

- Fold the mirrors before washing the vehicle. Start washing from the front of the vehicle. Make sure to extend the mirrors before driving.
- Brushes used in automatic car washes may scratch the vehicle surface and harm your vehicle's paint.

■ **High pressure car washes**

- Do not allow the nozzles of the car wash to come within close proximity of the windows and the air suspension unit.
- Before using the car wash, check that the fuel filler door on your vehicle is closed properly.

■ **Aluminum wheels**

- Remove any dirt immediately by using a neutral detergent. Do not use hard brushes or abrasive cleaners. Do not use strong or harsh chemical cleaners.
  Use the same mild detergent and wax as used on the paint.
- Do not use detergent on the wheels when they are hot, for example after driving for long distance in the hot weather.
- Wash detergent from the wheels immediately after use.

■ **Bumpers and side moldings**

Do not scrub with abrasive cleaners.

■ **Front side windows water-repellent coating**

- The following precautions can extend the effectiveness of the water-repellent coating.
  - Remove any dirt, etc. from the front side windows regularly.
  - Do not allow dirt and dust to accumulate on the windows for a long period. Clean the windows with a soft, damp cloth as soon as possible.
  - Do not use wax or glass cleaners that contain abrasives when cleaning the windows.
  - Do not use any metallic objects to remove condensation build up.
- When the water-repellent performance has become insufficient, the coating can be repaired. Contact your Lexus dealer.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

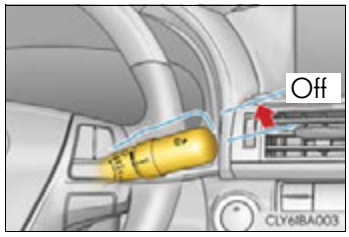
⚠ CAUTION

■ When washing the vehicle

Do not apply water to the inside of the engine compartment. Doing so may cause the electrical components etc. to catch fire.

■ When cleaning the windshield

Set the wiper switch to off.
If the wiper switch is in "AUTO", the wipers may operate unexpectedly in the following situations, and may result in hands being caught or other serious injuries and cause damage to the wiper blades.



- When the upper part of the windshield where the raindrop sensor is located is touched by hand
- When a wet rag or similar is held close to the raindrop sensor
- If something bumps against the windshield
- If you directly touch the raindrop sensor body or if something bumps into the raindrop sensor

■ Precautions regarding the exhaust pipes and rear bumper diffusers

Exhaust gases cause the exhaust pipes and rear bumper diffusers to become quite hot.

When washing the vehicle, be careful not to touch the pipes and diffusers until they have cooled sufficiently, as touching hot exhaust pipes and rear bumper diffusers can cause burns.

■ Precaution regarding the rear bumper with Blind Spot Monitor (if equipped)

If the paint of the rear bumper is chipped or scratched, the system may malfunction. If this occurs, consult your Lexus dealer.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

■ To prevent paint deterioration and corrosion on the body and components (aluminum wheels etc.)

● Wash the vehicle immediately in the following cases:

- After driving near the sea coast
- After driving on salted roads
- If coal tar or tree sap is present on the paint surface
- If dead insects, insect droppings or bird droppings are present on the paint surface
- After driving in an area contaminated with soot, oily smoke, mine dust, iron powder or chemical substances
- If the vehicle becomes heavily soiled with dust or mud
- If liquids such as benzene and gasoline are spilled on the paint surface

● If the paint is chipped or scratched, have it repaired immediately.

● To prevent the wheels from corroding, remove any dirt and store in a place with low humidity when storing the wheels.

■ Cleaning the exterior lights

● Wash carefully. Do not use organic substances or scrub with a hard brush. This may damage the surfaces of the lights.

● Do not apply wax to the surfaces of the lights. Wax may cause damage to the lenses.

■ When using an automatic car wash

Set the wiper switch to the off position.
If the wiper switch is in "AUTO", the wipers may operate and the wiper blades may be damaged.

■ When using a high pressure car wash

● When washing the vehicle, do not spray the camera or its surrounding area directly with a high pressure washer. Shock applied from high pressure water may cause the device to not operate normally.

● Do not bring the nozzle tip close to boots (rubber or resin manufactured cover), connectors or the following parts. The parts may be damaged if they come into contact with high-pressure water.

- Traction related parts
- Steering parts
- Suspension parts
- Brake parts

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior

The following procedures will help protect your vehicle's interior and keep it in top condition:

Protecting the vehicle interior

Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner. Wipe dirty surfaces with a cloth dampened with lukewarm water.

Cleaning the leather areas

- Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner.
- Wipe off any excess dirt and dust with a soft cloth dampened with diluted detergent.

  Use a diluted water solution of approximately 5% neutral wool detergent.
- Wring out any excess water from the cloth and thoroughly wipe off all remaining traces of detergent.
- Wipe the surface with a dry, soft cloth to remove any remaining moisture. Allow the leather to dry in a shaded and ventilated area.

Cleaning the synthetic leather areas

- Remove loose dirt using a vacuum cleaner.
- Apply a mild soap solution to the synthetic leather using a sponge or soft cloth.
- Allow the solution to soak in for a few minutes. Remove the dirt and wipe off the solution with a clean, damp cloth.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Caring for leather areas

Lexus recommends cleaning the interior of the vehicle at least twice a year to maintain the quality of the vehicle's interior.

Shampooing the carpets

There are several commercial foaming-type cleaners available. Use a sponge or brush to apply the foam. Rub in overlapping circles. Do not use water. Wipe dirty surfaces and let them dry. Excellent results are obtained by keeping the carpet as dry as possible.

Seat belts

Clean with mild soap and lukewarm water using a cloth or sponge. Also check the belts periodically for excessive wear, fraying or cuts.

⚠ CAUTION

Water in the vehicle

- Do not splash or spill liquid in the vehicle, such as on the floor, in the hybrid battery (traction battery) air vents, and in the trunk.
  Doing so may cause the hybrid battery, electrical components, etc. to malfunction or catch fire.
- Do not get any of the SRS components or wiring in the vehicle interior wet. (→P. 44)
  An electrical malfunction may cause the airbags to deploy or not function properly, resulting in death or serious injury.

Cleaning the interior (especially instrument panel)

Do not use polish wax or polish cleaner. The instrument panel may reflect off the windshield, obstructing the driver's view and leading to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

Cleaning the leather areas of the instrument panel

Do not use any protective agents (coatings etc). Doing so may cause the instrument panel to reflect onto the windshield, obstructing the front view and possibly causing an accident.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

■ Cleaning detergents

- Do not use the following types of detergent, as they may discolor the vehicle interior or cause streaks or damage to painted surfaces:
  - Non-seat portions: Organic substances such as benzene or gasoline, alkaline or acidic solutions, dye, and bleach
  - Seats: Alkaline or acidic solutions, such as thinner, benzene, and alcohol
- Do not use polish wax or polish cleaner. The instrument panel's or other interior part's painted surface may be damaged.

■ Preventing damage to leather surfaces

Observe the following precautions to avoid damage to and deterioration of leather surfaces:

- Remove any dust or dirt from leather surfaces immediately.
- Do not expose the vehicle to direct sunlight for extended periods of time. Park the vehicle in the shade, especially during summer.
- Do not place items made of vinyl, plastic, or containing wax on the upholstery, as they may stick to the leather surface if the vehicle interior heats up significantly.

■ Water on the floor

Do not wash the vehicle floor with water.
Vehicle systems such as the audio system may be damaged if water comes into contact with electrical components such as the audio system above or under the floor of the vehicle. Water may also cause the body to rust.

■ When cleaning the inside of the windshield (vehicles with LKA [Lane-Keeping Assist])

Be careful not to touch the camera sensor (→P. 275).
If the camera is accidentally scratched or hit, LKA may not operate properly or may cause a malfunction.

■ Cleaning the inside of the rear window

- Do not use glass cleaner to clean the rear window, as this may cause damage to the rear window defogger heater wires or antenna. Use a cloth dampened with lukewarm water to gently wipe the window clean. Wipe the window in strokes running parallel to the heater wires or antenna.
- Be careful not to scratch or damage the heater wires or antenna.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Maintenance requirements

To ensure safe and economical driving, day-to-day care and regular maintenance are essential. It is the owner's responsibility to perform regular checks. Lexus recommends the following maintenance:

General maintenance

General maintenance should be performed on a daily basis. This can be done by yourself or by a Lexus dealer.

Scheduled maintenance

Scheduled maintenance should be performed at specified intervals according to the maintenance schedule.

For details about maintenance items and schedules, refer to the "Warranty and Service Guide", "Owner's Manual Supplement" or "Scheduled Maintenance".

Do-it-yourself maintenance

You can perform some maintenance procedures by yourself.
Please be aware that do-it-yourself maintenance may affect warranty coverage.

The use of Lexus repair manuals is recommended.

For details about warranty coverage, refer to the separate "Owner's Guide", "Warranty and Service Guide", "Owner's Manual Supplement" or "Warranty Booklet".

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Repair and replacement**

It is recommended that genuine Lexus parts be used for repairs to ensure performance of each system. If non-Lexus parts are used in replacement or if a repair shop other than a Lexus dealer performs repairs, confirm the warranty coverage.

■ **Resetting the message indicating maintenance is required (U.S.A. only)**

After the required maintenance is performed according to the maintenance schedule, please reset the message.
To reset the message, follow the procedure described below:

1 Switch the display to the trip meter "A" (→P. 101) when the hybrid system is operating.

2 Turn the power switch off.

3 While pressing the trip meter reset switch (→P. 101), turn the power switch to the ON mode (do not start the hybrid system because otherwise the reset mode will be canceled).

The message shown in the illustration will appear on the display.

Continue to press and hold the button until the trip meter displays "COMPLETE".

■ **Allow inspection and repairs to be performed by a Lexus dealer**

- Lexus technicians are well-trained specialists and are kept up to date with the latest service information. They are well informed about the operations of all systems on your vehicle.
- Keep a copy of the repair order. It proves that the maintenance that has been performed is under warranty coverage. If any problem should arise while your vehicle is under warranty, your Lexus dealer will promptly take care of it.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ If your vehicle is not properly maintained

Improper maintenance could result in serious damage to the vehicle and possible death or serious injury.

■ Handling of the 12-volt battery

- Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and a wide variety of automobile components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and other reproductive harm. Work in a well ventilated area.
- Oils, fuels and fluids contained in vehicles as well as waste produced by component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Avoid exposure and wash any affected area immediately.
- 12-volt battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds which are known to cause brain damage. Wash your hands after handling. (→P. 455)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

General maintenance

Listed below are the general maintenance items that should be performed at the intervals specified in the "Warranty and Service Guide" or "Owner's Manual Supplement". It is recommended that any problem you notice should be brought to the attention of your Lexus dealer or qualified service shop for advice.

Engine compartment

Items	Check points
Brake fluid	Is the brake fluid at the correct level? (→P. 453)
Engine/power control unit coolant	Is the engine/power control unit coolant at the correct level? (→P. 450)
Engine oil	Is the engine oil at the correct level? (→P. 446)
Exhaust system	There should not be any fumes or strange sounds.
Radiator/condenser	The radiator and condenser should be free from foreign objects. (→P. 452)
Washer fluid	Is there sufficient washer fluid? (→P. 454)

Luggage compartment

Items	Check points
12-volt battery	Check the connections. (→P. 455)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Vehicle interior

Items	Check points
Accelerator pedal	• The accelerator pedal should move smoothly (without uneven pedal effort or catching).
Hybrid transmission "Park" mechanism	• When parked on a slope and the shift lever is in P, is the vehicle securely stopped?
Brake pedal	• Does the brake pedal move smoothly? • Does the brake pedal have appropriate clearance from the floor? (→P. 553) • Does the brake pedal have the correct amount of free play? (→P. 553)
Brakes	• The vehicle should not pull to one side when the brakes are applied. • The brakes should work effectively. • The brake pedal should not feel spongy. • The brake pedal should not get too close to the floor when the brakes are applied.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Items	Check points
Head restraints	• Do the head restraints move smoothly and lock securely?
Indicators/buzzers	• Do the indicators and buzzers function properly?
Lights	• Do all the lights come on? • Are the headlights aimed correctly? (→P. 485)
Parking brake	• Moves smoothly? • When parked on a slope and the parking brake is on, is the vehicle securely stopped?
Seat belts	• Do the seat belts operate smoothly? • The seat belts should not be damaged.
Seats	• Do the seat controls operate properly?
Steering wheel	• Does the steering wheel rotate smoothly? • Does the steering wheel have the correct amount of free play? • There should not be any strange sounds coming from the steering wheel.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Vehicle exterior

Items	Check points
Doors/trunk	• Do the doors/trunk operate smoothly?
Engine hood	• Does the engine hood lock system work properly?
Fluid leaks	• There should not be any signs of fluid leakage after the vehicle has been parked.
Tires	• Is the tire inflation pressure correct? • The tires should not be damaged or excessively worn. • Have the tires been rotated according to the maintenance schedule? • The wheel nuts should not be loose.
Windshield wipers	• The wiper blades should not show any signs of cracking, splitting, wear, contamination or deformation. • The wiper blades should clear the windshield without streaking or skipping.

⚠ CAUTION

■ If the hybrid system is operating

Turn the hybrid system off and ensure that there is adequate ventilation before performing maintenance checks.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Emission inspection and maintenance (I/M) programs

Some states have vehicle emission inspection programs which include OBD (On Board Diagnostics) checks. The OBD system monitors the operation of the emission control system.

If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on

The OBD system determines that a problem exists somewhere in the emission control system. Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test and may need to be repaired. Contact your Lexus dealer to service the vehicle.

Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test in the following situations:

- When the 12-volt battery is disconnected or discharged

  Readiness codes that are set during ordinary driving are erased. Also, depending on your driving habits, the readiness codes may not be completely set.

- When the fuel tank cap is loose

  The malfunction indicator lamp comes on indicating a temporary malfunction and your vehicle may not pass the I/M test.

When the malfunction indicator lamp still remains on after several driving trips

The error code in the OBD system will not be cleared unless the vehicle is driven 40 or more times.

If your vehicle does not pass the I/M test

Contact your Lexus dealer to prepare the vehicle for re-testing.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Do-it-yourself service precautions

If you perform maintenance by yourself, be sure to follow the correct procedure as given in these sections.

Items	Parts and tools
12-volt battery condition (→P. 455)	• Grease • Conventional wrench (for terminal clamp bolts)
Brake fluid level (→P. 453)	• FMVSS No.116 DOT 3 or SAE J1703 brake fluid • Rag or paper towel • Funnel (used only for adding brake fluid)
Engine/power control unit coolant level (→P. 450)	• "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" or a similar high quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology For the U.S.A.: "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is pre-mixed with 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. For Canada: "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is pre-mixed with 55% coolant and 45% deionized water. • Funnel (used only for adding coolant)
Engine oil level (→P. 446)	• "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent • Rag or paper towel • Funnel (used only for adding engine oil)
Fuses (→P. 480)	• Fuse with same amperage rating as original
Headlight aim (→P. 485)	• Phillips-head screwdriver

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Items	Parts and tools
Radiator and condenser (→P. 452)	—
Tire inflation pressure (→P. 470)	• Tire pressure gauge • Compressed air source
Washer fluid (→P. 454)	• Water or washer fluid containing anti-freeze (for winter use) • Funnel (used only for adding water or washer fluid)

⚠ CAUTION

The engine compartment contains many mechanisms and fluids that may move suddenly, become hot, or become electrically energized. To avoid death or serious injury, observe the following precautions.

■ When working on the engine compartment

- Make sure that the indicator on the power switch and the "READY" indicator are both off.
- Keep hands, clothing and tools away from the moving fan and engine drive belt.
- Be careful not to touch the engine, power control unit, radiator, exhaust manifold, etc. right after driving as they may be hot. Oil and other fluids may also be hot.
- Do not leave anything that may burn easily, such as paper and rags, in the engine compartment.
- Do not smoke, cause sparks or expose an open flame to fuel. Fuel fumes are flammable.

■ When working near the electric cooling fans or radiator grille

Be sure the power switch is off.
With the power switch in ON mode, the electric cooling fans may automatically start to run if the air conditioning is on and/or the coolant temperature is high. (→P. 452)

■ Safety glasses

Wear safety glasses to prevent flying or falling material, fluid spray, etc. from getting in your eyes.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

■ **If you remove the air cleaner filter**

Driving with the air cleaner filter removed may cause excessive engine wear due to dirt in the air.

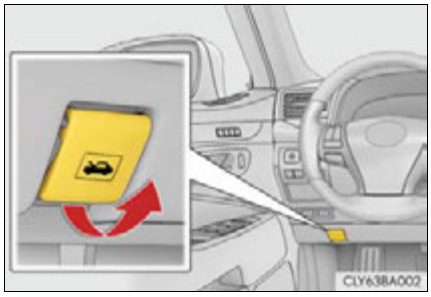
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Hood

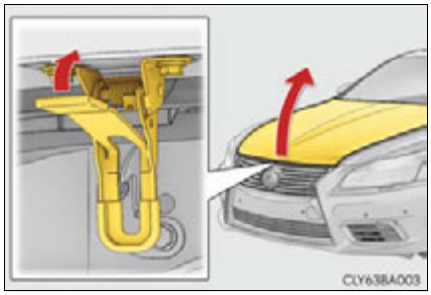
Release the lock from the inside of the vehicle to open the hood.

1 Pull the hood lock release lever.

The hood will pop up slightly.



2 Pull up the auxiliary catch lever and lift the hood.



⚠ CAUTION

■ Pre-driving check

Check that the hood is fully closed and locked.
If the hood is not locked properly, it may open while the vehicle is in motion and cause an accident, which may result in death or serious injury.

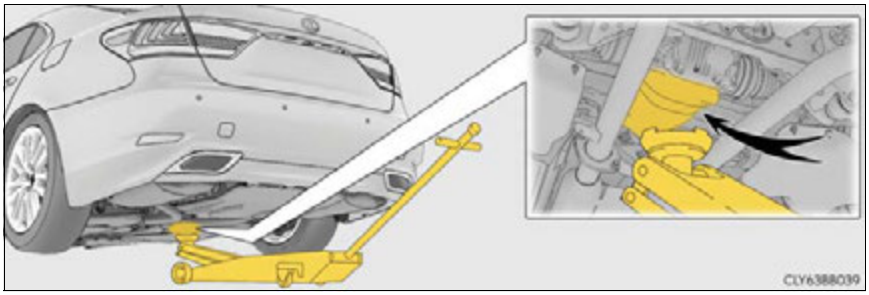
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Positioning a floor jack

When raising your vehicle with a floor jack, position the jack correctly. Improper placement may damage your vehicle or cause injury.

Front

Rear



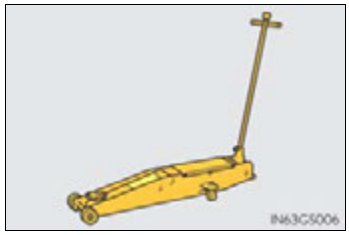
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ When raising your vehicle

Make sure to observe the following precautions to reduce the possibility of death or serious injury:

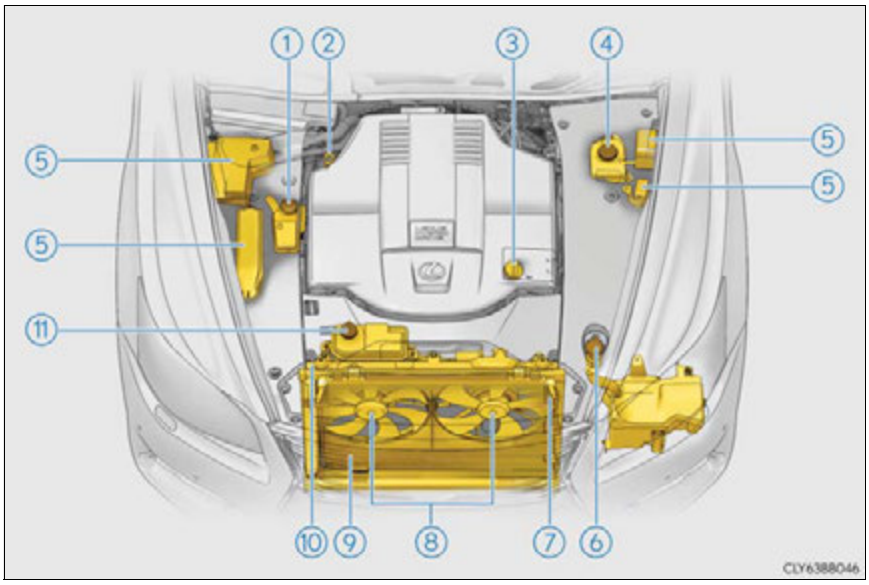
- Lift up the vehicle using a floor jack such as the one shown in the illustration.



- When using a floor jack, follow the instructions of the manual provided with the jack.
- Do not use the jack that was supplied with your vehicle.
- Do not put any part of your body underneath the vehicle when it is supported only by the floor jack.
- Always use floor jack and/or automotive jack stands on a solid, flat, level surface.
- Do not start the hybrid system while the vehicle is supported by the floor jack.
- Stop the vehicle on level, firm ground, firmly set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to P.
- Make sure to set the floor jack properly at the jack point.
  Raising the vehicle with an improperly positioned floor jack will damage the vehicle and may cause the vehicle to fall off the floor jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle while someone is in the vehicle.
- When raising the vehicle, do not place any object on top of or underneath the floor jack.
- Be sure to turn off the height control and stop the hybrid system. Otherwise, the vehicle height may change in the automatic leveling function. (→P. 287)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Engine compartment



1. Power control unit coolant reservoir (→P. 451)
2. Engine oil level dipstick (→P. 446)
3. Engine oil filler cap (→P. 447)
4. Brake fluid reservoir (→P. 453)
5. Fuse boxes (→P. 480)
6. Washer fluid tank (→P. 454)
7. Power control unit coolant radiator (→P. 452)
8. Electric cooling fans
9. Condenser (→P. 452)
10. Engine coolant radiator (→P. 452)
11. Engine coolant reservoir (→P. 450)

■ **12-volt battery**

→P. 455

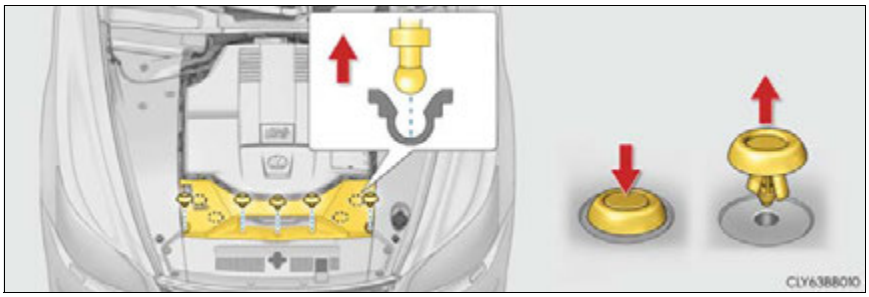
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Engine compartment cover

■ Removing the engine compartment cover

▶ Outside

▶ Front



DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

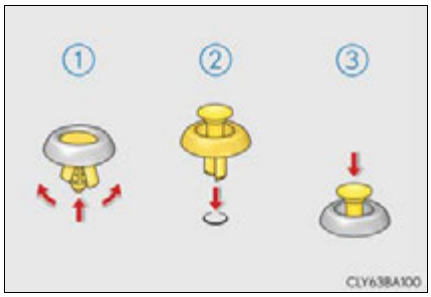
■ Installing the clips

▶ Type A

① Push up center portion

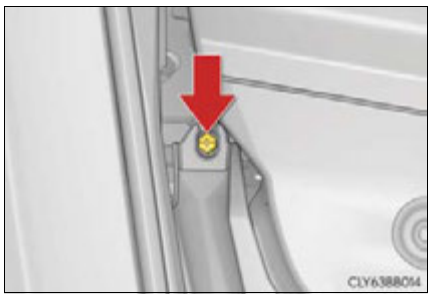
② Insert

③ Press



▶ Type B

Press



⚠ NOTICE

■ **Checking the engine compartment cover after installation**

Make sure that the cover is securely installed in its original position.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

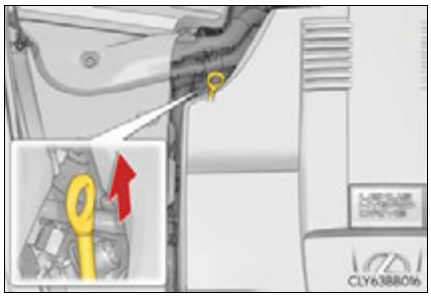
Engine oil

With the engine at operating temperature and turned off, check the oil level on the dipstick.

■ Checking the engine oil

1 Park the vehicle on level ground. After warming up the engine and turning off the hybrid system, wait more than 5 minutes for the oil to drain back into the bottom of the engine.

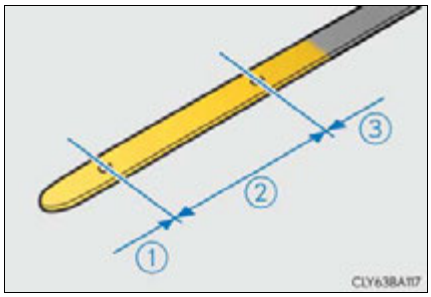
2 Holding a rag under the end, pull the dipstick out.



3 Wipe the dipstick clean.

4 Reinsert the dipstick fully.

5 Holding a rag under the end, pull the dipstick out and check the oil level.



① Low

② Normal

③ Excessive

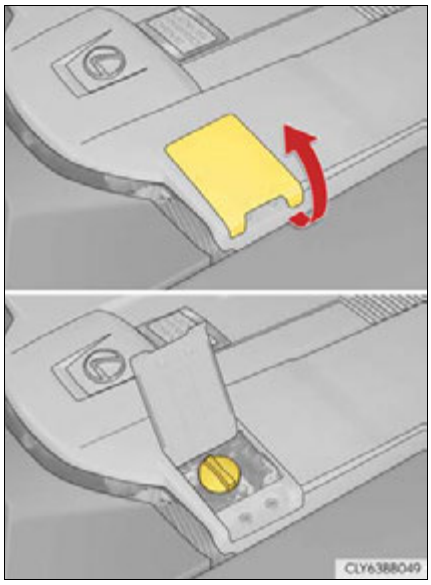
The shape of the dipstick may differ depending on the type of vehicle or engine.

6 Wipe the dipstick and reinsert it fully.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Adding engine oil

If the oil level is below or near the low level mark, add engine oil of the same type as that already in the engine.



Make sure to check the oil type and prepare the items needed before adding oil.

Engine oil selection	→P. 549
Oil quantity (Low → Full)	1.6 qt. (1.5 L, 1.3 Imp. qt.)
Items	Clean funnel

1 Remove the oil filler cap by turning it counterclockwise.

2 Add engine oil slowly, checking the dipstick.

3 Install the oil filler cap by turning it clockwise.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Engine oil consumption**

A certain amount of engine oil will be consumed while driving. In the following situations, oil consumption may increase, and engine oil may need to be refilled in between oil maintenance intervals.

- When the engine is new, for example directly after purchasing the vehicle or after replacing the engine
- If low quality oil or oil of an inappropriate viscosity is used
- When driving at high engine speeds or with a heavy load, or when driving while accelerating or decelerating frequently
- When leaving the engine idling for a long time, or when driving frequently through heavy traffic

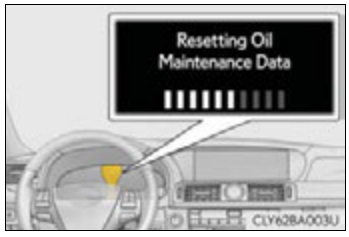
■ **After changing the engine oil**

The engine oil maintenance data should be reset. Perform the following procedures:

1. Switch the display to the trip meter "B" (→P. 101) when the hybrid system is operating.
2. Turn the power switch off.
3. While pressing the trip meter reset switch (→P. 101), turn the power switch to the ON mode (do not start the hybrid system because otherwise the reset mode will be canceled).

   The message shown in the illustration will appear on the display.

   Continue to press and hold the button until the trip meter displays "COMPLETE".



DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ **Used engine oil**

- Used engine oil contains potentially harmful contaminants which may cause skin disorders such as inflammation and skin cancer, so care should be taken to avoid prolonged and repeated contact. To remove used engine oil from your skin, wash thoroughly with soap and water.
- Dispose of used oil and filters only in a safe and acceptable manner. Do not dispose of used oil and filters in household trash, in sewers or onto the ground. Call your Lexus dealer, service station or auto parts store for information concerning recycling or disposal.
- Do not leave used engine oil within the reach of children.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **To prevent serious engine damage**

Check the oil level on a regular basis.

■ **When replacing the engine oil**

- Be careful not to spill engine oil on the vehicle components.
- Avoid overfilling, or the engine could be damaged.
- Check the oil level on the dipstick every time you refill the vehicle.
- Be sure the engine oil filler cap is properly tightened.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Coolant

■ Engine coolant reservoir

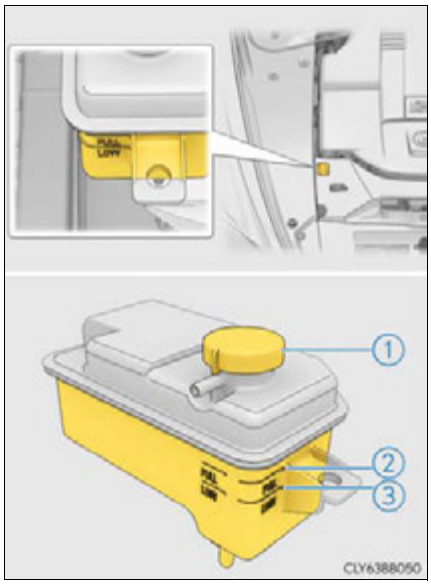
The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the “FULL” and “LOW” lines on the reservoir when the hybrid system is cold.

① Reservoir cap

② “FULL” line

③ “LOW” line

If the level is on or below the “LOW” line, add coolant up to the “FULL” line. (→P. 538)



DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Power control unit coolant reservoir**

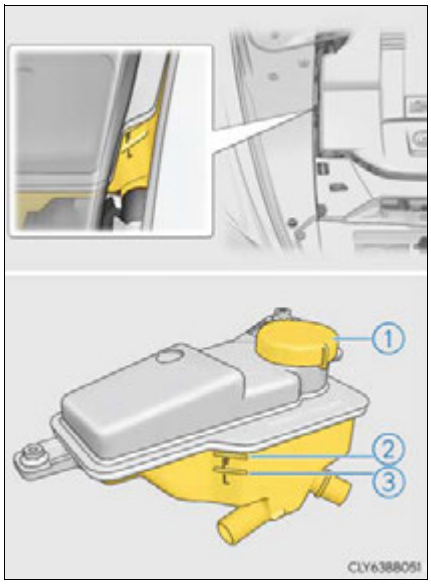
The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the "F" and "L" lines on the reservoir when the hybrid system is cold.

① Reservoir cap

② "F" line

③ "L" line

If the level is on or below the "L" line, add coolant up to the "F" line. (→P. 538)



■ **Coolant selection**

Only use "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" or a similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology.

U.S.A.:
"Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is a mixture of 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. (Minimum temperature: -31°F [-35°C])

Canada:
"Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is a mixture of 55% coolant and 45% deionized water. (Minimum temperature: -44°F [-42°C])

For more details about coolant, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **If the coolant level drops within a short time of replenishing**

Visually check the radiator, hoses, engine/power control unit coolant reservoir caps, drain cock and water pump.
If you cannot find a leak, have your Lexus dealer test the cap and check for leaks in the cooling system.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ **When the hybrid system is hot**

Do not remove the engine/power control unit coolant reservoir caps.(→P. 542)
The cooling system may be under pressure and may spray hot coolant if the cap is removed, causing serious injuries, such as burns.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **When adding coolant**

Coolant is neither plain water nor straight antifreeze. The correct mixture of water and antifreeze must be used to provide proper lubrication, corrosion protection and cooling. Be sure to read the antifreeze or coolant label.

■ **If you spill coolant**

Be sure to wash it off with water to prevent it from damaging parts or paint.

Radiator and condenser

Check the radiator and condenser and clear away any foreign objects.
If either of the above parts is extremely dirty or you are not sure of their condition, have your vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **When the hybrid system is hot**

Do not touch the radiator or condenser as they may be hot and cause serious injuries, such as burns.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Brake fluid

Checking fluid level

The brake fluid level should be between the "MAX" and "MIN" lines on the tank.

Adding fluid

Make sure to check the fluid type and prepare the necessary item.

Fluid type	FMVSS No.116 DOT 3 or SAE J1703 brake fluid
Items	Clean funnel

Brake fluid can absorb moisture from the air

Excess moisture in the brake fluid can cause a dangerous loss of braking efficiency. Use only newly opened brake fluid.

CAUTION

When filling the reservoir

Take care as brake fluid can harm your hands and eyes and damage painted surfaces.
If fluid gets on your hands or in your eyes, flush the affected area with clean water immediately.

If you still experience discomfort, see a doctor.

NOTICE

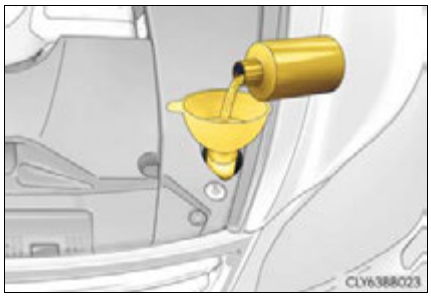
If the fluid level is low or high

It is normal for the brake fluid level to go down slightly as the brake pads wear out or when the fluid level in the accumulator is high.
If the reservoir needs frequent refilling, there may be a serious problem.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Washer fluid

If any washer does not work or the warning message appears on the multi-information display, the washer tank may be empty. Add washer fluid.



CAUTION

When adding washer fluid

Do not add washer fluid when the hybrid system is hot or operating as washer fluid contains alcohol and may catch fire if spilled on the engine etc.

NOTICE

Do not use any fluid other than washer fluid

Do not use soapy water or engine antifreeze instead of washer fluid.
Doing so may cause streaking on the vehicle's painted surfaces.

Diluting washer fluid

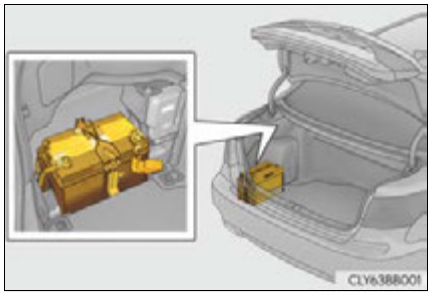
Dilute washer fluid with water as necessary.
Refer to the freezing temperatures listed on the label of the washer fluid bottle.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

12-volt battery

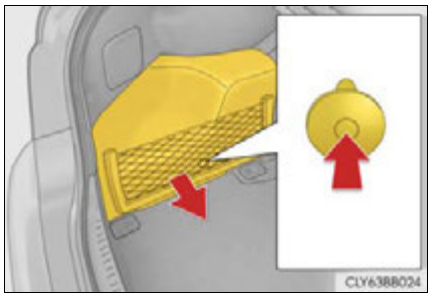
Location

The 12-volt battery is located on the left-hand side of trunk.



Removing the 12-volt battery cover

After removing the clip, remove the 12-volt battery cover.

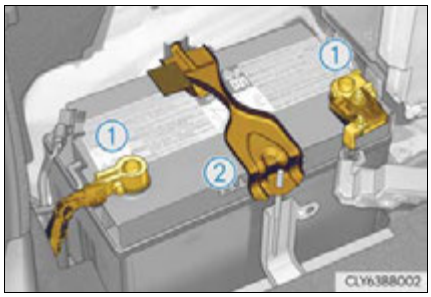


Exterior

Make sure that the 12-volt battery terminals are not corroded and that there are no loose connections, cracks, or loose clamps.

① Terminals

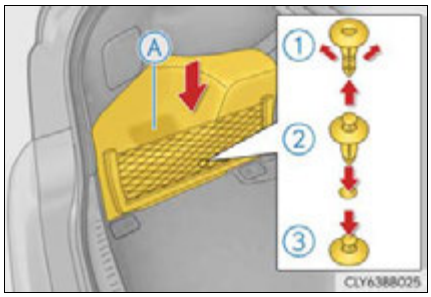
② Hold-down clamp



DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Installing the 12-volt battery cover

Install the 12-volt battery cover with the clip. Press down on the cover at position "A" to secure it.



① Push up center portion

② Insert

③ Press

Before recharging

When recharging, the 12-volt battery produces hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. Therefore, observe the following precautions before recharging:

- If recharging with the 12-volt battery installed on the vehicle, be sure to disconnect the ground cable.
- Make sure the power switch on the charger is off when connecting and disconnecting the charger cables to the 12-volt battery.

After recharging/reconnecting the 12-volt battery

The hybrid system may not start. Follow one or both of the following procedures:

- After opening and closing the driver's door, wait 10 seconds and then attempt to start the hybrid system. (If the system does not start the first time, repeat the procedure.)
- With the shift lever in P and the power switch off, open and close any door and then attempt to start the hybrid system.

If the system will not start even after multiple attempts at both methods, contact your Lexus dealer.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Chemicals in the 12-volt battery

The 12-volt battery contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid and may produce hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. To reduce the risk of death or serious injury, take the following precautions while working on or near the 12-volt battery:

- Do not cause sparks by touching the 12-volt battery terminals with tools.
- Do not smoke or light a match near the 12-volt battery.
- Avoid contact with eyes, skin and clothes.
- Never inhale or swallow electrolyte.
- Wear protective safety glasses when working near the 12-volt battery.
- Keep children away from the 12-volt battery.

■ Where to safely charge the 12-volt battery

Always charge the 12-volt battery in an open area. Do not charge the 12-volt battery in a garage or closed room where there is insufficient ventilation.

■ How to recharge the 12-volt battery

Only perform a slow charge (5 A or less). The 12-volt battery may explode if charged at a quicker rate.

■ Emergency measures regarding electrolyte

- If electrolyte gets in your eyes
  Flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention. If possible, continue to apply water with a sponge or cloth while traveling to the nearest medical facility.
- If electrolyte gets on your skin
  Wash the affected area thoroughly. If you feel pain or burning, get medical attention immediately.
- If electrolyte gets on your clothes
  It can soak through clothing on to your skin. Immediately take off the clothing and follow the procedure above if necessary.
- If you accidentally swallow electrolyte
  Drink a large quantity of water or milk. Get emergency medical attention immediately.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION

■ When replacing the 12-volt battery

Use a 12-volt battery designed for this vehicle. Failure to do so may cause gas (hydrogen) to enter the passenger compartment, causing a fire or explosion.

For replacement of the 12-volt battery, contact your Lexus dealer.

NOTICE

■ When recharging the 12-volt battery

Never recharge the 12-volt battery while the hybrid system is operating. Also, be sure all accessories are turned off.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

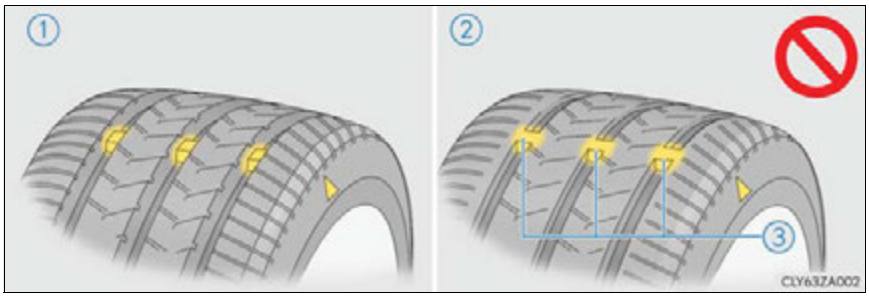
Tires

Replace or rotate tires in accordance with maintenance schedules and treadwear.

Checking tires

Check if the treadwear indicators are showing on the tires. Also check the tires for uneven wear, such as excessive wear on one side of the tread.

Check the spare tire condition and pressure if not rotated.



① New tread

② Worn tread

③ Treadwear indicator

The location of treadwear indicators is shown by a "TWI" or "Δ" mark, etc., molded into the sidewall of each tire.

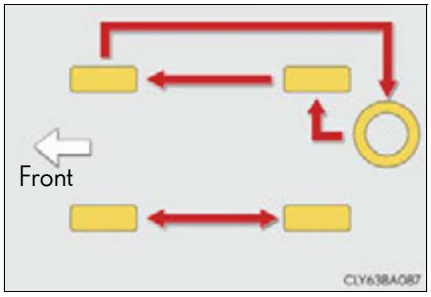
Replace the tires if the treadwear indicators are showing on a tire.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

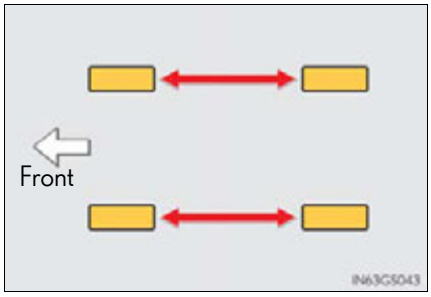
Tire rotation

Rotate the tires in the order shown.

▶ Vehicles with a spare tire



▶ Vehicles with run-flat tires



To equalize tire wear and extend tire life, Lexus recommends that tire rotation is carried out at the same interval as tire inspection.

Do not fail to initialize the tire pressure warning system after tire rotation.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire pressure warning system

Your vehicle is equipped with a tire pressure warning system that uses tire pressure warning valves and transmitters to detect low tire inflation pressure before serious problems arise.

- If the tire pressure drops below a predetermined level, the driver is warned by a screen display and a warning light. (→P. 503, 509)
- The tire pressure detected by the tire pressure warning system can be displayed on the multi-information display. (→P. 108)

◆ Installing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

When replacing tires or wheels, tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must also be installed.

When new tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are installed, new ID codes must be registered in the tire pressure warning computer and the tire pressure warning system must be initialized. Have tire pressure warning valve and transmitter ID codes registered by your Lexus dealer. (→P. 463)

◆ Initializing the tire pressure warning system

■ **The tire pressure warning system must be initialized in the following circumstances:**

- When rotating the tires.
- When the tire inflation pressure is changed such as when changing traveling speed. (→P. 554)
- When changing the tire size.

When the tire pressure warning system is initialized, the current tire inflation pressure is set as the benchmark pressure.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ How to initialize the tire pressure warning system

1 Park the vehicle in a safe place and turn the power switch off.

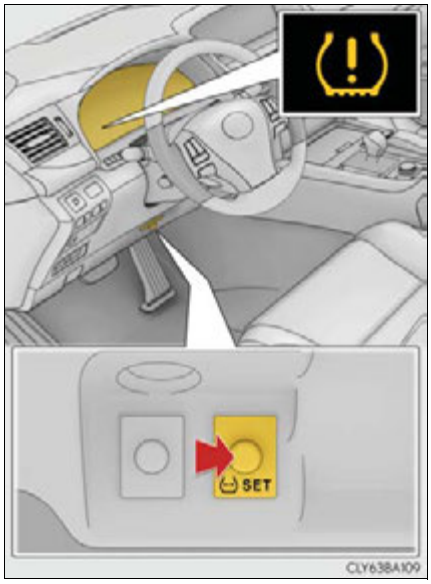
Initialization cannot be performed while the vehicle is moving.

2 Adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified cold tire inflation pressure level. (→P. 554)

Make sure to adjust the tire pressure to the specified cold tire inflation pressure level. The tire pressure warning system will operate based on this pressure level.

3 Turn the power switch to ON mode.

4 Press and hold the tire pressure warning reset switch until the tire pressure warning light blinks slowly 3 times.



5 Wait for a few minutes with the power switch in ON mode and then turn the power switch off.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Registering ID codes

The tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is equipped with a unique ID code. When replacing a tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, it is necessary to register the ID code. Have the ID code registered by your Lexus dealer.

When to replace your vehicle's tires

Tires should be replaced if:

- The treadwear indicators are showing on a tire.
- You have tire damage such as cuts, splits, cracks deep enough to expose the fabric, and bulges indicating internal damage
- A tire goes flat repeatedly or cannot be properly repaired due to the size or location of a cut or other damage

If you are not sure, consult with your Lexus dealer.

Replacing tires and wheels

If the ID code of the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is not registered, the tire pressure warning system will not work properly. After driving for about 20 minutes, the tire pressure warning light blinks for 1 minute and stays on to indicate a system malfunction.

Tire life

Any tire over 6 years old must be checked by a qualified technician even if it has seldom or never been used or damage is not obvious.

Routine tire inflation pressure checks

The tire pressure warning system does not replace routine tire inflation pressure checks. Make sure to check tire inflation pressure as part of your routine of daily vehicle checks.

When rotating the tires

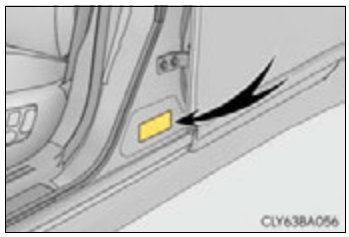
Make sure that the power switch is off. If the tires are rotated while the power switch is in ON mode, the tire position information will not be updated.
If this accidentally occurs, either turn the power switch to off and then to ON mode, or initialize the system after checking that the tire pressure is properly adjusted.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Maximum load of tire

Check that the maximum load of the replacement tire is greater than 1/2 of the Gross Axle Weight Ratings (GAWR) of either the front axle or the rear axle, whichever is greater.

For the GAWR, see the Certification Label. For the maximum load of the tire, see the load limit at maximum cold tire inflation pressure mentioned on the sidewall of the tire.
(→P. 560)



Tire types

- Summer tires

  Summer tires are high-speed performance tires best suited to highway driving under dry conditions. Since summer tires do not have the same traction performance as snow tires, summer tires are inadequate for driving on snow-covered or icy roads. For driving on snow-covered roads or icy roads, the use of snow tires is recommended. When installing snow tires, be sure to replace all four tires.

- All season tires

  All season tires are designed to provide better traction in snow and to be adequate for driving in most winter conditions as well as for use year-round. All season tires, however, do not have adequate traction performance compared with snow tires in heavy or loose snow. Also, all season tires fall short in acceleration and handling performance compared with summer tires in highway driving.

- Snow tires

  For driving on snow-covered roads or icy roads, we recommend using snow tires. If you need snow tires, select tires of the same size, construction and load capacity as the originally installed tires. Since your vehicle has radial tires as original equipment, make sure your snow tires also have radial construction. Do not install studded tires without first checking local regulations for possible restrictions. Snow tires should be installed on all wheels. (→P. 326)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **If the tread on snow tires wears down below 0.16 in. (4 mm)**

The effectiveness of the tires as snow tires is lost.

■ **Situations in which the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly**

● In the following cases, the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly.

- If non-genuine Lexus wheels are used.
- A tire has been replaced with a tire that is not an OE (Original Equipment) tire.
- A tire has been replaced with a tire that is not of the specified size.
- Tire chains etc. are equipped.
- An auxiliary-supported run-flat tire is equipped.
- If a window tint that affects the radio wave signals is installed.
- If there is a lot of snow or ice on the vehicle, particularly around the wheels or wheel housings.
- If the tire inflation pressure is extremely higher than the specified level.
- If the spare tire is in a location subject to poor radio wave signal reception.*
- If a large metallic object which can interfere with signal reception is put in the trunk.*
- If tires not equipped with tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are used.
- If the ID code on the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters is not registered in the tire pressure warning computer.

*: Vehicles with a spare tire

● Performance may be affected in the following situations.

- Near a TV tower, electric power plant, gas station, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise
- When carrying a portable radio, cellular phone, cordless phone or other wireless communication device

If tire position information is not correctly displayed due to the radio wave conditions, the display may be corrected by driving and changing the radio wave conditions.

● When the vehicle is parked, the time taken for the warning to start or go off could be extended.

● When tire inflation pressure declines rapidly for example when a tire has burst, the warning may not function.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **The initialization operation**

- Make sure to carry out initialization after adjusting the tire inflation pressure. Also, make sure the tires are cold before carrying out initialization or tire inflation pressure adjustment.
- If you have accidentally turned the power switch off during initialization, it is not necessary to press the reset switch again as initialization will restart automatically when the power switch has been turned to ON mode for the next time.
- If you accidentally press the reset switch when initialization is not necessary, adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified level when the tires are cold, and conduct initialization again.

■ **When initialization of the tire pressure warning system has failed**

Initialization can be completed in a few minutes. However, in the following cases, the settings have not been recorded and the system will not operate properly. If repeated attempts to record tire inflation pressure settings are unsuccessful, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

- When operating the tire pressure warning reset switch, the tire pressure warning light does not blink 3 times.
- After carrying out the initialization procedure, the tire pressure warning light blinks for 1 minute then stays on after driving for 20 minutes.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Tire pressure warning system certification

▶ For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.

FCC ID: PAXPMVC010

FCC ID: HYQ13BDS

FCC ID: HYQ22AAA

NOTE:
This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING:
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

▶ For vehicles sold in Canada

Transmitter:

NOTE:
Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Initiator:

NOTE:
This device complies with Industry Canada's licence-exempt RSSs. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
(1) This device may not cause interference; and
(2) This device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ When inspecting or replacing tires

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents.
Failure to do so may cause damage to parts of the drive train as well as dangerous handling characteristics, which may lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

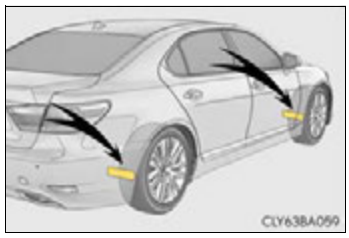
- Do not mix tires of different makes, models or tread patterns.
  Also, do not mix tires of remarkably different treadwear.
- Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended by Lexus.
- Do not mix differently constructed tires (radial, bias-belted or bias-ply tires).
- Do not mix summer, all season and snow tires.
- Do not use tires that have been used on another vehicle.
  Do not use tires if you do not know how they were used previously.

■ When initializing the tire pressure warning system

Do not operate the tire pressure warning reset switch without first adjusting the tire inflation pressure to the specified level. Otherwise, the tire pressure warning light may not come on even if the tire inflation pressure is low, or it may come on when the tire inflation pressure is actually normal.

■ Caution regarding interference with electronic devices

- People with implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should not come within 17.7 in. (450 mm) of the tire pressure warning system initiators. The radio waves may affect the operation of such devices.



- Users of any electrical medical device other than implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should consult the manufacturer of the device for information about its operation under the influence of radio waves.
  Radio waves could have unexpected effects on the operation of such medical devices.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

■ **Repairing or replacing tires, wheels, tire pressure warning valves, transmitters and tire valve caps**

- When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters, contact your Lexus dealer as the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may be damaged if not handled correctly.
- Make sure to install the tire valve caps. If the tire valve caps are not installed, water could enter the tire pressure warning valves and the tire pressure warning valves could be bound.
- When replacing tire valve caps, do not use tire valve caps other than those specified. The cap may become stuck.

■ **To avoid damage to the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters**

When a tire is repaired with liquid sealants, the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may not operate properly. If a liquid sealant is used, contact your Lexus dealer or other qualified service shop as soon as possible. Make sure to replace the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter when replacing the tire. (→P. 461)

■ **Driving on rough roads**

Take particular care when driving on roads with loose surfaces or potholes.
These conditions may cause losses in tire inflation pressure, reducing the cushioning ability of the tires. In addition, driving on rough roads may cause damage to the tires themselves, as well as the vehicle's wheels and body.

■ **If tire inflation pressure of each tire becomes low while driving**

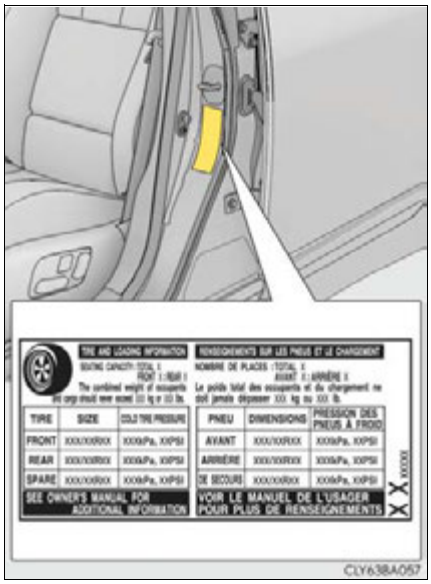
Do not continue driving, or your tires and/or wheels may be ruined.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire inflation pressure

Tire inflation pressure

The recommended cold tire inflation pressure and tire size are displayed on the tire and loading information label. (→P. 554)

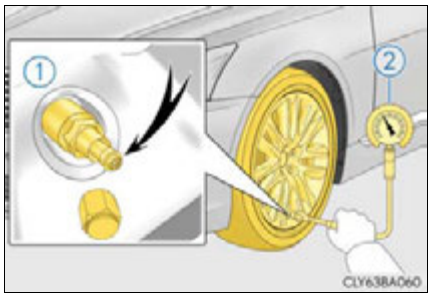


DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Inspection and adjustment procedure

① Tire valve

② Tire pressure gauge



1 Remove the tire valve cap.

2 Press the tip of the tire pressure gauge onto the tire valve.

3 Read the pressure using the gauge gradations.

4 If the tire inflation pressure is not at the recommended level, adjust the pressure.
If you add too much air, press the center of the valve to deflate.

5 After completing the tire inflation pressure measurement and adjustment, apply soapy water to the valve and check for leakage.

6 Put the tire valve cap back on.

Tire inflation pressure check interval

You should check tire inflation pressure every two weeks, or at least once a month. Do not forget to check the spare.

Effects of incorrect tire inflation pressure

Driving with incorrect tire inflation pressure may result in the following:

- Reduced fuel economy
- Reduced driving comfort and poor handling
- Reduced tire life due to wear
- Reduced safety
- Damage to the drive train

If a tire needs frequent inflating, have it checked by your Lexus dealer.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Instructions for checking tire inflation pressure**

When checking tire inflation pressure, observe the following:

- Check only when the tires are cold.
  If your vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours or has not been driven for more than 1 mile or 1.5 km, you will get an accurate cold tire inflation pressure reading.
- Always use a tire pressure gauge.
  It is difficult to judge if a tire is properly inflated based only on its appearance.
- It is normal for the tire inflation pressure to be higher after driving as heat is generated in the tire. Do not reduce tire inflation pressure after driving.
- Never exceed the vehicle capacity weight.
  Passengers and luggage weight should be placed so that the vehicle is balanced.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **Proper inflation is critical to save tire performance**

Keep your tires properly inflated.
If the tires are not properly inflated, the following conditions may occur which could lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury:

- Excessive wear
- Uneven wear
- Poor handling
- Possibility of blowouts resulting from overheated tires
- Air leaking from between tire and wheel
- Wheel deformation and/or tire damage
- Greater possibility of tire damage while driving (due to road hazards, expansion joints, sharp edges in the road, etc.)

⚠ NOTICE

■ **When inspecting and adjusting tire inflation pressure**

Be sure to put the tire valve caps back on.
If a valve cap is not installed, dirt or moisture may get into the valve and cause an air leak, resulting in decreased tire inflation pressure.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Wheels

If a wheel is bent, cracked or heavily corroded, it should be replaced. Otherwise, the tire may separate from the wheel or cause a loss of handling control.

Wheel selection

When replacing wheels, care should be taken to ensure that they are equivalent to those removed in load capacity, diameter, rim width and inset*.

Replacement wheels are available at your Lexus dealer.

*: Conventionally referred to as "offset".

Lexus does not recommend using the following:

- Wheels of different sizes or types
- Used wheels
- Bent wheels that have been straightened

Aluminum wheel precautions

- Use only Lexus wheel nuts and wheel nut wrenches designed for use with your aluminum wheels.
- When rotating, repairing or changing your tires, check that the wheel nuts are still tight after driving 1000 miles (1600 km).
- Be careful not to damage the aluminum wheels when using tire chains.
- Use only Lexus genuine balance weights or equivalent and a plastic or rubber hammer when balancing your wheels.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ When replacing wheels

The wheels of your vehicle are equipped with tire pressure warning valves and transmitters that allow the tire pressure warning system to provide advance warning in the event of a loss in tire inflation pressure. Whenever wheels are replaced, tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must be installed. (→P. 461)

⚠ CAUTION

■ When replacing wheels

- Do not use wheels that are a different size from those recommended in the Owner's Manual, as this may result in a loss of handling control.
- Never use an inner tube in a leaking wheel which is designed for a tubeless tire. Doing so may result in an accident, causing death or serious injury.

⚠ NOTICE

■ Replacing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

- Because tire repair or replacement may affect the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters, make sure to have tires serviced by your Lexus dealer or other qualified service shop. In addition, make sure to purchase your tire pressure warning valves and transmitters at your Lexus dealer.
- Ensure that only genuine Lexus wheels are used on your vehicle.
  Tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may not work properly with non-genuine wheels.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Air conditioning filter

The air conditioning filter must be changed regularly to maintain air conditioning efficiency.

Removal method

■ Front air conditioning filter

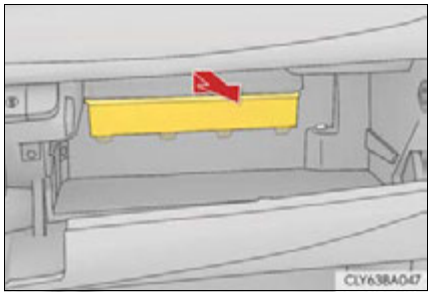
1 Set the air conditioning system to recirculated air mode. (→P. 346)

The air conditioning filter case cannot be removed with the system in outside air mode.

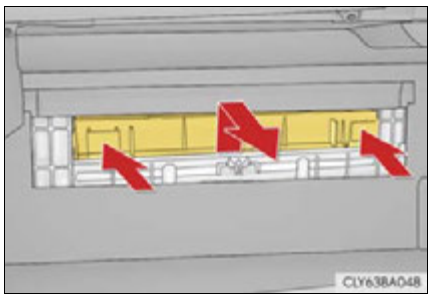
2 Turn the power switch off.

3 Open the glove box. Remove the partition. (→P. 370)

4 Remove the filter cover.



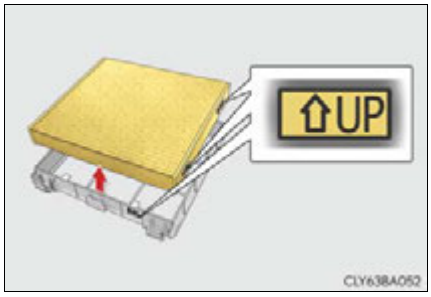
5 Remove the filter case.



DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

6 Remove the air conditioning filter from the filter case and replace it with a new one.

The "↑UP" marks shown on the filter and the filter case should be pointing up.

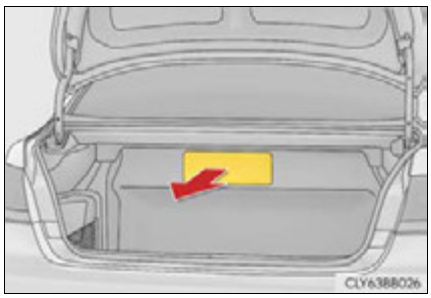


7 Reset the air conditioning filter maintenance data. (→P. 477)

■ Rear air conditioning filter

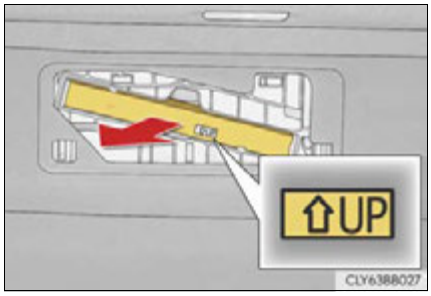
1 Turn the power switch off.

2 Open the trunk lid. Remove the filter cover.



3 Remove the air conditioning filter and replace it with a new one.

The "↑UP" mark shown on the filter should be pointing up.



DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Checking interval**

▶ Front air conditioning filter

Inspect and replace the air conditioning filter when a message is appeared on the multi-information display. In dusty areas or areas with heavy traffic flow, early replacement may be required. (For scheduled maintenance information, please refer to the "Owner's Manual Supplement" or "Scheduled Maintenance".)

▶ Rear air conditioning filter

Replace every 9000 miles (15000 km).

■ **If air flow from the vents decreases dramatically**

The filter may be clogged. Check the filter and replace if necessary.

■ **After changing the front air conditioning filter**

The front air conditioning filter maintenance data should be reset. Perform the following procedures:

1 Turn the power switch to ON mode.

2 Press and hold (on the air conditioning panel) for 4 seconds or more.

A buzzer will sound to indicate that the maintenance data has been successfully reset.

■ **Rear air conditioning filter**

If it is necessary to clean or replace the filter, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **Climate control seat filter**

Filters are installed in the seats. When it is necessary to clean or replace the filters, contact your Lexus dealer.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **When using the air conditioning system**

Make sure that a filter is always installed.
Using the air conditioning system without a filter may cause damage to the system.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Electronic key battery

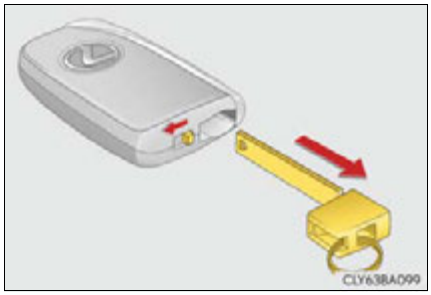
Replace the battery with a new one if it is depleted.

You will need the following items:

- Flathead screwdriver
- Small flathead screwdriver
- Lithium battery CR1632

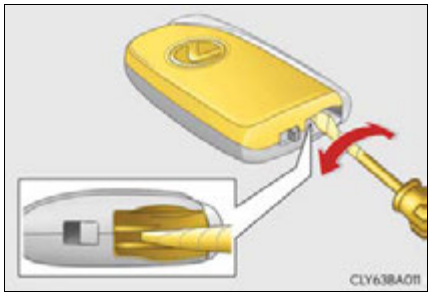
Replacing the battery

1 Take out the mechanical key.



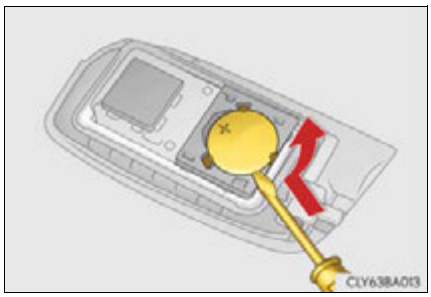
2 Remove the cover.

To prevent damage to the key, cover the tip of the screwdriver with a rag.



3 Remove the depleted battery.

Insert a new battery with the "+" terminal facing up.



DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Use a CR1632 lithium battery

- Batteries can be purchased at your Lexus dealer, local electrical appliance shops or camera stores.
- Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer.
- Dispose of used batteries according to local laws.

■ When the card key battery needs to be replaced (if equipped)

The battery for the card key is available only at Lexus dealers. Your Lexus dealer can replace the battery for you.

■ If the electronic key battery is depleted

The following symptoms may occur:

- The smart access system with push-button start and wireless remote control will not function properly.
- The operational range will be reduced.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Removed battery and other parts

These parts are small and if swallowed by a child, they can cause choking. Keep away from children. Failure to do so could result in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ For normal operation after replacing the battery

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents:

- Always work with dry hands.
  Moisture may cause the battery to rust.
- Do not touch or move any other component inside the remote control.
- Do not bend either of the battery terminals.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Checking and replacing fuses

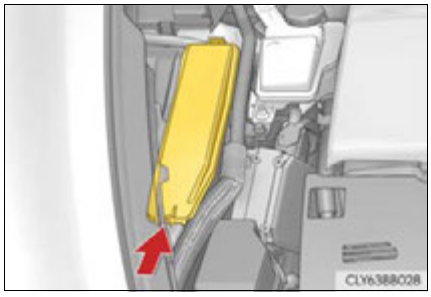
If any of the electrical components do not operate, a fuse may have blown. If this happens, check and replace the fuses as necessary.

1 Turn the power switch off.

2 Open the fuse box cover.

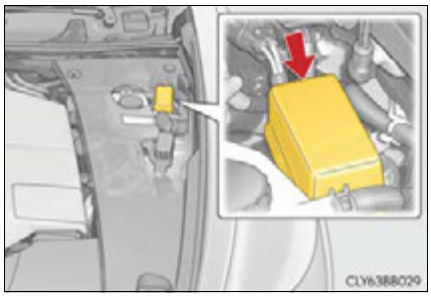
▶ Engine compartment (type A fuse box)

Remove the engine compartment cover (→P. 444) and push the tab in and lift the lid off.



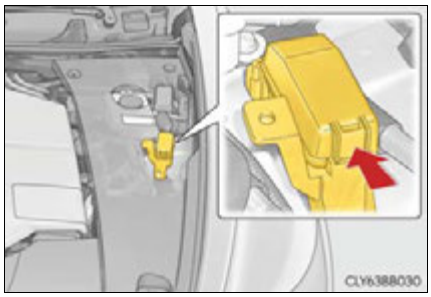
▶ Engine compartment (type B fuse box)

Remove the engine compartment cover (→P. 444) and push the tab in and lift the lid off.



▶ Engine compartment (type C fuse box)

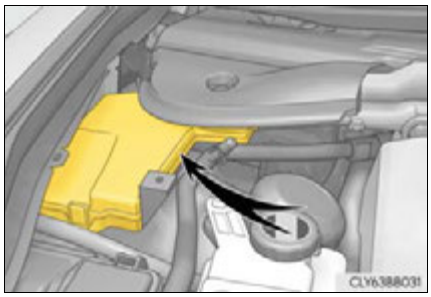
Remove the engine compartment cover (→P. 444) and push the tab in and lift the lid off.



DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

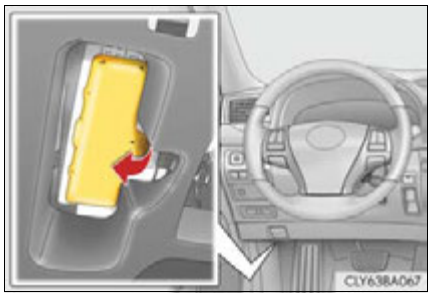
▶ Engine compartment (fuse box near the power control unit)

There are high voltage parts and wiring near the fuse box. For inspection and replacement of the fuses, contact your Lexus dealer.



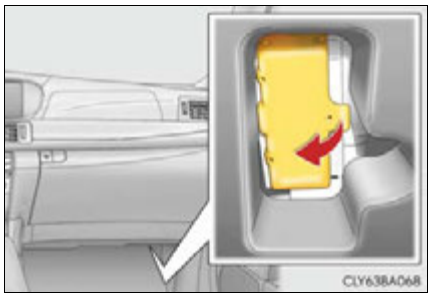
▶ Driver's side instrument panel

Remove the lid.



▶ Passenger's side instrument panel

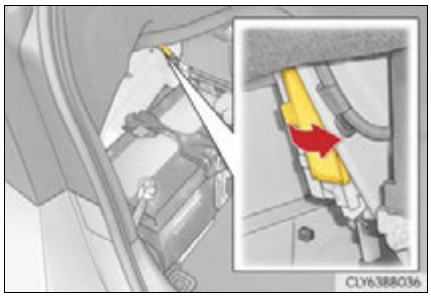
Remove the lid.



DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

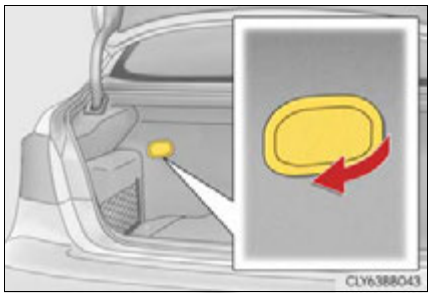
▶ Trunk (type A fuse box)

Remove the 12-volt battery cover (→P. 455) and then remove the lid.



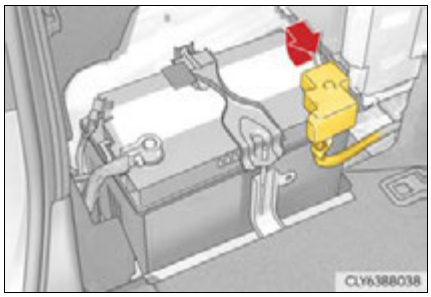
▶ Trunk (type B fuse box)

Remove the cover.



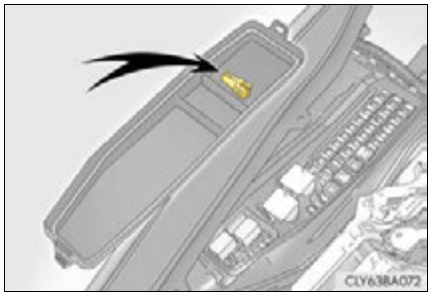
▶ Trunk (type C fuse box)

Remove the 12-volt battery cover (→P. 455) and then remove the terminal cover.



3 Remove the fuse with the pullout tool.

Only type A fuse can be removed using the pullout tool.



DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

4 Check if the fuse is blown.

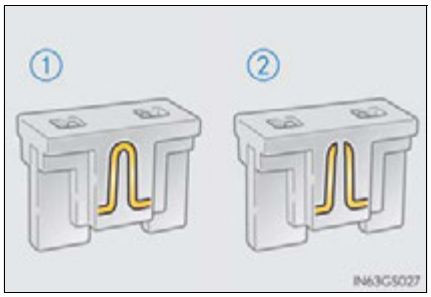
① Normal fuse

② Blown fuse

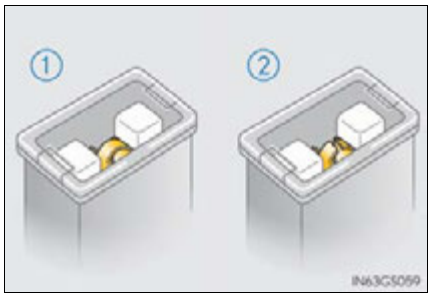
Type A and B:
Replace the blown fuse with a new fuse of an appropriate amperage rating. The amperage rating can be found on the fuse box lid.

Type C and D:
Contact your Lexus dealer.

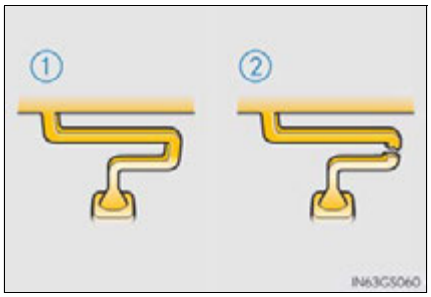
▶ Type A



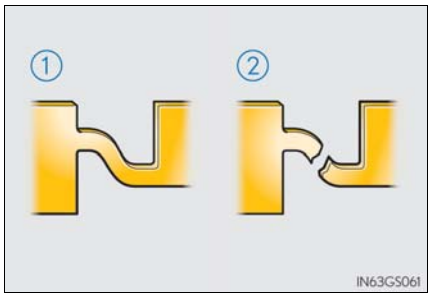
▶ Type B



▶ Type C



▶ Type D



DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ After a fuse is replaced

- If the lights do not turn on even after the fuse has been replaced, a bulb may need replacement. (→P. 487)
- If the replaced fuse blows again, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ If there is an overload in a circuit

The fuses are designed to blow, protecting the wiring harness from damage.

⚠ CAUTION

■ To prevent system breakdowns and vehicle fire

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause damage to the vehicle, and possibly a fire or injury.

- Never use a fuse of a higher amperage rating than that indicated, or use any other object in place of a fuse.
- Always use a genuine Lexus fuse or equivalent.
  Never replace a fuse with a wire, even as a temporary fix.
- Do not modify the fuses or fuse boxes.

■ Fuse box near the power control unit

Never check or replace the fuses as there are high voltage parts and wiring near the fuse box.
Doing so may cause electric shock, resulting in death or serious injury.

⚠ NOTICE

■ Before replacing fuses

Have the cause of electrical overload determined and repaired by your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Headlight aim

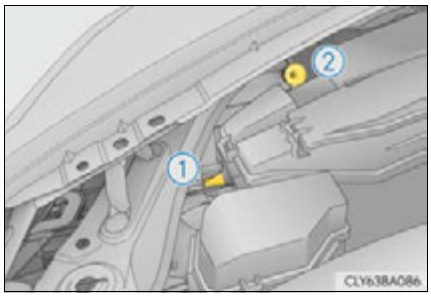
Removing the engine compartment cover

→P. 444

Vertical movement adjusting bolts

① Adjustment bolt A

② Adjustment bolt B



Before checking the headlight aim

1 Make sure the vehicle has a full tank of gasoline and the area around the headlight is not deformed.

2 Park the vehicle on level ground.

3 Sit in the driver's seat.

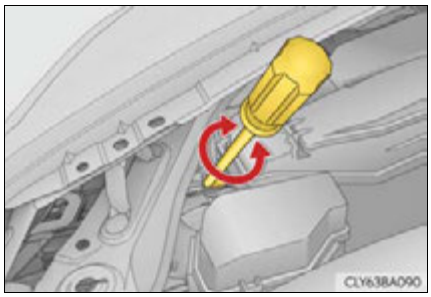
4 Bounce the vehicle several times.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Adjusting the headlight aim

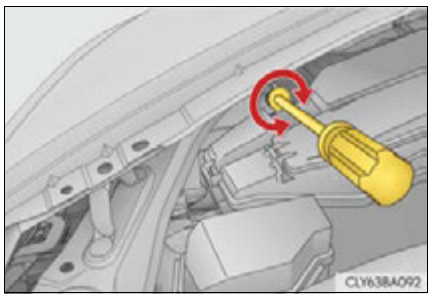
1 Using a Phillips-head screwdriver, turn bolt A in either direction.

Remember the turning direction and the number of turns.



2 Turn bolt B the same number of turns and in the same direction as step 1.

If the headlight cannot be adjusted using this procedure, take the vehicle to your Lexus dealer to adjust the headlight aim.



DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Light bulbs

If any lights burn out, have it replaced by your Lexus dealer.

LED Lights

The following lights consist of a number of LEDs. If any of the LEDs burn out, take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer to have the light replaced.

- Headlight low beams
- Headlight low/high beams
- Headlight high beams (vehicles without LKA [Lane-Keeping Assist])
- Parking lights and daytime running lights
- Front side marker lights
- Front turn signal lights
- Front fog lights
- Side turn signal lights
- Outer foot lights
- Tail lights
- Stop lights
- Back-up lights
- Rear side marker lights
- Rear turn signal lights
- High mounted stoplight
- License plate lights

Condensation build-up on the inside of the lens

Temporary condensation build-up on the inside of the headlight lens does not indicate a malfunction. Contact your Lexus dealer for more information in the following situations:

- Large drops of water have built up on the inside of the lens.
- Water has built up inside the headlight.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Handling lights

Do not touch the lights while they are on or immediately after they have been turned off. Doing so may result in burns.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

7-1. Essential information

Emergency flashers.....490

If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency.....491

7-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If your vehicle needs to be towed.....492

If you think something is wrong.....498

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds.....499

If a warning message is displayed.....509

If you have a flat tire (vehicles with a spare tire).....513

If you have a flat tire (vehicles with run-flat tires).....522

If the hybrid system will not start.....524

If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P.....526

If the parking brake cannot be released.....527

If the electronic key does not operate properly.....531

If the 12-volt battery is discharged.....534

If your vehicle overheats.....538

If the vehicle becomes stuck.....543

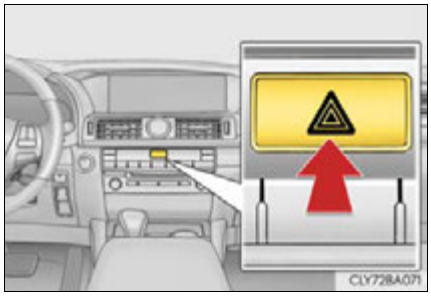
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Emergency flashers

The emergency flashers are used to warn other drivers when the vehicle has to be stopped in the road due to a breakdown, etc.

Press the switch.

All the turn signals will flash.
To turn them off, press the switch once again.



Emergency flashers

If the emergency flashers are used for a long time while the hybrid system is not operating (while the "READY" indicator is not illuminated), the 12-volt battery may discharge.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency

Only in an emergency, such as if it becomes impossible to stop the vehicle in the normal way, stop the vehicle using the following procedure:

1 Steadily step on the brake pedal with both feet and firmly depress it.

Do not pump the brake pedal repeatedly as this will increase the effort required to slow the vehicle.

2 Shift the shift lever to N.

▶ If the shift lever is shifted to N

3 After slowing down, stop the vehicle in a safe place by the road.

4 Stop the hybrid system.

▶ If the shift lever cannot be shifted to N

3 Keep depressing the brake pedal with both feet to reduce vehicle speed as much as possible.

4 To stop the hybrid system, press and hold the power switch for 2 consecutive seconds or more, or press it briefly 3 times or more in succession.

Press and hold for 2 seconds or more, or press briefly 3 times or more

CLY7188001

5 Stop the vehicle in a safe place by the road.

⚠ CAUTION

■ If the hybrid system has to be turned off while driving

Power assist for the steering wheel will be lost, making the steering wheel heavier to turn. Decelerate as much as possible before turning off the hybrid system.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

If your vehicle needs to be towed

If towing is necessary, we recommend having your vehicle towed by your Lexus dealer or commercial towing service, using a wheel-lift type truck or flatbed truck.
Use a safety chain system for all towing, and abide by all state/provincial and local laws.

Situations when it is necessary to contact dealers before towing

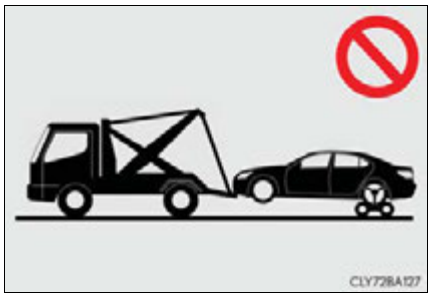
The following may indicate a problem with your transmission. Contact your Lexus dealer or commercial towing service before towing.

- A warning message for the hybrid system is shown on the multi-information display and the vehicle does not move.
- The vehicle makes an abnormal sound.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

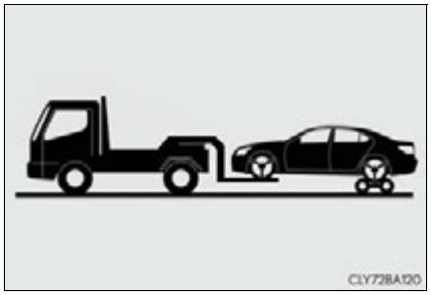
Towing with a sling-type truck

Do not tow with a sling-type truck to prevent body damage.



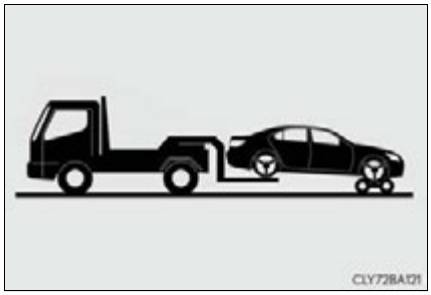
Towing with a wheel-lift type truck

▶ From the front



Use a towing dolly under the rear wheels.

▶ From the rear

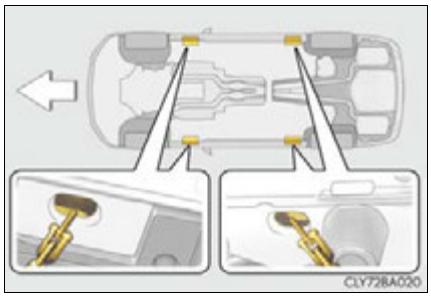


Use a towing dolly under the front wheels.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

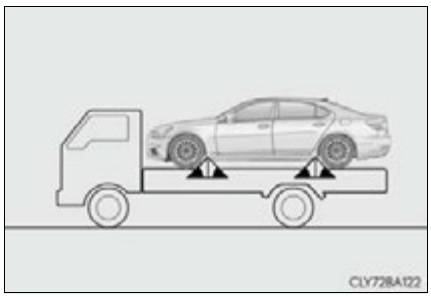
Using a flatbed truck

If your vehicle is transported by a flatbed truck, it should be tied down at the locations shown in the illustration.



If you use chains or cables to tie down your vehicle, the angles shaded in black must be 45°.

Do not overly tighten the tie downs or the vehicle may be damaged.



Emergency towing

If a tow truck is not available in an emergency, your vehicle may be temporarily towed using cables or chains secured to the emergency towing eyelets. This should only be attempted on hard surfaced roads for short distances at under 3 mph (5 km/h).

A driver must be in the vehicle to steer and operate the brakes. The vehicle's wheels, drive train, axles, steering and brakes must be in good condition.

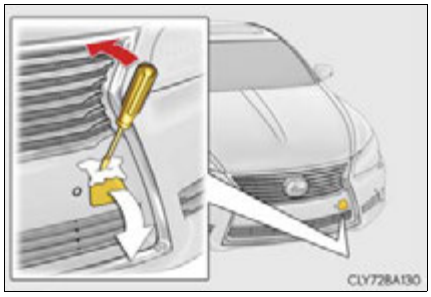
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Emergency towing procedure

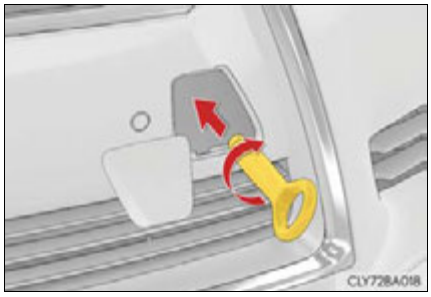
1 Take out the towing eyelet. (→P. 514, 523)

2 Remove the eyelet cover using a flathead screwdriver.

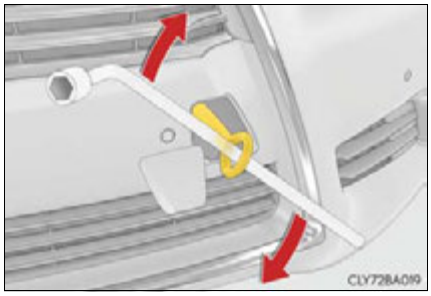
To protect the bodywork, place a rag between the screwdriver and the vehicle body as shown in the illustration.



3 Insert the towing eyelet into the hole and tighten partially by hand.



4 Tighten down the towing eyelet securely using a wheel nut wrench or hard metal bar.



5 Securely attach cables or chains to the towing eyelet.

Take care not to damage the vehicle body.

6 Enter the vehicle being towed and start the hybrid system.

If the hybrid system does not start, turn the power switch to ON mode.

7 Shift the shift lever to N and release the parking brake.
When the shift lever cannot be shifted: →P. 526

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **While towing**

If the hybrid system is off, the power assist for the brakes and steering will not function, making steering and braking more difficult.

■ **Wheel nut wrench**

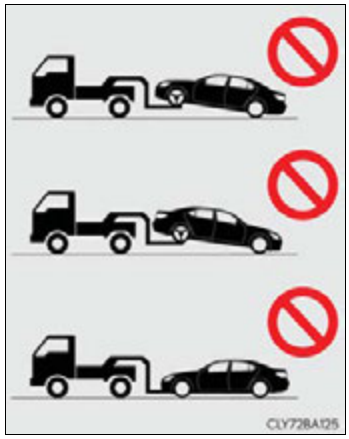
Wheel nut wrench is installed in trunk. (→P. 514, 523)

⚠ CAUTION

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ **When towing the vehicle**

Be sure to transport the vehicle with all four wheels raised off the ground. If the vehicle is towed with the tires contacting the ground, the drivetrain or related parts may be damaged, the vehicle may fly off the truck, or electricity generated by the operation of the motor may cause a fire to occur depending on the nature of the damage or malfunction.



■ **While towing**

- When towing using cables or chains, avoid sudden starts, etc. which place excessive stress on the towing eyelets, cables or chains. The towing eyelets, cables or chains may become damaged, broken debris may hit people, and cause serious damage.
- Do not turn the power switch off.
  There is a possibility that the steering wheel is locked and cannot be operated.

■ **Installing towing eyelets to the vehicle**

Make sure that towing eyelets are installed securely.
If not securely installed, towing eyelets may come loose during towing.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE

■ **To prevent damage to the vehicle when towing using a wheel-lift type truck**

- Do not tow the vehicle from the rear when the power switch is off. The steering lock mechanism is not strong enough to hold the front wheels straight.
- When raising the vehicle, ensure adequate ground clearance for towing at the opposite end of the raised vehicle. Without adequate clearance, the vehicle could be damaged while being towed.

■ **To prevent damage to the vehicle when towing with a sling-type truck**

Do not tow with a sling-type truck, either from the front or rear.

■ **To prevent damage to the vehicle during emergency towing**

Do not secure cables or chains to the suspension components.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

If you think something is wrong

If you notice any of the following symptoms, your vehicle probably needs adjustment or repair. Contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

Visible symptoms

- Fluid leaks under the vehicle.
  (Water dripping from the air conditioning after use is normal.)
- Flat-looking tires or uneven tire wear
- Engine coolant temperature gauge needle continually points higher than normal.

Audible symptoms

- Changes in exhaust sound
- Excessive tire squeal when cornering
- Strange noises related to the suspension system
- Pinging or other noises related to the hybrid system

Operational symptoms

- Engine missing, stumbling or running roughly
- Appreciable loss of power
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when braking
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when driving on a level road
- Loss of brake effectiveness, spongy feeling, pedal almost touches the floor

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds

Calmly perform the following actions if any of the warning lights comes on or flashes. If a light comes on or flashes, but then goes off, this does not necessarily indicate a malfunction in the system. However, if this continues to occur, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Stop the vehicle immediately. Continuing to drive the vehicle may be dangerous.

The following warning indicates a possible problem in the brake system. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.

Warning light	Warning light/Details
(U.S.A.) (Canada)	**Brake system warning light (warning buzzer)** • Low brake fluid • Malfunction in the electronically controlled brake system

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Stop the vehicle immediately.

The following warning indicates the possibility of damage to the vehicle that may lead to an accident. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.

Warning light	Warning light/Details
	Charging system warning light Indicates a malfunction in the vehicle's charging system

Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

Failure to investigate the cause of the following warnings may lead to the system operating abnormally and possibly cause an accident. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

Warning light	Warning light/Details
 (U.S.A.) (Canada)	**Malfunction indicator lamp** Indicates a malfunction in: • The hybrid system; • The electronic engine control system; • The electronic throttle control system; or • The electronic hybrid transmission control system
	SRS warning light Indicates a malfunction in: • The SRS airbag system; • The front passenger occupant classification system; • The seat belt pretensioner system; or • The active head restraints system
 (U.S.A.) (Canada)	**ABS warning light** Indicates a malfunction in: • The ABS; or • The brake assist system
	Electric power steering system warning light (warning buzzer) Indicates a malfunction in the EPS (Electric Power Steering) system

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Warning light	Warning light/Details
PCS (Flashes) (If equipped)	**Pre-collision system warning light** Indicates a malfunction in the pre-collision system The warning light will operate as follows, even when the system is not malfunctioning: • The light will flash quickly when the system is operating. (→P. 296) • The light will turn on when the pre-collision braking is disabled. (→P. 292, 298) • The light will turn on when the system cannot temporarily be used.
	Slip indicator Indicates a malfunction in: • The VSC system; • The TRAC system; • The ABS; or • The hill-start assist control system The light will flash when the VSC, the TRAC, the ABS or the hill-start assist control system is operating. (→P. 291)
HOLD (Flashes)	**Brake hold operated indicator** Indicates a malfunction in the brake hold system
PARK (Flashes) (U.S.A.) (P) (Flashes) (Canada)	**Parking brake indicator** Indicates a malfunction in the electric parking brake
	Brake system warning light Indicates a malfunction in: • The electronically controlled brake system; • The regenerative braking system; or • The electric parking brake

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Follow the correction procedures.

After taking the specified steps to correct the suspected problem, check that the warning light goes off.

Warning light	Warning light/Details	Correction procedure
	Open door warning light (warning buzzer)*1 Indicates that a door or the trunk is not fully closed	Check that all the doors and the trunk are closed.
 In the fuel gauge	**Low fuel level warning light** Indicates remaining fuel is approximately 3.4 gal. (13 L, 2.8 Imp. gal.) or less	Refuel the vehicle.
	Seat belt reminder light (warning buzzer)*2 Warns the driver and/or front passenger to fasten their seat belts	Fasten the seat belt. If the front passenger's seat is occupied, the front passenger's seat belt also needs to be fastened to make the warning light (warning buzzer) turn off.
	Master warning light A buzzer sounds and the warning light comes on and flashes to indicate that the master warning system has detected a malfunction.	→P. 509

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Warning light	Warning light/Details	Correction procedure
	Tire pressure warning light	
	When the light comes on: Low tire inflation pressure such as • Natural causes (→P. 505) • Flat tire (→P. 513, 522)	Adjust the tire inflation pressure (including the spare tire) to the specified level. The light will turn off after a few minutes. In case the light does not turn off even if the tire inflation pressure is adjusted, have the system checked by your Lexus dealer.
	When the light comes on after blinking for 1 minute: Malfunction in the tire pressure warning system (→P. 505)	Have the system checked by your Lexus dealer.

*1: Open door warning buzzer:

A buzzer will sound if the vehicle reaches a speed of 3 mph (5 km/h) with any door open.

*2: Driver's and front passenger's seat belt buzzer:

The driver's and front passenger's seat belt buzzer sounds to alert the driver and front passenger that his or her seat belt is not fastened. Once the power switch is turned to ON mode, the buzzer sounds for 6 seconds. If the vehicle reaches a speed of 12 mph (20 km/h), the buzzer sounds once. If the seat belt is still unfastened after 30 seconds, the buzzer will sound intermittently for 10 seconds. Then, if the seat belt is still unfastened, the buzzer will sound in a different tone for 20 more seconds.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ SRS warning light

This warning light system monitors the airbag sensor assembly, front impact sensors, side impact sensors (front door), side impact sensors (front), side impact sensors (rear door) side impact sensors (rear), driver's seat position sensor, driver's seat belt buckle switch, front passenger occupant classification system (ECU and sensors), "AIR BAG ON" indicator light, "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light, front passenger's seat belt buckle switch, seat belt pretensioners and force limiters, airbags, interconnecting wiring and power sources. (→P. 44)

■ Front passenger detection sensor, seat belt reminder and warning buzzer

- If luggage is placed on the front passenger seat, the front passenger detection sensor may cause the warning light to flash and the warning buzzer to sound even if a passenger is not sitting in the seat.
- If a cushion is placed on the seat, the sensor may not detect a passenger, and the warning light may not operate properly.

■ Electric power steering system warning light (warning buzzer)

When the 12-volt battery charge becomes insufficient of the voltage temporarily drops, the electric power steering system warning light may come on and the warning buzzer may sound.

■ If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on while driving

First check the following:

- Is the fuel tank empty?
  If it is, fill the fuel tank immediately.
- Is the fuel tank cap loose?
  If it is, tighten it securely.

The light will go off after several driving trips.
If the light does not go off even after several trips, contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

■ When the tire pressure warning light comes on

Check the tire inflation pressure and adjust it to the appropriate level. Pushing the tire pressure warning reset switch will not turn off the tire pressure warning light.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **The tire pressure warning light may come on due to natural causes**

The tire pressure warning light may come on due to natural causes such as natural air leaks and tire inflation pressure changes caused by temperature. In this case, adjusting the tire inflation pressure will turn off the warning light (after a few minutes).

■ **When a tire is replaced with a spare tire (vehicles with a spare tire)**

The spare tire is also equipped with a tire pressure warning valve and transmitter. The tire pressure warning light will turn on if the tire inflation pressure of the spare tire is low. If a tire goes flat, the tire pressure warning light will not turn off even though the flat tire has been replaced with the spare tire.

■ **Conditions that the tire pressure warning system may not function properly**

→P. 465

■ **If the tire pressure warning light frequently comes on after blinking for 1 minute**

If the tire pressure warning light frequently comes on after blinking for 1 minute when the power switch is turned to ON mode, have it checked by your Lexus dealer.

■ **Warning buzzer**

In some cases, the buzzer may not be heard due to ambient noise or sounds from the audio system.

■ **Customization**

The vehicle speed linked seat belt reminder buzzer can be disabled.
(Customizable features →P. 579)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ If both the ABS and the brake system warning lights remain on

Stop your vehicle in a safe place immediately and contact your Lexus dealer. The vehicle will become extremely unstable during braking, and the ABS system may fail, which could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

■ When the electric power steering system warning light comes on

The steering wheel may become extremely heavy.
If the steering wheel becomes heavier than usual when operating, hold firmly and operate using more force than usual.

■ If the tire pressure warning light comes on

Be sure to observe the following precautions. Failure to do so could cause a loss of vehicle control and result in death or serious injury.

▶ Vehicles with a spare tire

- As the tire inflation pressure may be low when this warning light is illuminated, stop your vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible and adjust the tire inflation pressure immediately.
- If the tire pressure warning light comes on even after tire inflation pressure adjustment, it is probable that you have a flat tire. Check the tires. If a tire is flat, change it with the spare tire and have the flat tire repaired by the nearest Lexus dealer.
- Avoid abrupt maneuvering and braking. If the vehicle tires deteriorate, you could lose control of the steering wheel or the brakes.

▶ Vehicles with run-flat tires

- Decelerate to the lowest appropriate speed as soon as possible. Do not drive over 50 mph (80 km/h).
- Check and adjust the tire inflation pressure immediately.
- If the tire pressure warning light comes on even after tire inflation pressure adjustment, it is probable that you have a flat tire. Have the tire replaced by the nearest Lexus dealer.
- Avoid abrupt maneuvering and braking. If the vehicle tires deteriorate, you could lose control of the steering wheel or the brakes.

■ If a blowout or sudden air leakage should occur

The tire pressure warning system may not activate immediately.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Maintenance of the tires

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label (tire and load information label). (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label [tire and load information label], you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS-tire pressure warning system) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light) when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light) illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light).

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light). When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) to continue to function properly.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **To ensure the tire pressure warning system operates properly**

Do not install tires with different specifications or makers, as the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

If a warning message is displayed

The multi-information display shows warnings for system malfunctions, incorrectly performed operations, and messages that indicate a need for maintenance. When a message is shown, perform the correction procedure appropriate to the message.

① Master warning light

The master warning light also comes on or flashes in order to indicate that a message is currently being displayed on the multi-information display.

② Multi-information display

If any of the warning messages is shown again after the following actions have been performed, contact your Lexus dealer.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Messages and warnings

The warning lights and warning buzzers operate as follows depending on the content of the message. If a message indicates the need for inspection by a dealer, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

	System warning light	Warning buzzer*	Warning
Remains on	—	Sounds	Indicates an important situation such as the malfunction of the system related to driving that may result in danger
—	Remains on or flashes	Sounds	Indicates an important situation such as the malfunction of the system shown on the multi-information display
Flashes	—	Sounds	Indicates a situation such as damage to the vehicle that may result in danger
Remains on	—	Does not sound	Indicates a condition such as a malfunction of electrical components and the need for maintenance
Flashes	—	Does not sound	Indicates a situation such as the incorrect performance of an operation and how to perform the operation correctly

*: A buzzer sounds the first time a message is shown on the multi-information display.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Warning message in radar cruise mode (if equipped)**

In the following cases, the warning message may not be displayed even if vehicle-to-vehicle distance decreases:

- When your vehicle and the vehicle ahead are traveling at the same speed or the vehicle ahead is traveling more quickly than your vehicle
- When the vehicle ahead is traveling at a very low speed
- Immediately after cruise control speed is set
- At the instant the accelerator pedal is depressed

■ **The LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) lane departure warning function (if equipped)**

In the following cases, the warning message will not be displayed even if a lane line is crossed.

- When the vehicle speed deviates from the operating range of the LKA system functions
- When the lane lines cannot be recognized
- When the steering wheel is turned as far as necessary to cause the vehicle to change lanes

■ **System warning lights**

The master warning light does not come on or flash in the following cases. Instead, a separate system warning light will come on or flash along with the message shown on the multi-information display.

- Malfunction of the brake system
  The brake system warning light (red indicator) comes on. (→P. 499)
- Malfunction of the regenerative brake system, electronically controlled brake system or electric parking brake
  The brake system warning light (yellow indicator) comes on. (→P. 501)
- Malfunction of the ABS
  The ABS warning light comes on. (→P. 500)
- Malfunction of the charging system
  The charging system warning light comes on. (→P. 500)
- Indicates that a door or the trunk is not fully closed
  The open door warning light comes on. (→P. 502)
- High engine coolant temperature
  The needle of the engine coolant temperature gauge enters the red zone. (→P. 538)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **If "Oil maintenance required" is shown**

Indicates that the engine oil should be changed. (After the engine oil is changed and the oil maintenance data has been reset.)

Check and change the engine oil, and oil filter by your Lexus dealer. After changing the engine oil, the oil change system should be reset. (→P. 448)

■ **If "Maintenance required" is shown (U.S.A. only)**

Perform the necessary maintenance.
Please reset the message after the maintenance is performed. (→P. 430)

■ **If "Hybrid System Overheat" is shown**

Coping method: →P. 538
This message may be displayed when driving under severe operating conditions. (For example, when driving up a long steep hill.)

■ **Warning buzzer**

In some cases, the buzzer may not be heard due to ambient noise or sounds from the audio system.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

If you have a flat tire (vehicles with a spare tire)

Your vehicle is equipped with a spare tire. The flat tire can be replaced with the spare tire.

For details about tires: →P. 459

⚠ CAUTION

■ If you have a flat tire

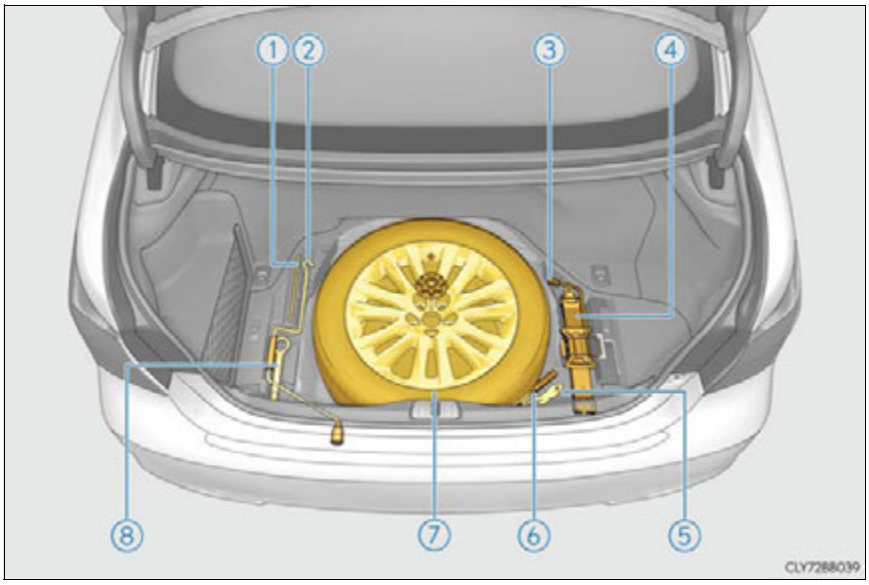
Do not continue driving with a flat tire.
Driving even a short distance with a flat tire can damage the tire and the wheel beyond repair, which could result in an accident.

Before jacking up the vehicle

- Stop the vehicle on a hard, flat surface.
- Set the parking brake.
- Shift the shift lever to P.
- Stop the hybrid system.
- Turn on the emergency flashers. (→P. 490)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Location of the spare tire, jack and tools



1. Parking brake release tool
2. Jack handle
3. Wheel nut wrench
4. Jack
5. Tools
6. Screwdriver
7. Spare tire
8. Towing eyelet

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Using the tire jack

Observe the following precautions.
Improper use of the tire jack may cause the vehicle to suddenly fall off the jack, leading to death or serious injury.

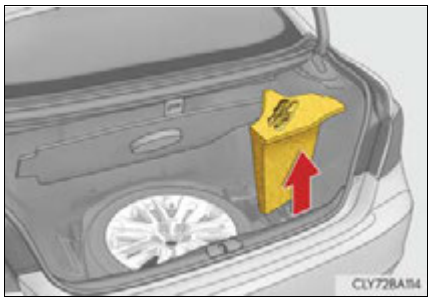
- Do not use the tire jack for any purpose other than replacing tires or installing and removing tire chains.
- Only use the tire jack that comes with this vehicle for replacing a flat tire.
  Do not use it on other vehicles, and do not use other tire jacks for replacing tires on this vehicle.
- Put the jack properly in its jack point.
- Do not put any part of your body under the vehicle while it is supported by the jack.
- Do not start the hybrid system or drive the vehicle while the vehicle is supported by the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle while someone is inside.
- When raising the vehicle, do not put an object on or under the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle to a height greater than that required to replace the tire.
- Use a jack stand if it is necessary to get under the vehicle.
- Be sure to turn off the height control and stop the hybrid system.
- When lowering the vehicle, make sure that there is no-one near the vehicle. If there are people nearby, warn them vocally before lowering.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

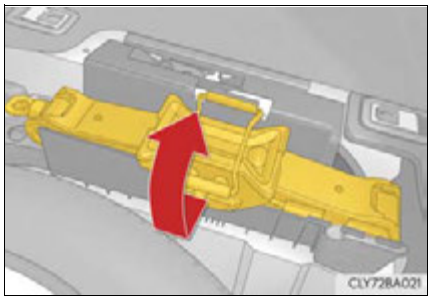
Taking out the jack and jack handle

1 Lift up the luggage mat and secure it by using the hook provided. (→P. 378)

2 Remove the tool tray.



3 Remove the jack after removing the hook.



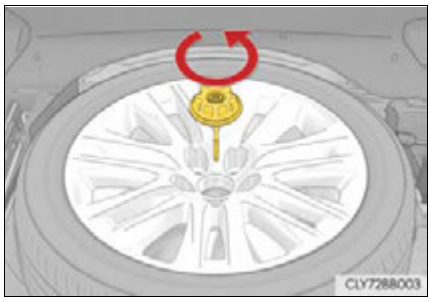
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Taking out the spare tire

1 Lift up the luggage mat and secure it by using the hook provided. (→P. 378)

2 Loosen the center fastener that secures the spare tire.

If the center fastener cannot be turned by hand, use the wheel nut wrench that is stored in the trunk. (To secure the tire, tighten the center fastener by hand. Do not use the wrench or other tools.)



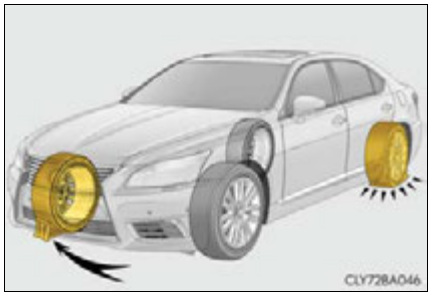
⚠ CAUTION

■ When storing the spare tire

Be careful not to catch fingers or other body parts between the spare tire and the body of the vehicle.

Replacing a flat tire

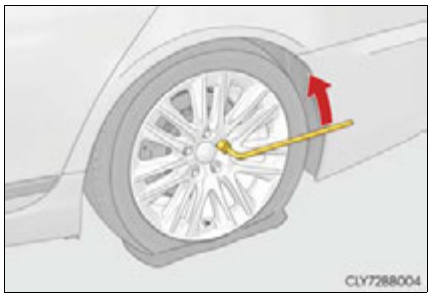
1 Chock the tires.



Flat tire		Wheel chock positions
Front	Left-hand side	Behind the rear right-hand side tire
	Right-hand side	Behind the rear left-hand side tire
Rear	Left-hand side	In front of the front right-hand side tire
	Right-hand side	In front of the front left-hand side tire

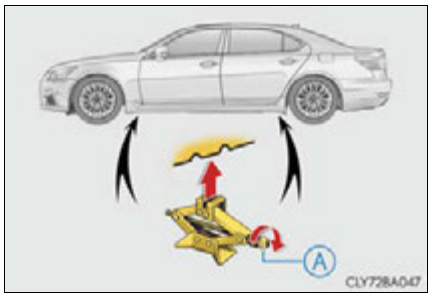
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

2 Slightly loosen the wheel nuts (one turn).

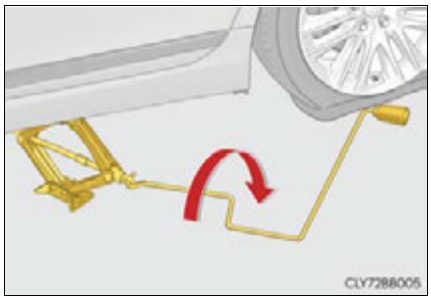


3 Turn the tire jack portion "A" by hand until the notch of the jack is in contact with the jack point.

The jack point guides are located under the rocker panel. They indicate the jack point positions.

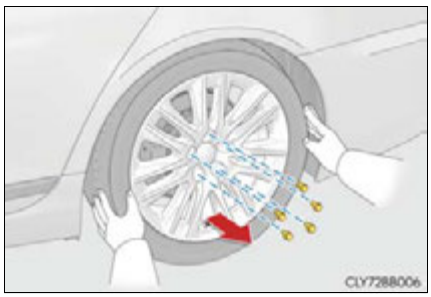


4 Raise the vehicle until the tire is slightly raised off the ground.



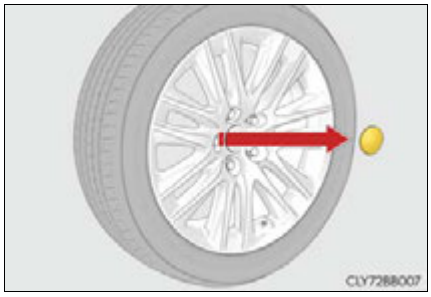
5 Remove all the wheel nuts and the tire.

When resting the tire on the ground, place the tire so that the wheel design faces up to avoid scratching the wheel surface.



DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

6 Remove the wheel ornament by pushing from the reverse side.



⚠ CAUTION

■ Replacing a flat tire

● Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in serious injury:

- Do not try to remove the wheel ornament by hand. Take due care in handling the ornament to avoid unexpected personal injury.
- Do not touch the disc wheels or the area around the brakes immediately after the vehicle has been driven.
  After the vehicle has been driven the disc wheels and the area around the brakes will be extremely hot. Touching these areas with hands, feet or other body parts while changing a tire, etc. may result in burns.

● Failure to follow these precautions could cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the tire to fall off, resulting in death or serious injury.

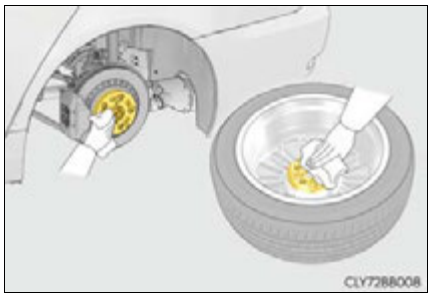
- Never use oil or grease on the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.
  Oil and grease may cause the wheel nuts to be excessively tightened, leading to bolt or disc wheel damage. In addition, the oil or grease can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel may fall off, causing a serious accident. Remove any oil or grease from the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.
- Have the wheel nuts tightened with a torque wrench to 103 ft•lbf (140 N•m, 14.3 kgf•m) as soon as possible after changing wheels.
- Do not attach a heavily damaged wheel ornament, as it may fly off the wheel while the vehicle is moving.
- When installing a tire, only use wheel nuts that have been specifically designed for that wheel.
- If there are any cracks or deformations in the bolt screws, nut threads or bolt holes of the wheel, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Installing the spare tire

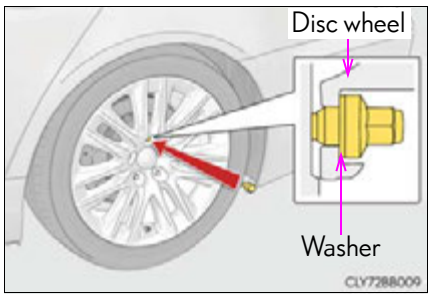
1 Remove any dirt or foreign matter from the wheel contact surface.

If foreign matter is on the wheel contact surface, the wheel nuts may loosen while the vehicle is in motion, causing the tire to come off.

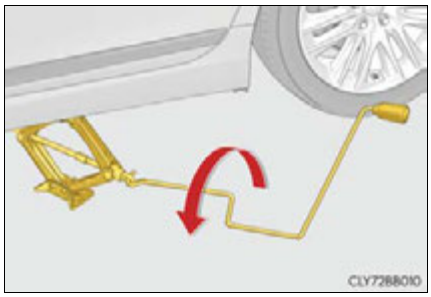


2 Install the spare tire and loosely tighten each wheel nut by hand by approximately the same amount.

Turn the wheel nuts until the washers come into contact with the disc wheel.

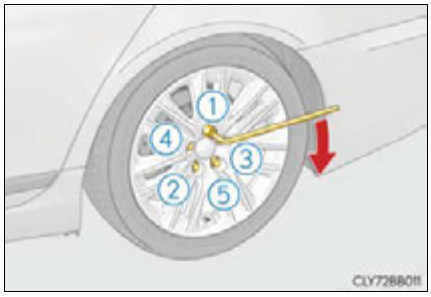


3 Lower the vehicle.



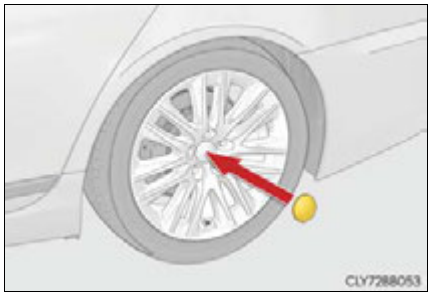
4 Firmly tighten each wheel nut two or three times in the order shown in the illustration.

Tightening torque:
103 ft•lbf (140 N•m, 14.3 kgf•m)



DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

5 Reinstall the wheel ornament.



6 Stow the flat tire, tire jack and all tools.

⚠ CAUTION

■ After using the tools and jack

Before driving, make sure all the tools and jack are securely in place in their storage location to reduce the possibility of personal injury during a collision or sudden braking.

⚠ NOTICE

■ When replacing the tires

When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, contact your Lexus dealer as the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may be damaged if not handled correctly.

■ To avoid damage to the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

When a tire is repaired with liquid sealants, the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may not operate properly. If a liquid sealant is used, contact your Lexus dealer or other qualified service shop as soon as possible. Make sure to replace the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter when replacing the tire. (→P. 461)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

If you have a flat tire (vehicles with run-flat tires)

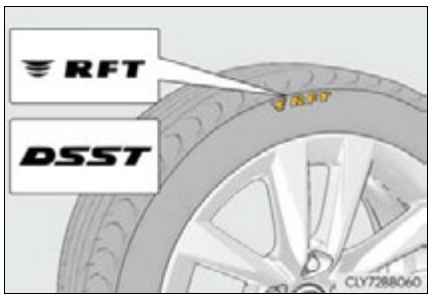
Your vehicle is not equipped with a spare tire, but instead you can continue driving the vehicle with run-flat tires even if any tire goes flat.

In this case, slow down and drive with extra caution.

■ Run-flat tires (A "RFT" or "DSST" mark is molded on the sidewall)

Take your vehicle to the nearest Lexus dealer or authorized tire dealer as soon as possible if any tire goes flat.

The vehicle can be driven for a maximum of 99 miles (160 km) at a speed below 50 mph (80 km/h) after the tire pressure warning light comes on. (→P. 503)



■ In some conditions (such as at high temperatures)

You cannot continue driving for up to 99 miles (160 km).

■ For the detailed information on run-flat tires

See the tire warranty booklet.

■ When replacing the tires

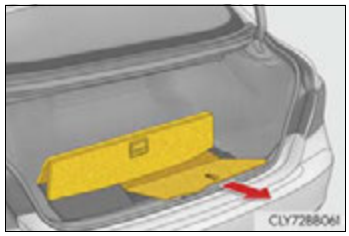
→P. 517

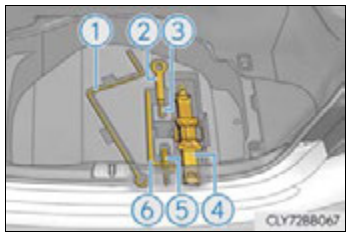
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Location of the jack and tools**

1 Lift up the handle and fold the trunk floor back. (→P. 378)

2 Remove the tool tray cover.





① Jack handle
② Towing eyelet
③ Parking brake release tool
④ Jack*
⑤ Screwdriver
⑥ Wheel nut wrench

*: Use of the jack (→P. 517)

⚠ NOTICE

■ **When replacing the tires**

When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, contact your Lexus dealer as the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may be damaged if not handled correctly.

■ **When driving over bumps**

If a vehicle has a flat tire, the vehicle height will be lower than usual. Ensure that nothing strikes the bottom of the vehicle.

■ **To avoid damage to the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters**

When a tire is repaired with liquid sealants, the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may not operate properly. If a liquid sealant is used, contact your Lexus dealer or other qualified service shop as soon as possible. Make sure to replace the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter when replacing the tire. (→P. 461)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

If the hybrid system will not start

Reasons for the hybrid system not starting vary depending on the situation. Check the following and perform the appropriate procedure:

The hybrid system will not start even though the correct starting procedure is being followed. (→P. 218)

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- The electronic key may not be functioning properly. (→P. 533)
- There may not be sufficient fuel in the vehicle's tank.
  Refuel the vehicle.
- There may be a malfunction in the immobilizer system. (→P. 88)
- There may be a malfunction in the steering lock system.
- The hybrid system may be malfunctioning due to an electrical problem such as electronic key battery depletion or a blown fuse. However, depending on the type of malfunction, an interim measure is available to start the hybrid system. (→P. 525)

The interior lights and headlights are dim, or the horn does not sound or sounds at a low volume.

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- The 12-volt battery may be discharged. (→P. 534)
- The 12-volt battery terminal connections may be loose or corroded.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

The interior lights and headlights do not turn on, or the horn does not sound.

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- One or both of the 12-volt battery terminals may be disconnected.
- The 12-volt battery may be discharged. (→P. 534)

Contact your Lexus dealer if the problem cannot be repaired, or if repair procedures are unknown.

Emergency start function

When the hybrid system does not start, the following steps can be used as an interim measure to start the hybrid system if the power switch is functioning normally:

1. Turn the power switch to ON mode (→P. 219) and check that the parking brake is set.
2. Shift the shift lever to P.
3. Turn the power switch to ACCESSORY mode.
4. Press and hold the power switch for about 15 seconds while depressing the brake pedal firmly.

Even if the hybrid system can be started using the above steps, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P

If the shift lever cannot be shifted with your foot on the brake pedal, there may be a problem with the shift lock system (a system to prevent accidental operation of the shift lever). Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.
The following steps may be used as an emergency measure to ensure that the shift lever can be shifted:

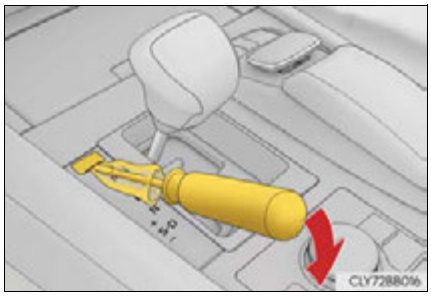
1 Turn the power switch to ON mode (→P. 219) and check that the parking brake is set.

2 Turn the power switch to ACCESSORY mode.

3 Depress the brake pedal.

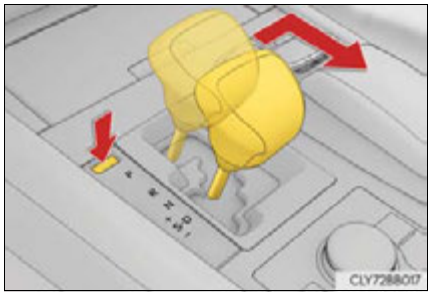
4 Pry the cover up with a flathead screwdriver or equivalent tool.

To prevent damage to the cover, cover the tip of the screwdriver with a rag.



5 Press the shift lock override button.

The shift lever can be shifted while the button is pressed.



DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

If the parking brake cannot be released

In the event that the 12-volt battery is discharged or switch operation does not release the parking brake, the parking brake can be released manually using the procedure below. This procedure should be performed only if necessary, such as in an emergency.
If the switch cannot be operated even when the 12-volt battery is normal, the parking brake system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

Before releasing the parking brake manually

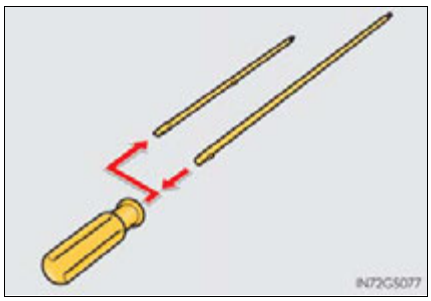
- Shift the shift lever to P.
- Turn the power switch off.
- Check that the parking brake indicator is off.
- Chock the tires.

Releasing the parking brake manually

▶ Vehicles with a spare tire

1 Take out the parking brake release tool and the screwdriver from the trunk. (→P. 514)

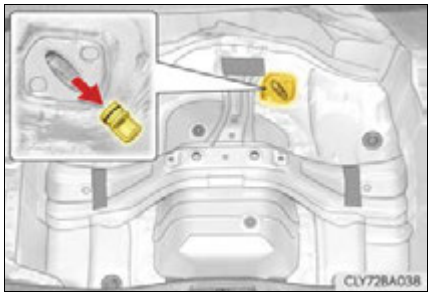
2 Replace the screwdriver head with the parking brake release tool.



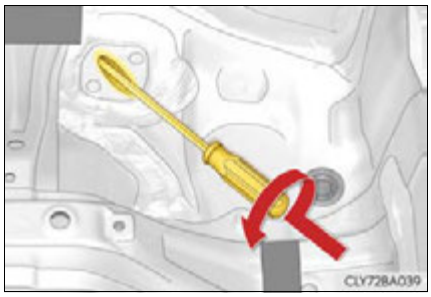
3 Take out the spare tire. (→P. 517)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

4 Remove the plug.



5 Insert the tool and press it down firmly while turning it counter-clockwise until it stops.

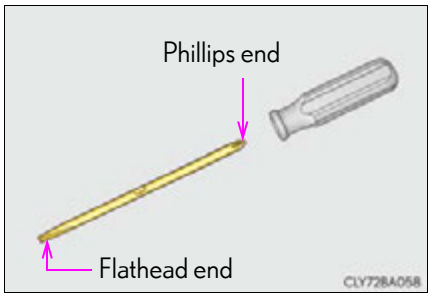


▶ Vehicles with run-flat tires

1 Take out the parking brake release tool and the screwdriver from the trunk. (→P. 523)

2 Check that the flathead end of the screwdriver is exposed.

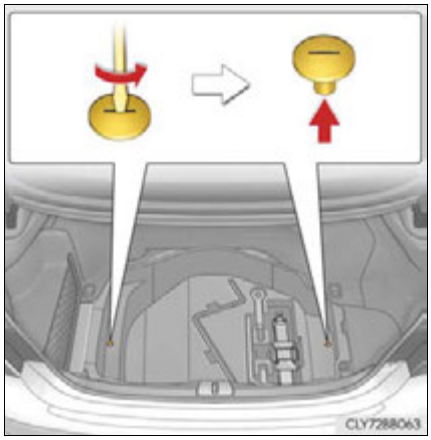
If the Phillips end is exposed, reinsert the screwdriver shaft so the flathead end is exposed.



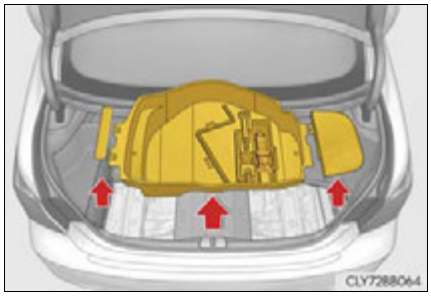
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

3 Using the flathead end of the screwdriver, remove the clips.

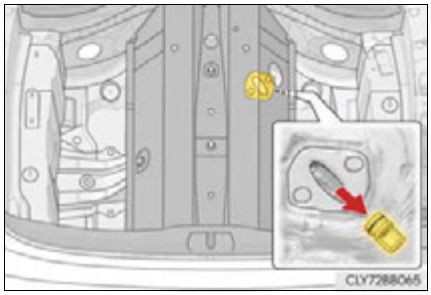
When installing the tool tray clips:
→P. 530



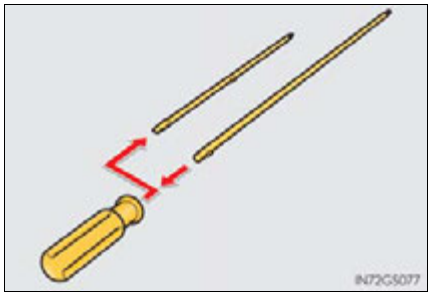
4 Take out the tool tray and side deck boards.



5 Remove the plug.

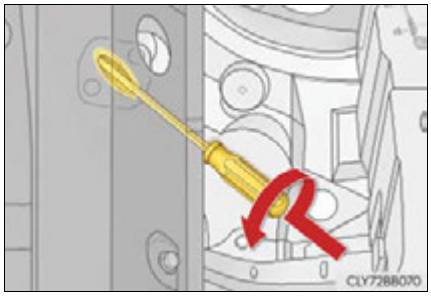


6 Replace the screwdriver head with the parking brake release tool.



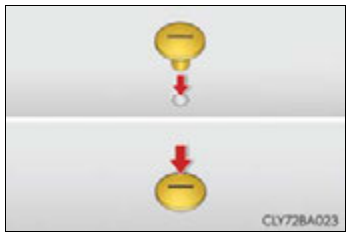
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

7 Insert the tool and press it down firmly while turning it counter-clockwise until it stops.



■ When installing the tool tray clips (vehicles with run-flat tires)

Install the clips as shown in the illustration.



■ Manual operation of the parking brake

The parking brake cannot be set manually.

⚠ CAUTION

■ When releasing the parking brake manually

- Shift the shift lever to P, turn the power switch off and chock the tires.
  Failure to do so may cause the vehicle to move, resulting in an accident.
- Turn the power switch off and check that the parking brake indicator is off.
  Failure to do so may cause the system to operate and turn the inserted parking brake release tool, resulting in an injury.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

If the electronic key does not operate properly

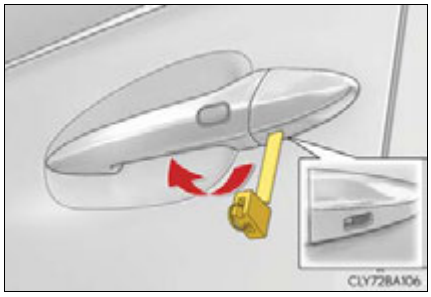
If communication between the electronic key and vehicle is interrupted (→P. 136) or the electronic key cannot be used because the battery is depleted, the smart access system with push-button start and wireless remote control cannot be used. In such cases, the doors and trunk can be opened and the hybrid system can be started by following the procedure below.

Locking and unlocking the doors, unlocking the trunk and key linked functions

Use the mechanical key built in to the electronic keys to operate the doors. (→P. 123)

■ Doors

1 Remove the cover on the driver's door handle.



2 Locks and unlocks the doors

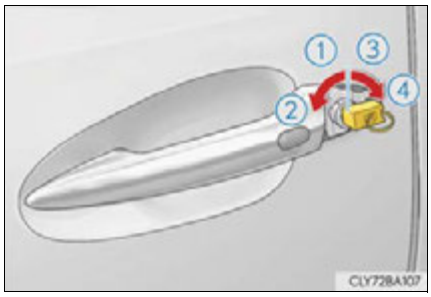
① Locks all the doors

② Closes the windows and moon roof (turn and hold)

③ Unlocks the door

Turning the key rearward unlocks the driver's door. Turning the key once again unlocks the other doors.

④ Opens the windows and moon roof (turn and hold)

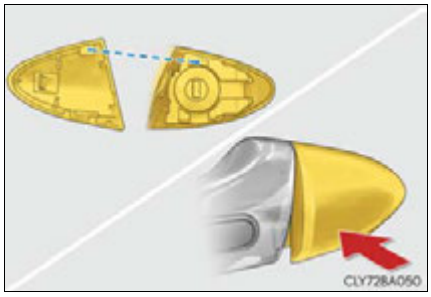


DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

3 After the operation is completed, reinstall the cover.

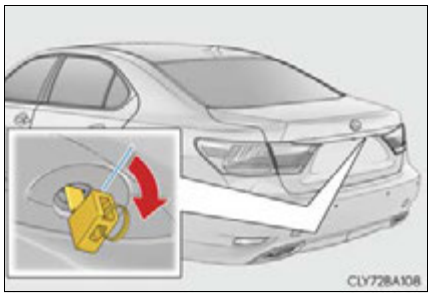
Hook the upper claw of the cover onto the upper catch on the vehicle side, and then push on the lower side of the cover.

Make sure that the lower claw of the cover is securely fastened to the lower catch on the vehicle side. If the cover is not securely attached, it may fall off while driving.



■ Trunk

Turn the mechanical key clockwise to open.



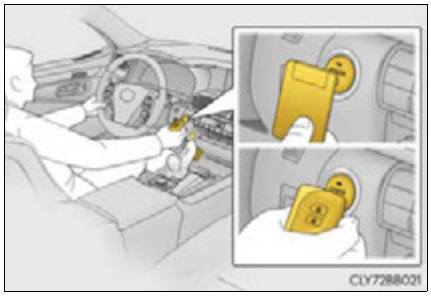
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Starting the hybrid system

1 Ensure that the shift lever is in P and depress the brake pedal.

2 Touch the Lexus emblem side of the electronic key to the power switch.

If any of the doors is opened or closed after the key was touched to the switch to start the vehicle, an alarm will sound to indicate that the start function cannot detect the key.



3 Press the power switch within 10 seconds of the buzzer sounding, keeping the brake pedal depressed.

In the event that the hybrid system still cannot be started, contact your Lexus dealer.

Stopping the hybrid system

Shift the shift lever to P and press the power switch as you normally do when stopping the hybrid system.

Replacing the key battery

As the above procedure is a temporary measure, it is recommended that the electronic key battery be replaced immediately when the battery is depleted. (→P. 478)

Changing power switch modes

Within 10 seconds of the buzzer sounding, release the brake pedal and press the power switch.
The hybrid system does not start and modes will be changed each time the switch is pressed. (→P. 219)

⚠ CAUTION

When using the mechanical key and operating the power windows or moon roof

Operate the power window or moon roof after checking to make sure that there is no possibility of any passenger having any of their body parts caught in the window or moon roof.
Also, do not allow children to operate the mechanical key. It is possible for children and other passengers to get caught in the power window or moon roof.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

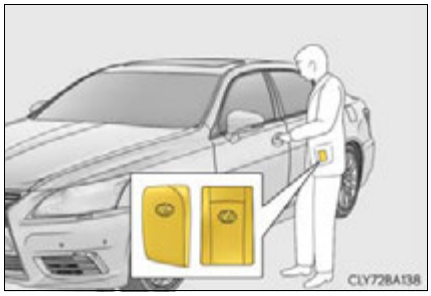
If the 12-volt battery is discharged

The following procedures may be used to start the hybrid system if the 12-volt battery is discharged.
You can also call your Lexus dealer or a qualified repair shop.

If you have a set of jumper (or booster) cables and a second vehicle with a 12-volt battery, you can jump start your vehicle by following the steps below.

1 Confirm that the electronic key is being carried.

When connecting the jumper (or booster) cables, depending on the situation, the alarm may activate and doors locked. (→P. 91)

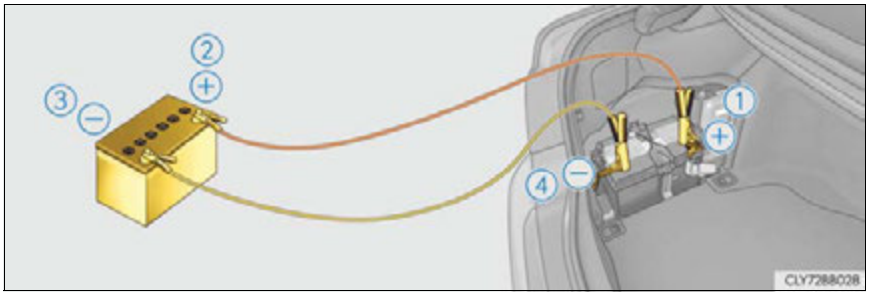


2 Open the trunk lid and remove the 12-volt battery cover. (→P. 455)

In the event that the trunk opener cannot be used, use the mechanical key to open the trunk. (→P. 531)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

3 Connect the jumper cables according to the following procedure:



① Positive (+) battery terminal on your vehicle

② Positive (+) battery terminal on the second vehicle

③ Negative (-) battery terminal on the second vehicle

④ Negative (-) battery terminal on your vehicle

4 Start the engine of the second vehicle. Increase the engine speed slightly and maintain at that level for approximately 5 minutes to recharge the 12-volt battery of your vehicle.

5 Open and close any of the doors of your vehicle with the power switch off.

6 Maintain the engine speed of the second vehicle and start the hybrid system of your vehicle by turning the power switch to ON mode.

7 Make sure the "READY" indicator comes on. If the indicator does not come on, contact your Lexus dealer.

8 Once the hybrid system has started, remove the jumper cables in the exact reverse order from which they were connected.

Once the hybrid system starts, have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Starting the hybrid system when the 12-volt battery is discharged**

The hybrid system cannot be started by push-starting.

■ **To prevent 12-volt battery discharge**

- Turn off the headlights and the audio system while the hybrid system is off.
- Turn off any unnecessary electrical components when the vehicle is running at a low speed for an extended period, such as in heavy traffic.

■ **When the 12-volt battery is removed or discharged**

The hybrid system may not start. (→P. 456)

■ **Charging the 12-volt battery**

The electricity stored in the 12-volt battery will discharge gradually even when the vehicle is not in use, due to natural discharge and the draining effects of certain electrical appliances. If the vehicle is left for a long time, the 12-volt battery may discharge, and the hybrid system may be unable to start. (The 12-volt battery recharges automatically while the hybrid system is operating.)

■ **When recharging or replacing the 12-volt battery**

In some cases, it may not be possible to unlock the doors using the smart access system with push-button start when the 12-volt battery is discharged. Use the wireless remote control or the mechanical key to lock or unlock the doors.

■ **If the 12-volt battery is discharged**

The information stored in the computer will be deleted.
If the 12-volt battery is discharged, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ Avoiding 12-volt battery fires or explosions

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidentally igniting the flammable gas that may be emitted from the 12-volt battery:

- Make sure each jumper cable is connected to the correct terminal and that it is not unintentionally in contact with any other than the intended terminal.
- Do not allow the other end of the jumper cable connected to the "+" terminal to come into contact with any other parts or metal surfaces in the area, such as brackets or unpainted metal.
- Do not allow the + and - clamps of the jumper cables to come into contact with each other.
- Do not smoke, use matches, cigarette lighters or allow open flame near the 12-volt battery.

■ 12-volt battery precautions

The 12-volt battery contains poisonous and corrosive acidic electrolyte, while related parts contain lead and lead compounds. Observe the following precautions when handling the 12-volt battery:

- When working with the 12-volt battery, always wear safety glasses and take care not to allow any 12-volt battery fluids (acid) to come into contact with skin, clothing or the vehicle body.
- Do not lean over the 12-volt battery.
- In the event that 12-volt battery fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, immediately wash the affected area with water and seek medical attention.
  Place a wet sponge or cloth over the affected area until medical attention can be received.
- Always wash your hands after handling the 12-volt battery support, terminals, and other battery-related parts.
- Do not allow children near the 12-volt battery.

■ After recharging the 12-volt battery

Have the 12-volt battery inspected at your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.
If the 12-volt battery is deteriorating, continued use may cause the 12-volt battery to emit a malodorous gas, which may be detrimental to the health of passengers.

■ When replacing the 12-volt battery

→P. 458

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

If your vehicle overheats

The following may indicate that your vehicle is overheating.

- The needle of the engine coolant temperature gauge (→P. 99) enters the red zone or a loss of hybrid system power is experienced. (For example, the vehicle speed does not increase.)
- "Hybrid System Overheat" is shown on the multi-information display.
- Steam comes out from under the hood.

Correction procedures

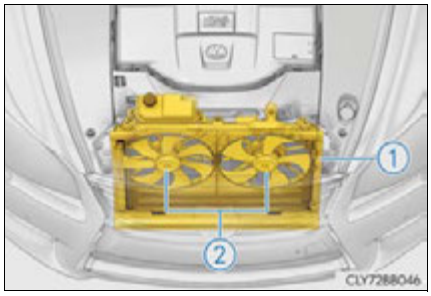
If the needle of the engine coolant temperature gauge enters the red zone

1 Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn off the air conditioning system, and then stop the hybrid system.

2 If you see steam:
Carefully lift the hood after the steam subsides.

If you do not see steam:
Carefully lift the hood.

3 After the hybrid system has cooled down sufficiently, inspect the hoses and radiator core (radiator) for any leaks.



① Radiator

② Cooling fans

If a large amount of coolant leaks, immediately contact your Lexus dealer.

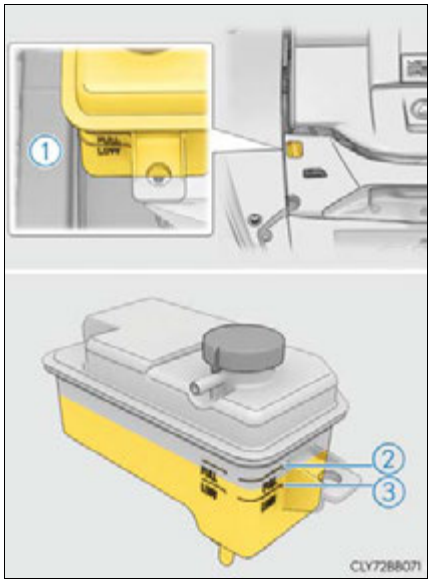
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

4 The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the "FULL" and "LOW" lines on the reservoir.

① Reservoir

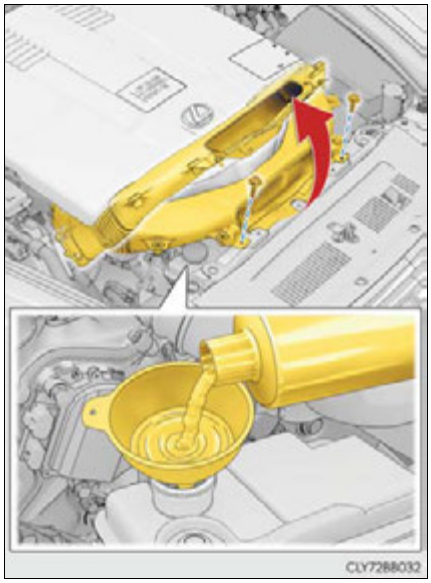
② "FULL"

③ "LOW"



5 Add coolant if necessary. (→P. 444)

Water can be used in an emergency if coolant is unavailable.



DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

6 Start the hybrid system and turn the air conditioning system on to check that the radiator cooling fan operates and to check for coolant leaks from the radiator or hoses.

The fan operates when the air conditioning system is turned on immediately after a cold start. Confirm that the fan is operating by checking the fan sound and air flow. If it is difficult to check these, turn the air conditioning system on and off repeatedly.
(The fan may not operate in freezing temperatures.)

7 If the fan is not operating:
Stop the hybrid system immediately and contact your Lexus dealer.

If the fan is operating:
Have the vehicle inspected at the nearest Lexus dealer.

If "Hybrid System Overheat" is shown on the multi-information display

1 Stop the vehicle in a safe place.

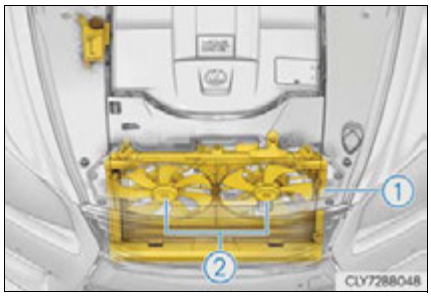
2 Stop the hybrid system and carefully lift the hood.

3 After the hybrid system has cooled down, inspect the hoses and radiator core (radiator) for any leaks.

① Radiator

② Cooling fans

If a large amount of coolant leaks, immediately contact your Lexus dealer.



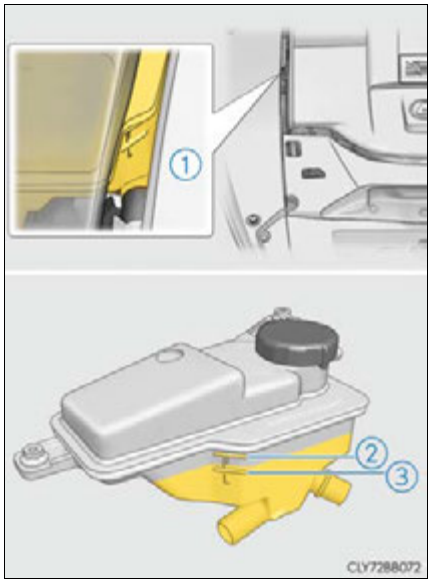
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

4 The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the "F" and "L" lines on the reservoir.

① Reservoir

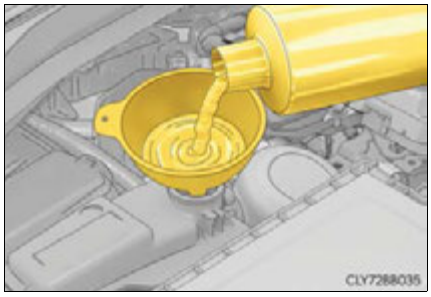
② "F"

③ "L"



5 Add coolant if necessary. (→P. 444)

Water can be used in an emergency if coolant is unavailable.



6 Start the hybrid system and check for the multi-information display.

If the message does not disappear:
Stop the hybrid system and contact your Lexus dealer.

If the message is not displayed:
Have the vehicle inspected at the nearest Lexus dealer.

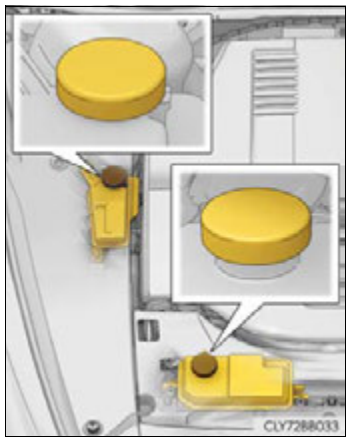
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ When inspecting under the hood of your vehicle

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in serious injury such as burns.

- If steam is seen coming from under the hood, do not open the hood until the steam has subsided. The engine compartment may be very hot.
- After the hybrid system has been turned off, check that the indicator on the power switch and the "READY" indicator are off.
  When the hybrid system is operating, the gasoline engine may automatically start, or the cooling fan may suddenly operate even if the gasoline engine stops. Do not touch or approach rotating parts such as the fan, which may lead to fingers or clothing (especially a tie, a scarf or a muffler) getting caught, resulting in serious injury.
- Do not loosen the coolant reservoir caps while the hybrid system and radiator are hot.
  High temperature steam or coolant could spray out.



⚠ NOTICE

■ When adding engine/power control unit coolant

Add coolant slowly after the hybrid system has cooled down sufficiently. Adding cool coolant to a hot hybrid system too quickly can cause damage to the hybrid system.

■ To prevent damage to the cooling system

Observe the following precautions:

- Avoid contaminating the coolant with foreign matter (such as sand or dust etc.).
- Do not use any coolant additive.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

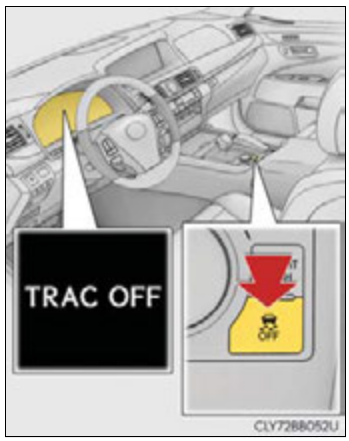
If the vehicle becomes stuck

Carry out the following procedures if the tires spin or the vehicle becomes stuck in mud, dirt or snow:

1. Stop the hybrid system. Set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to P.
2. Remove the mud, snow or sand from around the rear wheels.
3. Place wood, stones or some other material under the rear wheels to help provide traction.
4. Restart the hybrid system.
5. Shift the shift lever to D or R and release the parking brake. Then, while exercising caution, depress the accelerator pedal.

When it is difficult to free the vehicle

Press to turn off TRAC.



DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ When attempting to free a stuck vehicle

If you choose to push the vehicle back and forth to free it, make sure the surrounding area is clear to avoid striking other vehicles, objects or people. The vehicle may also lunge forward or lunge back suddenly as it becomes free. Use extreme caution.

■ When shifting the shift lever

Be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed.
This may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

⚠ NOTICE

■ To avoid damaging the transmission and other components

- Avoid spinning the rear wheels and depressing the accelerator pedal more than necessary.
- If the vehicle remains stuck even after these procedures are performed, the vehicle may require towing to be freed.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Vehicle specifications 8

8-1. Specifications
Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.) 546
Fuel information 557
Tire information 560
8-2. Customization
Customizable features 571

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.)

Dimensions and weight

Overall length		205.1 in. (5210 mm)
Overall width		73.8 in. (1875 mm)
Overall height*1		58.3 in. (1480 mm)
Wheelbase		121.7 in. (3090 mm)
Tread	Front	63.4 in. (1610 mm)
	Rear	63.4 in. (1610 mm)
Vehicle capacity weight (Occupants + luggage)		825 lb. (375 kg)*2 660 lb. (300 kg)*3

*1: Unladen vehicles

*2: 5-seat models

*3: 4-seat models

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

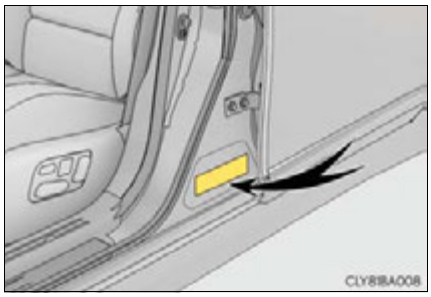
Vehicle identification

Vehicle identification number

The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the legal identifier for your vehicle. This is the primary identification number for your Lexus. It is used in registering the ownership of your vehicle.

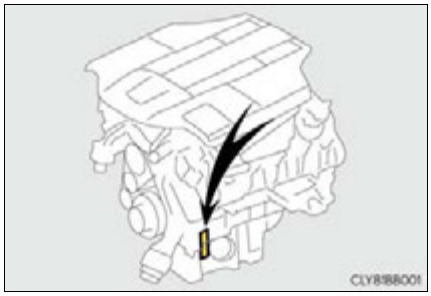
This number is stamped on the top left of the instrument panel and in the engine compartment.

This number is also on the Certification Label.



Engine number

The engine number is stamped on the engine block as shown.



DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Engine

Model	5.0 L 8-cylinder (2UR-FSE)
Type	8-cylinder V type, 4-cycle, gasoline
Bore and stroke	3.70 × 3.52 in. (94.0 × 89.5 mm)
Displacement	303.2 cu. in. (4969 cm^3)
Valve clearance (engine cold)	Automatic adjustment
Drive belt tension	Automatic adjustment

Fuel

Fuel type	Premium unleaded gasoline only
Octane Rating	91 (Research Octane Number 96) or higher
Fuel tank capacity (Reference)	22.2 gal. (84 L, 18.4 Imp. gal.)

Electric motor (traction motor)

Type	Permanent magnet synchronous motor
Maximum output	165 kW
Maximum torque	221.3 ft•lbf (300 N•m, 30.6 kgf•m)

Hybrid battery (traction battery)

Type	Nickel-Metal hydride battery
Voltage	14.4 V/module
Capacity	6.5 Ah (3HR)
Quantity	20 modules
Overall voltage	288 V

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Lubrication system

Oil capacity Drain and refill (Reference*)	
With filter	9.5 qt. (9.0 L, 7.9 Imp. qt.)
Without filter	8.9 qt. (8.4 L, 7.4 Imp. qt.)

*: The engine oil capacity is a reference quantity to be used when changing the engine oil. Warm up the engine and turn off the hybrid system, wait more than 5 minutes, and check the oil level on the dipstick.

Engine oil selection

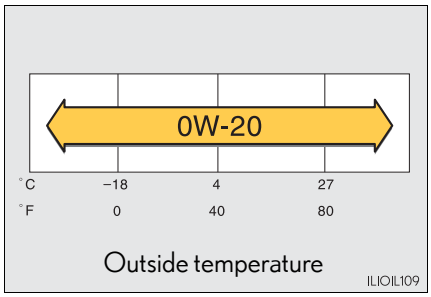
"Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" is used in your Lexus vehicle. Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent to satisfy the following grade and viscosity.

Oil grade: ILSAC GF-5 multigrade engine oil

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Recommended viscosity: SAE 0W-20

SAE 0W-20 is the best choice for good fuel economy and good starting in cold weather.
If SAE 0W-20 is not available, SAE 5W-20 oil may be used. However, it must be replaced with SAE 0W-20 at the next oil change.



Oil viscosity (0W-20 is explained here as an example):

- The 0W in 0W-20 indicates the characteristic of the oil which allows cold startability. Oils with a lower value before the W allow for easier starting of the engine in cold weather.
- The 20 in 0W-20 indicates the viscosity characteristic of the oil when the oil is at high temperature. An oil with a higher viscosity (one with a higher value) may be better suited if the vehicle is operated at high speeds, or under extreme load conditions.

How to read oil container label:

The International Lubricant Specification Advisory Committee (ILSAC) Certification Mark is added to some oil containers to help you select the oil you should use.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Cooling system

Capacity	Gasoline engine	11.7 qt. (11.1 L, 9.8 Imp. qt.)
	Power control unit	2.7 qt. (2.6 L, 2.3 Imp. qt.)
Coolant type		Use either of the following: • "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" • Similar high-quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology Do not use plain water alone.

Ignition system

Spark plug Make	DENSO FK20HBR11
Gap	0.043 in. (1.1 mm)

⚠ NOTICE

■ **Iridium-tipped spark plugs**

Use only iridium-tipped spark plugs. Do not adjust the spark plug gap.

Electrical system

12-volt battery Open voltage at 68°F (20°C):	12.5 V or higher Fully charged 11.0 — 12.4 V Half charged 10.9 V or lower Discharged (Voltage is checked 20 minutes after the hybrid system and all lights are turned off.)
Charging rates	5 A max.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Hybrid transmission

Fluid capacity*	5.8 qt. (5.5 L, 4.8 Imp. qt.)
Fluid type	Toyota Genuine ATF WS

*: The fluid capacity is the quantity of reference.
If replacement is necessary, contact your Lexus dealer.

⚠ NOTICE

■ Hybrid transmission fluid type

Using transmission fluid other than "Toyota Genuine ATF WS" may cause deterioration in shift quality, and ultimately damage the transmission of your vehicle.

Transfer

Oil capacity	0.74 qt. (0.7 L, 0.62 Imp. qt.)
Oil type and viscosity*	Toyota Genuine Transfer gear oil LL 80 or equivalent

*: Your Lexus vehicle is filled with Toyota genuine gear oil at the factory. Use Lexus approved Toyota genuine gear oil or an equivalent of matching quality to satisfy the above specification. Please contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

Front differential

Oil capacity	0.79 qt. (0.75 L, 0.66 Imp. qt.)
Oil type and viscosity*	Toyota Genuine Differential gear oil LT 75W-85 GL-5 or equivalent

*: Your Lexus vehicle is filled with "Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil" at the factory. Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil" or an equivalent of matching quality to satisfy the above specification. Please contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Rear differential

Oil capacity	1.42 qt. (1.35 L, 1.19 Imp. qt.)
Oil type and viscosity*	Toyota Genuine Differential gear oil LX 75W-85 GL-5 or equivalent

*: Your Lexus vehicle is filled with "Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil" at the factory. Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil" or an equivalent of matching quality to satisfy the above specification. Please contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

Brakes

Pedal clearance*	5.8 in. (147 mm) Min.
Pedal free play	0.04 - 0.08 in. (1.0 - 2.0 mm)
Brake pad wear limit	0.04 in. (1.0 mm)
Parking brake lining wear limit	0.04 in. (1.0 mm)
Fluid type	SAE J1703 or FMVSS No.116 DOT 3

*: Minimum pedal clearance when depressed with a force of 112 lbf (500 N, 51 kgf) while the hybrid system is operating.

When performing the brake pedal inspection, also be sure to check that the brake system warning light is not illuminated when the hybrid system is operating (If the brake system warning light is illuminated, refer to P. 499).

Steering

Free play	Less than 1.2 in. (30 mm)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Tires and wheels

▶ Type A

Tire size	245/45R19 98Y
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Driving under normal conditions Front: 35 psi (240 kPa, 2.4 kgf/cm^2 or bar) Rear: 36 psi (250 kPa, 2.5 kgf/cm^2 or bar) Spare: 36 psi (250 kPa, 2.5 kgf/cm^2 or bar) Driving at high speeds (above 100 mph [160 km/h]) (in countries where such speeds are permitted by law) Add 9 psi (60 kPa, 0.6 kgf/cm^2 or bar) to the front tires, 10 psi (70 kPa, 0.7 kgf/cm^2 or bar) to the rear tires. Never exceed the maximum cold tire inflation pressure indicated on the tire sidewall.
Wheel size	19 × 8J
Wheel nut torque	103 ft•lbf (140 N•m, 14.3 kgf•m)

▶ Type B

Tire size	P245/45R19 98V
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Driving under normal conditions Front: 35 psi (240 kPa, 2.4 kgf/cm^2 or bar) Rear: 36 psi (250 kPa, 2.5 kgf/cm^2 or bar) Spare: 36 psi (250 kPa, 2.5 kgf/cm^2 or bar) Driving at high speeds (above 100 mph [160 km/h]) (in countries where such speeds are permitted by law) Add 6 psi (40 kPa, 0.4 kgf/cm^2 or bar) to the front tires, 8 psi (50 kPa, 0.5 kgf/cm^2) to the rear tires. Never exceed the maximum cold tire inflation pressure indicated on the tire sidewall.
Wheel size	19 × 8J
Wheel nut torque	103 ft•lbf (140 N•m, 14.3 kgf•m)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

▶ Type C

Tire size	245/45RF19 98Y
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Driving under normal conditions Front: 36 psi (250 kPa, 2.5 kgf/cm^2 or bar) Rear: 36 psi (250 kPa, 2.5 kgf/cm^2 or bar) Driving at high speeds (above 100 mph [160 km/h]) (in countries where such speeds are permitted by law) Add 9 psi (60 kPa, 0.6 kgf/cm^2 or bar) to the front tires, 10 psi (70 kPa, 0.7 kgf/cm^2 or bar) to the rear tires. Never exceed the maximum cold tire inflation pressure indicated on the tire sidewall.
Wheel size	19 × 8J
Wheel nut torque	103 ft•lbf (140 N•m, 14.3 kgf•m)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Light bulbs

	Light bulbs	Bulb No.	W	Type
Interior	Vanity lights Front Rear	 — —	 8 3	 A B
	Trunk lid light	—	3.8	A
	Trunk light	—	3.8	A

A: Wedge base bulbs B: Double end bulbs

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Fuel information

You must only use unleaded gasoline.
Select premium unleaded gasoline with an octane rating of 91 (Research Octane Number 96) or higher required for optimum engine performance.
If 91 octane cannot be obtained, you may use unleaded gasoline with an octane rating as low as 87 (Research Octane Number 91). Use of unleaded gasoline with an octane rating lower than 91 may result in engine knocking and significantly reduced performance. Persistent knocking can lead to engine damage and should be corrected by refueling with higher octane unleaded gasoline.

At minimum, the gasoline you use should meet the specifications of ASTM D4814 in the U.S.A.

Gasoline quality

In very few cases, driveability problems may be caused by the brand of gasoline you are using. If driveability problems persist, try changing the brand of gasoline. If this does not correct the problem, consult your Lexus dealer.

Gasoline quality standards

- Automotive manufacturers in the U.S.A., Europe and Japan have developed a specification for fuel quality called the World-Wide Fuel Charter (WWFC), which is expected to be applied worldwide.
- The WWFC consists of four categories that are based on required emission levels. In the U.S., category 4 has been adopted.
- The WWFC improves air quality by lowering emissions in vehicle fleets, and improves customer satisfaction through better performance.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Recommendation of the use of gasoline containing detergent additives**

- Lexus recommends the use of gasoline that contains detergent additives to avoid the build-up of engine deposits.
- All gasoline sold in the U.S.A. contains minimum detergent additives to clean and/or keep clean intake systems, per EPA's lowest additives concentration program.
- Lexus strongly recommends the use of Top Tier Detergent Gasoline. For more information on Top Tier Detergent Gasoline and a list of marketers, please go to the official website www.toptiergas.com.

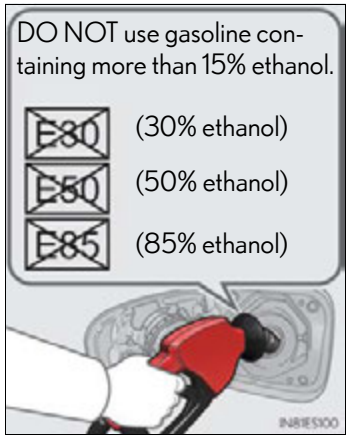
■ **Recommendation of the use of low emissions gasoline**

Gasolines containing oxygenates such as ethers and ethanol, as well as reformulated gasolines, are available in some cities. These fuels are typically acceptable for use, providing they meet other fuel requirements.

Lexus recommends these fuels, since the formulations allow for reduced vehicle emissions.

■ **Non-recommendation of the use of blended gasoline**

- Use only gasoline containing up to 15% ethanol.
  DO NOT use any flex-fuel or gasoline that could contain more than 15% ethanol, including from any pump labeled E30, E50, E85 (which are only some examples of fuel containing more than 15% ethanol).



- If you use gasohol in your vehicle, be sure that it has an octane rating no lower than 87.
- Lexus does not recommend the use of gasoline containing methanol.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ **Non-recommendation of the use of gasoline containing MMT**

Some gasoline contains an octane enhancing additive called MMT (Methylcyclopentadienyl Manganese Tricarbonyl).

Lexus does not recommend the use of gasoline that contains MMT. If fuel containing MMT is used, your emission control system may be adversely affected.

The malfunction indicator lamp on the instrument cluster may come on. If this happens, contact your Lexus dealer for service.

■ **If your engine knocks**

- Consult your Lexus dealer.
- You may occasionally notice light knocking for a short time while accelerating or driving uphill. This is normal and there is no need for concern.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **Notice on fuel quality**

- Do not use improper fuels. If improper fuels are used, the engine will be damaged.
- Do not use leaded gasoline.
  Leaded gasoline can cause damage to your vehicle's three-way catalytic converters causing the emission control system to malfunction.
- Do not use gasohol other than the type previously stated.
  Other gasohol may cause fuel system damage or vehicle performance problems.
- Using unleaded gasoline with an octane number or rating lower than the level previously stated will cause persistent heavy knocking.
  At worst, this will lead to engine damage.

■ **Fuel-related poor driveability**

If poor driveability is encountered after using a different type of fuel (poor hot starting, vaporization, engine knocking, etc.), discontinue the use of that type of fuel.

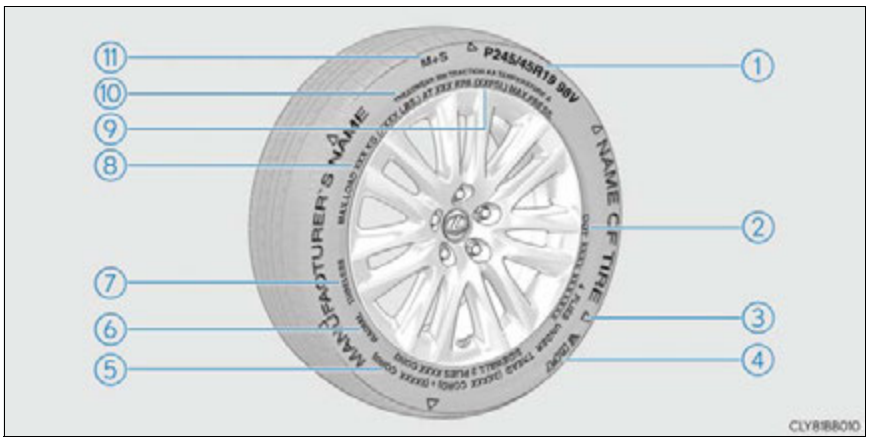
■ **When refueling with gasohol**

Take care not to spill gasohol. It can damage your vehicle's paint.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire information

Typical tire symbols



① Tire size (→P. 562)

② DOT and Tire Identification Number (TIN) (→P. 561)

③ Location of treadwear indicators (→P. 459)

④ Run-flat tire (RFT) or standard tire (→P. 522)

This vehicle can be equipped with either run-flat tires (RFT) or standard tires. An "RFT" or "DSST" mark is molded on the sidewall of the run-flat tire.

⑤ Tire ply composition and materials

Plies are layers of rubber-coated parallel cords. Cords are the strands which form the plies in a tire.

⑥ Radial tires or bias-ply tires

A radial tire has "RADIAL" on the sidewall. A tire not marked "RADIAL" is a bias-ply tire.

⑦ TUBELESS or TUBE TYPE

A tubeless tire does not have a tube and air is directly put into the tire. A tube type tire has a tube inside the tire and the tube maintains the air pressure.

⑧ Load limit at maximum cold tire inflation pressure (→P. 566)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⑨ Maximum cold tire inflation pressure (→P. 566)

This means the pressure to which a tire may be inflated.

⑩ Uniform tire quality grading

For details, see "Uniform Tire Quality Grading" that follows.

⑪ Summer tires or all season tires (→P. 464)

An all season tire has "M+S" on the sidewall. A tire not marked "M+S" is a summer tire.

Typical DOT and Tire Identification Number (TIN)

① DOT symbol*

② Tire Identification Number (TIN)

③ Tire manufacturer's identification mark

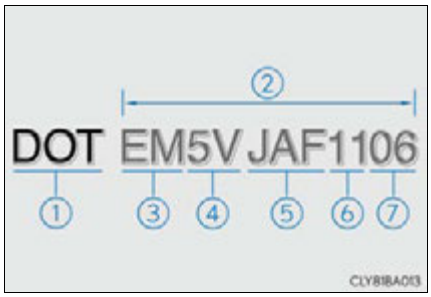
④ Tire size code

⑤ Manufacturer's optional tire type code (3 or 4 letters)

⑥ Manufacturing week

⑦ Manufacturing year

*: The DOT symbol certifies that the tire conforms to applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards.

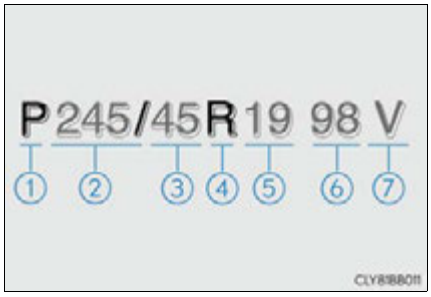


DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire size

Typical tire size information

The illustration indicates typical tire size.



① Tire use
(P = Passenger car,
T = Temporary use)

② Section width (millimeters)

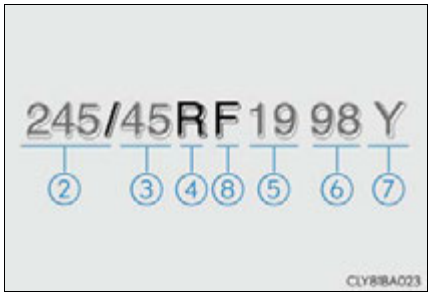
③ Aspect ratio
(tire height to section width)

④ Tire construction code
(R = Radial, D = Diagonal)

⑤ Wheel diameter (inches)

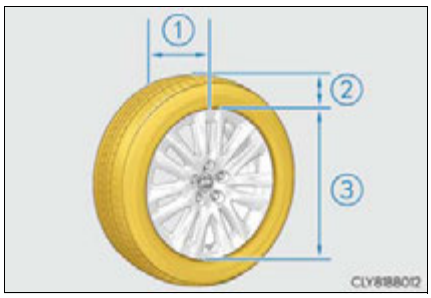
⑥ Load index
(2 digits or 3 digits)

⑦ Speed symbol
(alphabet with one letter)



⑧ Run-flat tire code

Tire dimensions



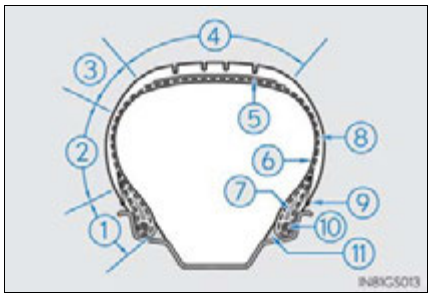
① Section width

② Tire height

③ Wheel diameter

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire section names



① Bead
② Sidewall
③ Shoulder
④ Tread
⑤ Belt
⑥ Inner liner
⑦ Reinforcing rubber
⑧ Carcass
⑨ Rim lines
⑩ Bead wires
⑪ Chafer

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

This information has been prepared in accordance with regulations issued by the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration of the U.S. Department of Transportation.
It provides the purchasers and/or prospective purchasers of Lexus vehicles with information on uniform tire quality grading.

Your Lexus dealer will help answer any questions you may have as you read this information.

DOT quality grades

All passenger vehicle tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades. Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

For example: Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course.

For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and a half (1 - 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.
The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use. Performance may differ significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction AA, A, B, C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C, and they represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete.

A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

Warning: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on braking (straight ahead) traction tests and does not include cornering (turning) traction.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Temperature A, B, C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure.

Grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109.

Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Warning: The temperature grades of a tire assume that it is properly inflated and not overloaded.
Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Glossary of tire terminology

Tire related term	Meaning
Cold tire inflation pressure	Tire pressure when the vehicle has been parked for three hours or more, or has not been driven more than 1 mile or 1.5 km under that condition
Maximum inflation pressure	The maximum cold inflated pressure to which a tire may be inflated, shown on the sidewall of the tire
Recommended inflation pressure	Cold tire inflation pressure recommended by a manufacturer
Accessory weight	The combined weight (in excess of those standard items which may be replaced) of hybrid transmission, power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, radio and heater, to the extent that these items are available as factory-installed equipment (whether installed or not)
Curb weight	The weight of a motor vehicle with standard equipment, including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil and coolant, and if so equipped, air conditioning and additional weight optional engine
Maximum loaded vehicle weight	The sum of: (a) Curb weight (b) Accessory weight (c) Vehicle capacity weight (d) Production options weight
Normal occupant weight	150 lb. (68 kg) times the number of occupants specified in the second column of Table 1* that follows
Occupant distribution	Distribution of occupants in a vehicle as specified in the third column of Table 1* below
Production options weight	The combined weight of installed regular production options weighing over 5 lb. (2.3 kg) in excess of the standard items which they replace, not previously considered in curb weight or accessory weight, including heavy duty brakes, ride levelers, roof rack, heavy duty 12-volt battery, and special trim
Rim	A metal support for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire related term	Meaning
Rim diameter (Wheel diameter)	Nominal diameter of the bead seat
Rim size designation	Rim diameter and width
Rim type designation	The industry manufacturer's designation for a rim by style or code
Rim width	Nominal distance between rim flanges
Vehicle capacity weight (Total load capacity)	The rated cargo and luggage load plus 150 lb. (68 kg) times the vehicle's designated seating capacity
Vehicle maximum load on the tire	The load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the maximum loaded vehicle weight, and dividing by two
Vehicle normal load on the tire	The load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of curb weight, accessory weight, and normal occupant weight (distributed in accordance with Table 1* below), and dividing by two
Weather side	The surface area of the rim not covered by the inflated tire
Bead	The part of the tire that is made of steel wires, wrapped or reinforced by ply cords and that is shaped to fit the rim
Bead separation	A breakdown of the bond between components in the bead
Bias ply tire	A pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at alternate angles substantially less than 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread
Carcass	The tire structure, except tread and sidewall rubber which, when inflated, bears the load
Chunking	The breaking away of pieces of the tread or sidewall
Cord	The strands forming the plies in the tire
Cord separation	The parting of cords from adjacent rubber compounds
Cracking	Any parting within the tread, sidewall, or innerliner of the tire extending to cord material

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire related term	Meaning
CT	A pneumatic tire with an inverted flange tire and rim system in which the rim is designed with rim flanges pointed radially inward and the tire is designed to fit on the underside of the rim in a manner that encloses the rim flanges inside the air cavity of the tire
Extra load tire	A tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire
Groove	The space between two adjacent tread ribs
Innerliner	The layer(s) forming the inside surface of a tubeless tire that contains the inflating medium within the tire
Innerliner separation	The parting of the innerliner from cord material in the carcass
Intended outboard sidewall	(a) The sidewall that contains a whitewall, bears white lettering, or bears manufacturer, brand, and/or model name molding that is higher or deeper than the same molding on the other sidewall of the tire, or (b) The outward facing sidewall of an asymmetrical tire that has a particular side that must always face outward when mounted on a vehicle
Light truck (LT) tire	A tire designated by its manufacturer as primarily intended for use on lightweight trucks or multipurpose passenger vehicles
Load rating	The maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure
Maximum load rating	The load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire
Maximum permissible inflation pressure	The maximum cold inflation pressure to which a tire may be inflated
Measuring rim	The rim on which a tire is fitted for physical dimension requirements
Open splice	Any parting at any junction of tread, sidewall, or innerliner that extends to cord material
Outer diameter	The overall diameter of an inflated new tire

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire related term	Meaning
Overall width	The linear distance between the exteriors of the sidewalls of an inflated tire, including elevations due to labeling, decorations, or protective bands or ribs
Passenger car tire	A tire intended for use on passenger cars, multipurpose passenger vehicles, and trucks, that have a gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR) of 10,000 lb. or less.
Ply	A layer of rubber-coated parallel cords
Ply separation	A parting of rubber compound between adjacent plies
Pneumatic tire	A mechanical device made of rubber, chemicals, fabric and steel or other materials, that, when mounted on an automotive wheel, provides the traction and contains the gas or fluid that sustains the load
Radial ply tire	A pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at substantially 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread
Reinforced tire	A tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire
Section width	The linear distance between the exteriors of the sidewalls of an inflated tire, excluding elevations due to labeling, decoration, or protective bands
Sidewall	That portion of a tire between the tread and bead
Sidewall separation	The parting of the rubber compound from the cord material in the sidewall
Snow tire	A tire that attains a traction index equal to or greater than 110, compared to the ASTM E-1136 Standard Reference Test Tire, when using the snow traction test as described in ASTM F-1805-00, Standard Test Method for Single Wheel Driving Traction in a Straight Line on Snow-and Ice-Covered Surfaces, and which is marked with an Alpine Symbol ( ) on at least one sidewall

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire related term	Meaning
Test rim	The rim on which a tire is fitted for testing, and may be any rim listed as appropriate for use with that tire
Tread	That portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road
Tread rib	A tread section running circumferentially around a tire
Tread separation	Pulling away of the tread from the tire carcass
Treadwear indicators (TWI)	The projections within the principal grooves designed to give a visual indication of the degrees of wear of the tread
Wheel-holding fixture	The fixture used to hold the wheel and tire assembly securely during testing

*: Table 1 — Occupant loading and distribution for vehicle normal load for various designated seating capacities

Designated seating capacity, Number of occupants	Vehicle normal load, Number of occupants	Occupant distribution in a normally loaded vehicle
2 through 4	2	2 in front
5 through 10	3	2 in front, 1 in second seat
11 through 15	5	2 in front, 1 in second seat, 1 in third seat, 1 in fourth seat
16 through 20	7	2 in front, 2 in second seat, 2 in third seat, 1 in fourth seat

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Customizable features

Your vehicle includes a variety of electronic features that can be personalized to your preferences. These preferences can be changed by using the "DISP" button, by using the Remote Touch, or at your Lexus dealer.

Customizing vehicle features

■ Changing by using the Remote Touch

1 Press the "MENU" button on the Remote Touch.

2 Select on the "Menu" screen and select .

Various setting can be changed. Refer to the list of settings that can be changed for details.

■ Changing by using the "DISP" button

→P. 109

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Customizable features

Some function settings are changed simultaneously with other functions being customized. Contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

① Settings that can be changed using the Remote Touch

② Settings that can be changed using the "DISP" button

③ Settings that can be changed by your Lexus dealer

Definition of symbols: O = Available, – = Not available

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③
Multi-information display (→P. 105)	Language	American English	French	–	O	O
			Spanish			
	Units*2	miles (MPG)	km (km/L)	–	O	O
			km (L/100km)			
	ECO lamp	ON (Self-lighting)	OFF	–	O	O
			ON (Always)			
	Drive monitor	Cruising range	Fuel consumption	–	O	O
	Tachometer settings	Tachometer (Self-changing)	Hybrid System Indicator (Always)	–	O	O
			Tachometer (Always)			
	Lamp brightness	Standard	Bright	–	O	O
	SPORT lamp	ON	OFF	–	O	O
	EV Indicator	ON	OFF	–	O	O
	Background screen	ON	OFF	–	O	O
	Default settings	OFF	ON	–	O	O

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③
Door lock (→P. 147, 531)	Unlocking using a mechanical key	Driver's door unlocked in one step, all doors unlocked in two steps	All doors unlocked in one step	–	–	O
	Automatic door lock	Shifting the shift lever to position other than P	Off	O	–	O
			Vehicle speed is approximately 12 mph (20 km/h) or higher			
	Automatic door unlock	Shifting the shift lever to P	Off	O	–	O
			Driver's door is opened			
Smart access system with push-button start (→P. 127) and wireless remote control (→P. 143)	Operation buzzer volume	7	Off	O	–	O
			1 to 6			
	Operational signal (Emergency flashers)	On	Off	O	–	O
	Time elapsed before automatic lock function is activated if door is not opened after being unlocked	60 seconds	Off	O	–	O
			30 seconds			
			120 seconds			
	Open door warning buzzer	On	Off	–	–	O

8 Vehicle specifications

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③
Smart access system with push-button start (→P. 127)	Smart access system with push-button start	On	Off	O	–	O
	Smart door unlocking	Driver's door	All the doors	O	–	O
			Each door			
			Same side doors			
	Welcome light illumination control	On	Off	–	–	O
	Opening trunk without the electronic key when all doors are unlocked	On	Off	–	–	O
Wireless remote control (→P. 143)	Wireless remote control	On	Off	–	–	O
	Unlocking operation	Driver's door unlocked in one step, all doors unlocked in two steps	All doors unlocked in one step	O	–	O
	Trunk unlocking operation	One long press	One short press	–	–	O
			Push twice			
			Off			

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③
Front seats (→P. 158)	Driver's seat movement when exiting the vehicle	Standard	Off	O	–	O
			Partial			
	Driver's seat lumbar support movement when exiting the vehicle	On	Off	–	–	O
	Front passenger's seat lumbar support firmness adjustment when exiting the vehicle	On	Off	–	–	O
	Upward movement of entire front passenger seat during stowage when the seat is stowed by using the front passenger seat operation AUTO switch on front console or the front passenger seat operation AUTO button on the rear armrest*1	On	Off	–	–	O
Power windows (→P. 191) and moon roof (→P. 195)	One-touch close operation using the power window switches on the front passenger door and each rear door	On	Off	–	–	O
	One-touch front passenger window or rear window close operation using the power window switch on the driver's door	On	Off	–	–	O
	Mechanical key linked operation	On	Off	–	–	O
	Wireless remote control linked operation	Off	On (Open only)	–	–	O
	Linked entry function	On	Off	–	–	O

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③
Turn signal lever (→P. 229)	Times of flashing of the lane change signal flashers	3	5	O	–	O
			7			
			9			
			11			
			Off			
Automatic light control system (→P. 236)	Light sensor sensitivity	Standard	-2 to 2	O	–	O
	Time elapsed before headlights automatically turn off after doors are closed	30 seconds	Off	O	–	O
			60 seconds			
			90 seconds			
AFS (Adaptive Front-lighting System) (→P. 237)	Adaptive Front-lighting System	On	Off	–	–	O
Lights (→P. 236)	Daytime running light system*3	On	Off	O	–	O
Intuitive parking assist*4	Detection distance of the front center sensor	Far	Near	O	–	O
	Detection distance of the rear center sensor	Far	Near	O	–	O
	Buzzer volume	3	1 to 5	O	–	O
	Display setting (when intuitive parking assist is operating)	All sensors displayed	Display off	O	–	O

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③
Automatic air conditioning system (→P. 340)	A/C Auto switch operation	On	Off	O	–	O
	Exhaust gas sensor sensitivity	Standard	-3 to 3	O	–	O
	Air conditioning control of Eco drive mode	On	Off	–	–	O
Climate control seats (→P. 391)	Front climate control seat temperature adjustment during automatic operation (individual seat adjustment available)	Level 3 (standard)	Level 1 (cool) to level 5 (warm)	O	–	O
	Rear climate control seat start-up conditions when power switch is in the ON position (individual seat adjustment available)	Off	On (AUTO)	O	–	O
	Function that warms seats faster than usual (individual seat adjustment available)	On	Off	–	–	O
	Time until function that warms seats faster than usual turns off (individual seat adjustment available)	Standard	Short	–	–	O
			Long			
Heated steering wheel (→P. 389)	Automatic steering wheel heating	On	Off	O	–	O
	Time until automatic steering wheel heating turns off	Level 3 (standard)	Level 1 (short) to level 5 (long)	O	–	O

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③
Illumination (→P. 364)	Time elapsed before the interior lights turn off	15 seconds	Off	O	–	O
			7.5 seconds			
			30 seconds			
	Operation after the power switch is turned off	On	Off	–	–	O
	Operation when the doors are unlocked	On	Off	–	–	O
	Operation when you approach the vehicle with the electronic key on your person	On	Off	–	–	O
	Footwell and inside door handle lights	On	Off	–	–	O
	Shift lever light	On	Off	–	–	O
	Seat belt buckle illumination when driver's door is opened	On	Off	–	–	O
	Seat belt buckle illumination after the power switch is turned off	On	Off	–	–	O
	Instrument panel illumination method	Choreographed illumination	Simple illumination	–	–	O
			Off	–	–	O
	Exterior light control	On	Off	–	–	O
	Time elapsed before the outer foot lights turn off	15 seconds	Off	O	–	O
			7.5 seconds			
			30 seconds			

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③
Illumination (→P. 364)	Operation of the outer foot lights when you approach the vehicle with the electronic key on your person	On	Off	–	–	O
	Operation of the outer foot lights when the doors are unlocked with the power door lock switch	On	Off	–	–	O
Seat belt reminder (→P. 502)	Vehicle speed linked seat belt reminder buzzer	On	Off	–	–	O

*1: If equipped

*2: The default setting varies according to countries.

*3: U.S.A. only

*4: Refer to "NAVIGATION AND MULTIMEDIA SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".

■ **Vehicle customization**

- When the smart access system with push-button start is off, the entry unlock function cannot be customized.
- When the doors remain closed after unlocking the doors and the timer activated automatic door lock function activates, signals will be generated in accordance with the operation buzzer volume and operational signal (Emergency flashers) function settings.

■ **When customizing using the Remote Touch**

Stop the vehicle in a safe place, apply the parking brake, and shift the shift lever to P. Also, to prevent 12-volt battery discharge, leave the hybrid system operating while customizing the features.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ CAUTION

■ During customization

As the hybrid system needs to be operating during customization, ensure that the vehicle is parked in a place with adequate ventilation. In a closed area such as a garage, exhaust gases including harmful carbon monoxide (CO) may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

⚠ NOTICE

■ During customization

To prevent 12-volt battery discharge, ensure that the hybrid system is operating while customizing features.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners 582
Seat belt instructions for Canadian owners (in French) 583
SRS airbag instructions for Canadian owners (in French) 585
Headlight aim instructions for Canadian owners (in French) 594

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying the Lexus Division of Toyota Motor Sales, U.S.A., Inc. (Toll-free: 1-800-25-LEXUS).

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Lexus Division of Toyota Motor Sales, U.S.A., Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to *http://www.safercar.gov* ; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Ave, S.E., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from *http://www.safercar.gov.*

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Seat belt instructions for Canadian owners (in French)

The following is a French explanation of seat belt instructions extracted from the seat belt section in this manual.

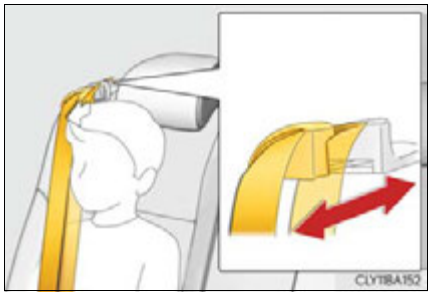
See the seat belt section for more detailed seat belt instructions in English.

Utilisation correcte des ceintures de sécurité

- Déroulez la sangle diagonale de telle sorte qu'elle passe bien sur l'épaule, sans pour autant être en contact avec le cou ou glisser de l'épaule.
- Placez la sangle abdominale le plus bas possible sur les hanches.
- Réglez la position du dossier de siège. Asseyez-vous le dos le plus droit possible et calez-vous bien dans le siège.
- Ne vrillez pas la ceinture de sécurité.

Guide de confort de ceinture de sécurité (sièges arrière latéraux)

Pour les enfants en bas âge ou les personnes de petite taille, faites coulisser le guide de confort de ceinture de sécurité vers l'avant, de sorte que la sangle diagonale ne passe pas à proximité du cou de la personne.



DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Entretien et soin

■ Ceintures de sécurité

Nettoyez avec un chiffon ou une éponge humectée d'eau savonneuse tiède. Vérifiez régulièrement que les ceintures ne sont pas effilochées, entaillées ou exagérément usées.

⚠ ATTENTION

■ Détérioration et usure des ceintures de sécurité

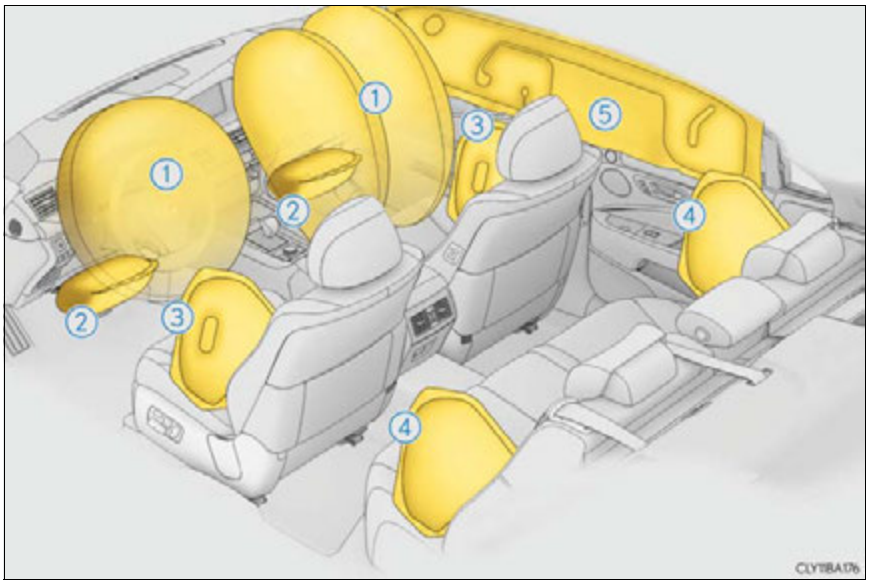
Inspectez les ceintures de sécurité périodiquement. Contrôlez qu'elles ne sont pas entaillées, effilochées et que leurs ancrages ne sont pas desserrés. N'utilisez pas une ceinture de sécurité défectueuse tant qu'elle n'est pas remplacée. Une ceinture de sécurité défectueuse ne peut pas protéger l'occupant contre la mort ou de graves blessures.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

SRS airbag instructions for Canadian owners (in French)

The following is a French explanation of SRS airbag instructions extracted from the SRS airbag section in this manual.

See the SRS airbag section for more detailed SRS airbag instructions in English.



◆ Coussins gonflables avant SRS

① Coussin gonflable conducteur SRS/coussin gonflable passager avant
Participent à la protection de la tête et du thorax du conducteur et du passager avant contre les chocs avec les éléments de l'habitacle

② Coussins gonflables de genoux SRS
Participent à la protection du conducteur et du passager avant

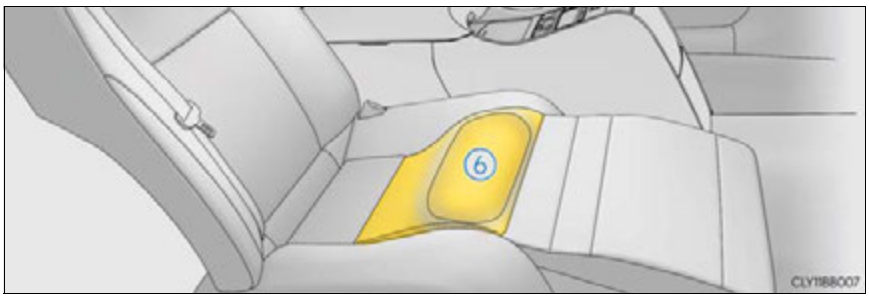
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

◆ Coussins gonflables latéraux et rideaux SRS

③ Coussins gonflables latéraux avant SRS
Participent à la protection du haut du corps des occupants assis sur le siège avant

④ Coussins gonflables latéraux arrière SRS
Participent à la protection du haut du corps des occupants assis aux places arrière extérieures

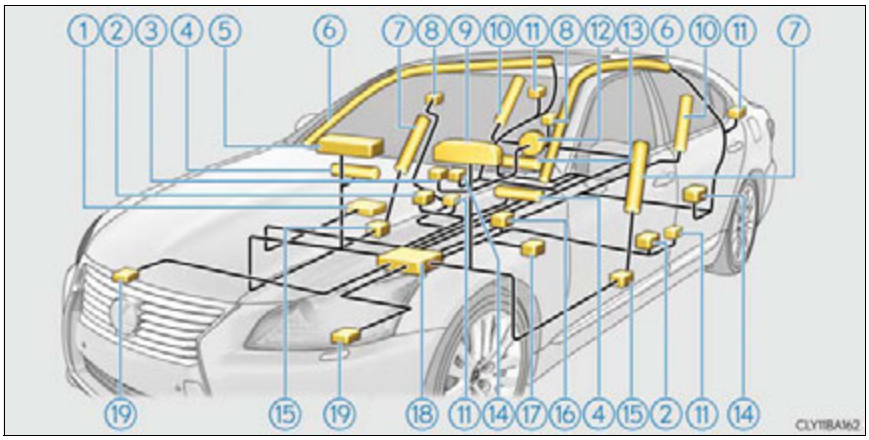
⑤ Coussins gonflables rideaux SRS
Participent principalement à la protection de la tête des occupants assis aux places extérieures



⑥ Coussin gonflable d'assise arrière SRS (avec siège de relaxation)
Contribue à retenir le passager assis dans le siège de relaxation

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Composition du système de coussins gonflables SRS



① Système de classification de l'occupant du siège passager avant (ECU et capteurs)

② Capteurs d'impact latéral (avant)

③ Témoins indicateurs "AIR BAG ON" et "AIR BAG OFF"

④ Coussins gonflables de genoux

⑤ Coussin gonflable passager avant

⑥ Coussins gonflables rideaux

⑦ Coussins gonflables latéraux avant

⑧ Appuis-tête actifs

⑨ Témoin d'avertissement SRS

⑩ Coussins gonflables latéraux arrière

⑪ Prétensionneurs de ceintures de sécurité et limiteurs de force

⑫ Coussin gonflable conducteur

⑬ Coussin gonflable d'assise (sur modèles équipés)

⑭ Capteurs d'impact latéral (arrière)

⑮ Capteurs d'impact latéral (porte avant)

⑯ Commutateur de boucle de ceinture de sécurité du conducteur

⑰ Capteur de position du siège conducteur

⑱ Boîtier électronique des coussins gonflables

⑲ Capteurs d'impact avant

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Votre véhicule est équipé de COUSSINS GONFLABLES INTELLIGENTS conçus selon les normes de sécurité américaines applicables aux véhicules à moteur (FMVSS208). Le boîtier électronique (ECU) des coussins gonflables régule le déploiement de ces derniers sur la base des informations qu'il reçoit des capteurs, etc., indiqués ci-dessus dans le schéma illustrant les composants du système. Parmi ces informations figurent la gravité du choc et l'occupation du véhicule par les passagers. Le déploiement rapide des coussins gonflables est obtenu au moyen d'une réaction chimique dans les dispositifs pyrotechniques, qui produit un gaz inoffensif permettant d'amortir le mouvement des occupants.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ ATTENTION

■ Précautions avec les coussins gonflables SRS

Respectez les précautions suivantes avec les coussins gonflables SRS. Autrement, des blessures graves, voire mortelles, pourraient s'ensuivre.

- Le conducteur et tous les passagers à bord du véhicule doivent porter leur ceinture de sécurité correctement.
  Les coussins gonflables SRS sont des dispositifs supplémentaires à utiliser avec les ceintures de sécurité.
- Le coussin gonflable conducteur SRS se déploie avec une violence considérable, qui peut être très dangereuse, voire mortelle, si le conducteur se trouve très près du coussin gonflable. La National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) recommande:

  Sachant que la zone de danger pour le coussin gonflable conducteur se trouve dans les premiers 2 à 3 in. (50 - 75 mm) de déploiement, vous placer à 10 in. (250 mm) de votre coussin gonflable conducteur vous garantit une marge de sécurité suffisante. Cette distance est à mesurer entre l'axe du volant et le sternum. Si vous êtes assis à moins de 10 in. (250 mm), vous pouvez changer votre position de conduite de plusieurs façons:

  - Reculez votre siège le plus possible, de manière à pouvoir encore atteindre confortablement les pédales.
  - Inclinez légèrement le dossier du siège.
    Bien que les véhicules puissent être différents les uns des autres, la plupart des conducteurs peuvent s'asseoir à une distance de 10 in. (250 mm), même avec le siège conducteur complètement avancé, simplement en inclinant un peu le dossier de siège. Si vous avez des difficultés à voir la route après avoir incliné votre siège, utilisez un coussin ferme et antidérapant pour vous rehausser ou, si votre véhicule est équipé du réglage en hauteur du siège, remontez-le.
  - Si votre volant est réglable, inclinez-le vers le bas. Cela a pour effet d'orienter le coussin gonflable en direction de votre poitrine plutôt que de votre tête et de votre cou.

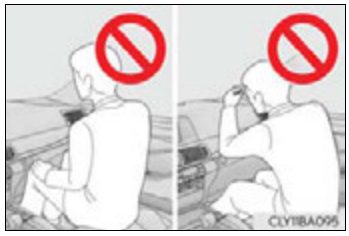
  Réglez votre siège selon ces recommandations de la NHTSA, tout en conservant le contrôle des pédales, du volant et la vue des commandes du tableau de bord.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ ATTENTION

■ Précautions avec les coussins gonflables SRS

- Si vous attachez une rallonge de ceinture de sécurité aux boucles de ceinture de sécurité avant, mais pas au pêne de la ceinture de sécurité, les coussins gonflables avant SRS détectent que le conducteur et le passager avant ont attaché leur ceinture de sécurité, alors même que ce n'est pas le cas. Dans ce cas, il se peut que les coussins gonflables avant SRS ne se déploient pas correctement en cas d'accident et vous risquez d'être tué ou grièvement blessé. Veillez à porter la ceinture de sécurité avec la rallonge de ceinture de sécurité.
- Le coussin gonflable passager avant SRS se déploie également avec une violence considérable, qui peut être très dangereuse, voire mortelle, si le passager avant se trouve très près du coussin gonflable. Éloignez le siège du passager avant au maximum du coussin gonflable et réglez le dossier de siège de façon à être assis bien droit dans le siège.
- Les nourrissons et les enfants qui ne sont pas correctement assis et/ou protégés peuvent être grièvement blessés ou tués par le déploiement d'un coussin gonflable. Installez dans un siège de sécurité enfant les enfants trop jeunes pour pouvoir utiliser la ceinture de sécurité. Lexus recommande fortement d'installer tous les nourrissons et enfants sur les sièges arrière du véhicule et de prévoir pour eux des systèmes de retenue adaptés. Les sièges arrière sont plus sûrs pour les nourrissons et les enfants que le siège du passager avant.
- N'installez jamais un siège de sécurité enfant type dos à la route sur le siège du passager avant, même si le témoin indicateur "AIR BAG OFF" est allumé.
  En cas d'accident, par la violence et la vitesse de son déploiement, le coussin gonflable passager avant peut blesser grièvement, voire tuer l'enfant si le siège de sécurité enfant type dos à la route est installé sur le siège du passager avant.
- Ne vous asseyez pas sur le bord du siège et ne vous appuyez pas contre la planche de bord.



DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ ATTENTION

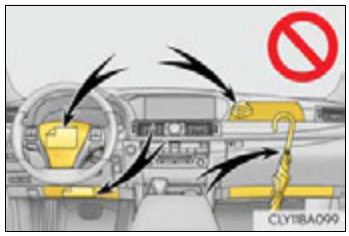
■ Précautions avec les coussins gonflables SRS

- Ne laissez pas un enfant rester debout devant le coussin gonflable passager avant SRS ou bien s'asseoir sur les genoux du passager avant.
- Ne laissez pas les occupants des sièges avant voyager avec un objet sur les genoux.

- Ne vous appuyez pas contre la porte, contre le rail latéral de toit ou contre les montants avant, latéraux et arrière.

- Ne laissez personne s'agenouiller sur les sièges passagers en appui contre la porte ou sortir la tête ou les mains à l'extérieur du véhicule.

- Ne fixez pas, ni ne posez aucun objet sur la planche de bord, la garniture du volant de direction et la partie inférieure du tableau de bord.
  Au déploiement des coussins gonflables conducteur SRS, passager avant et genoux, tout objet risque de se transformer en projectile.



- Ne fixez rien aux portes, à la vitre de pare-brise, aux vitres latérales, aux montants avant et arrière, au rail latéral de toit et à la poignée de maintien.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ ATTENTION

■ Précautions avec les coussins gonflables SRS

- Ne suspendez aucun cintre ni objet dur aux crochets à vêtements. En cas de déploiement des coussins gonflables rideaux SRS, tous ces objets pourraient se transformer en projectiles et causer des blessures graves, voire mortelles.
- Si un cache en vinyle recouvre la partie où le coussin gonflable de genoux SRS se déploie, veillez à l'enlever.
- N'utilisez aucun accessoire de siège qui couvrirait les zones de déploiement des coussins gonflables latéraux SRS et du coussin gonflable d'assise, car il risquerait de gêner le déploiement. De tels accessoires peuvent empêcher les coussins gonflables latéraux et le coussin gonflable d'assise de fonctionner correctement, désactiver le dispositif ou entraîner le déploiement accidentel des coussins gonflables latéraux et du coussin gonflable d'assise, entraînant la mort ou des blessures graves.
- Évitez de faire subir des chocs ou des pressions excessives aux zones renfermant les composants des coussins gonflables SRS. En effet, cela pourrait entraîner un fonctionnement anormal des coussins gonflables SRS.
- Ne touchez aucun composant du système immédiatement après le déploiement (gonflage) des coussins gonflables SRS, car ils peuvent être chauds.
- Si vous avez des difficultés à respirer après le déploiement des coussins gonflables SRS, ouvrez une porte ou une vitre pour faire entrer de l'air frais, ou bien descendez du véhicule si cela ne présente pas de danger. Essuyez tout résidu dès que possible afin d'éviter d'éventuelles irritations de la peau.
- Si les parties renfermant les coussins gonflables SRS, telles que la garniture du moyeu de volant et les garnitures de montants avant et arrière, apparaissent abîmées ou craquelées, faites-les remplacer par votre concessionnaire Lexus.
- Ne placez rien sur le siège du passager avant, comme un coussin par exemple. Cela a pour conséquence de répartir le poids du passager sur toute la surface du siège, ce qui empêche le capteur de détecter correctement le poids du passager. En conséquence, le coussin gonflable passager avant SRS risque de ne pas se déployer en cas de choc.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

⚠ ATTENTION

■ Modification et mise au rebut des éléments du système de coussins gonflables SRS

Consultez impérativement votre concessionnaire Lexus si vous avez besoin d'intervenir sur votre véhicule, de vous en séparer ou de procéder à l'une des modifications suivantes. Les coussins gonflables SRS peuvent être défaillants ou se déployer (se gonfler) accidentellement, provoquant la mort ou de graves blessures.

- Installation, dépose, démontage et réparation des coussins gonflables SRS
- Réparations, modifications, démontage ou remplacement du volant, du tableau de bord, de la planche de bord, des sièges ou de leur garnissage, des montants avant, latéraux et arrière ou des rails latéraux de toit
- Réparations ou modifications des ailes avant, du bouclier avant ou des flancs de l'habitacle
- Installation d'un protège-calandre (pare-buffle, pare-kangourou, etc.), de chasse-neiges, de treuils
- Modifications du système de suspension du véhicule
- Installation d'appareils électroniques, tels qu'une radio émetteur/récepteur ou un lecteur CD
- Aménagements du véhicule visant à permettre sa conduite par une personne atteinte d'un handicap physique

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

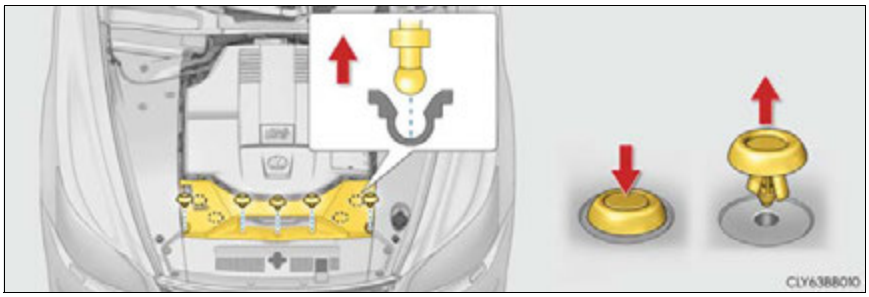
Headlight aim instructions for Canadian owners (in French)

The following is a French explanation of headlight aim instructions from the headlight aim section in this manual.

Dépose de l'habillage du compartiment moteur

▶ Extérieur

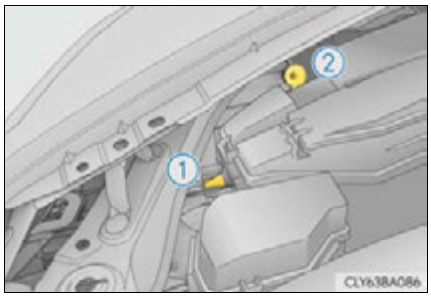
▶ Avant



Vis de réglage dans l'axe vertical

① Vis de réglage A

② Vis de réglage B



DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Avant de vérifier le réglage du faisceau des phares

1 Assurez-vous que le véhicule est doté d'un réservoir d'essence complet et que la zone située autour des feux avant n'est pas déformée.

2 Garez le véhicule sur un sol de niveau.

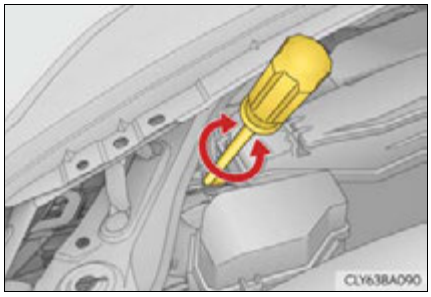
3 Installez-vous dans le siège conducteur.

4 Donnez plusieurs impulsions au véhicule.

Réglage du faisceau des phares

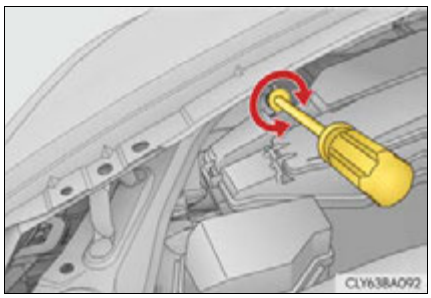
1 À l'aide d'un tournevis cruciforme, tournez la vis A dans n'importe quel sens.

Mémorisez le sens dans lequel vous avez tourné et le nombre de tours.



2 Tournez la vis B du même nombre de tours dans le même sens qu'à l'étape 1.

Si vous n'arrivez pas à régler les feux avant en procédant de la sorte, confiez votre véhicule à votre concessionnaire Lexus pour qu'il règle le faisceau des feux avant.



DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Index

What to do if...
(Troubleshooting).....598
Alphabetical index 604

For information regarding the equipment listed below, refer to "NAVIGATION AND MULTIMEDIA SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".

- Navigation system
- Audio/visual system
- Rear seat entertainment system
- Intuitive parking assist
- Lexus parking assist monitor

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

What to do if... (Troubleshooting)

If you have a problem, check the following before contacting your Lexus dealer.

The doors cannot be locked, unlocked, opened or closed

You lose your keys

- If you lose your mechanical keys, new genuine mechanical keys can be made by your Lexus dealer. (→P. 124)
- If you lose your electronic keys, the risk of vehicle theft increases significantly. Contact your Lexus dealer immediately. (→P. 126)

The doors cannot be locked or unlocked

- Is the electronic key battery weak or depleted? (→P. 478)
- Is the power switch in ON mode?
  When locking the doors, turn the power switch off. (→P. 219)
- Is the electronic key left inside the vehicle?
  When locking the doors, make sure that you have the electronic key on your person.
- The function may not operate properly due to the condition of the radio wave. (→P. 136)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

The rear door cannot be opened

- Is the child-protector lock set?
  The rear door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle when the lock is set. Open the rear door from outside and then unlock the child-protector lock. (→P. 148)

The trunk lid is closed with the electronic key left inside

- The function to prevent the electronic key from being left inside the trunk will operate and you can open the trunk as usual. Take the key out from the trunk. (→P. 129)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

If you think something is wrong

The hybrid system does not start

- Did you press the power switch while firmly depressing the brake pedal? (→P. 218)
- Is the shift lever in P? (→P. 218)
- Is the electronic key anywhere detectable inside the vehicle? (→P. 131)
- Is the steering wheel unlocked? (→P. 220)
- Is the electronic key battery weak or depleted?
  In this case, the hybrid system can be started in a temporary way. (→P. 533)
- Is the 12-volt battery discharged? (→P. 534)

The shift lever cannot be shifted from P even if you depress the brake pedal

- Is the power switch in ON mode?

  If you cannot release the shift lever by depressing the brake pedal with the power switch in ON mode (→P. 526)

The steering wheel cannot be turned after the hybrid system is stopped

- It is locked automatically to prevent theft of the vehicle. (→P. 220)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

The windows do not open or close by operating the power window switches

- Is the window lock switch pressed?
  The power window except for the one at the driver's seat cannot be operated if the window lock switch is pressed. (→P. 191)

The power switch is turned off automatically

- The auto power off function will be operated if the vehicle is left in ACCESSORY mode for a period of time. (→P. 220)

A warning buzzer sounds during driving

- The seat belt reminder light is flashing

  Are the driver and the front passenger wearing the seat belts? (→P. 502)

- The parking brake indicator is on

  Is the parking brake released? (→P. 230)

Depending on the situation, other types of warning buzzer may also sound. (→P. 499, 509)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

An alarm is activated and the horn sounds

● Did anyone inside the vehicle open a door during setting the alarm?
The sensor detects it and the alarm sounds. (→P. 90)

Do one of the following to stop the alarms:

- Unlock the doors or open the trunk.
- Turn the power switch to ACCESSORY or ON mode, or start the hybrid system.

A warning buzzer sounds when leaving the vehicle

● Is the message displayed on the multi-information display?
Check the message on the multi-information display.
(→P. 509)

A warning light turns on or a warning message is displayed

● When a warning light turns on or a warning message is displayed, refer to P. 499, 509.

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

When a problem has occurred

If you have a flat tire

- Vehicles with a spare tire
  Stop the vehicle in a safe place and replace the flat tire with the spare tire. (→P. 513)
- Vehicles with run-flat tires
  Slow down and drive with extra caution. Take your vehicle to the nearest Lexus dealer or authorized tire dealer to have the flat tire replaced. (→P. 522)

The vehicle becomes stuck

- Try the procedure for when the vehicle becomes stuck in mud, dirt, or snow. (→P. 543)

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Alphabetical index

A

A/C
- Air conditioning filter 475
- Front automatic air conditioning system 340
- Rear air conditioning system 355

ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) 289
- Function 289
- Warning light 500

Adaptive Front-lighting System (AFS) 237

AFS (Adaptive Front-lighting System) 237

Air conditioning filter 475

Air conditioning system
- Air conditioning filter 475
- Front automatic air conditioning system 340
- Rear air conditioning system 355

Airbags 42
- Airbag operating conditions 50
- Airbag precautions for your child 45
- Airbag warning light 500
- Correct driving posture 34
- Curtain shield airbag operating conditions 51
- Curtain shield airbag precautions 45
- Front passenger occupant classification system 55
- General airbag precautions 45
- Locations of airbags 42
- Modification and disposal of airbags 49
- Side airbag operating conditions 51
- Side airbag precautions 45
- Side and curtain shield airbags operating conditions 51
- Side and curtain shield airbags precautions 45
- SRS airbags 42

Alarm
- Alarm 90
- Warning buzzer 499, 509

Anchor brackets 66, 67

Antennas (smart access system with push-button start) 130

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 289
- Function 289
- Warning light 500

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Approach warning 266
Armrest 396
Ashtrays 383
Assist grips 406
Audio/visual system*
Automatic headlight leveling system 238
Automatic High Beam 240
Automatic light control system 236
Auxiliary boxes 375

B

Back-up lights
Replacing light bulbs 487
Battery (12-volt battery) 455
If the 12-volt battery is discharged 534
Preparing and checking before winter 326
Warning light 500
Battery (traction battery) 81
Blind Spot Monitor (BSM) 309
Brake
Brake Hold 233
Fluid 453
Parking brake 230
Regenerative braking 78
Warning light 499, 501
Brake assist 289
Brake Hold 233
Break-in tips 201
Brightness control
Instrument panel light control 101
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) 309

*: Refer to "NAVIGATION AND MULTIMEDIA SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

C

Card key 122
Care 422, 426
Aluminum wheels 423
Exterior 422
Interior 426
Seat belts 427
Cargo capacity 215
Cargo hooks 377
Cargo net 377
Caution label 81
Chains 328
Child restraint system 62
Booster seats, definition 62
Booster seats, installation 71
Convertible seats, definition 62
Convertible seats, installation 69
Front passenger occupant classification system 55
Infant seats, definition 62
Infant seats, installation 69
Installing CRS with LATCH anchors 68
Installing CRS with seat belts 69
Installing CRS with top tether strap 72
Child safety 61
12-volt battery precautions 457, 537
Airbag precautions 45
Child restraint system 62
Climate control seat precautions 395
Heated steering wheel precautions 390
How your child should wear the seat belt 37, 38
Installing child restraints 66
Moon roof precautions 198
Power window lock switch 191
Power window precautions 193
Rear door child-protectors 148
Removed electronic key battery precautions 479
Seat belt comfort guide 37
Seat belt extender precautions 41
Seat belt precautions 65
Trunk precautions 154
Child-protectors 148
Cigarette lighter 384

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Cleaning 422, 426
Aluminum wheels 423
Exterior 422
Interior 426
Seat belts 427
Climate control seat 391
Climate control seat filter 394
Clock 382
Clock light 364
Coat hooks 405
Coin holder 371
Condenser 452
Console box 373
Consumption screen 115
Coolant 450
Capacity 551
Checking 450
Preparing and checking before winter 326
Cooling system 450
Engine overheating 538
Hybrid system overheating 538
Cruise control
Cruise control 255
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range 259
Cup holders 372
Curtain shield airbags 43
Customizable features 571

D

Daytime running light system 238
Defogger
Front windshield 345
Outside rear view mirrors 362
Rear window 362
Differential
Front differential 552
Rear differential 553
Dimensions 546
Dinghy towing 217

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Display
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range....259
LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist)....279
Multi-information display....105
Remote Touch screen....332
Trip information....106
Warning message....509
Do-it-yourself maintenance....437
Door courtesy lights....364
Door lock
Doors....147
Smart access system with push-button start....127
Wireless remote control....143
Door pockets....371
Doors....147
Automatic door locking and unlocking system....149
Door glasses....191
Door lock....147
Open door warning buzzer....132
Open door warning light....502
Outside rear view mirrors....187
Rear door child-protector....148
Driver's seat position memory....174
Driving....200
Break-in tips....201
Correct driving posture....34
Driving mode select switch....285
Hybrid vehicle driving tips....324
Procedures....200
Winter drive tips....326
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range....259
Function....259

E

Eco drive mode....285
EDR (Event data recorder)....11
Electric motor (traction motor)....76
Electric Power Steering (EPS)....290
Function....290
Warning light....500
Electronic key....122
If the electronic key does not operate properly....531
Replacing the battery....478
Electronically modulated air suspension....287
Emergency flashers....490

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Emergency, in case of
If the 12-volt battery is discharged....534
If the electronic key does not operate properly....531
If the hybrid system will not start....524
If the parking brake cannot be released....527
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P....526
If the warning buzzer sounds....499
If the warning light turns on....499
If the warning message is displayed....509
If you have a flat tire....513, 522
If you think something is wrong....498
If your vehicle becomes stuck....543
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency....491
If your vehicle needs to be towed....492
If your vehicle overheats....538
Energy monitor....113
Engine
ACCESSORY mode....219
Compartment....443
Engine switch....218
Hood....440
How to start the hybrid system....218
Identification number....547
If the hybrid system will not start....524
Ignition switch (power switch)....218
Overheating....538
Power switch....218
Engine compartment cover....444
Engine coolant....450
Capacity....551
Checking....450
Preparing and checking before winter....326
Engine coolant temperature gauge....99
Engine oil....446
Capacity....549
Checking....446
Preparing and checking before winter....326
Engine oil maintenance data....448
Engine switch....218
EPS (Electric Power Steering)....290
Function....290
Warning light....500
EV drive mode....223
Event data recorder (EDR)....11

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

F

First-aid kit storage belt 379
Flat tire
Vehicles with a spare tire 513
Vehicles with run-flat tires 522
Floor mats 32
Fluid
Brake 553
Hybrid transmission 552
Washer 454
Fog lights 245
Replacing light bulbs 487
Switch 245
Footwell light 364
Front automatic air conditioning system 340
Front fog lights 245
Replacing light bulbs 487
Switch 245
Front passenger occupant classification system 55
Front seats 158
Adjustment 158
Cleaning 426
Climate control seats 391
Correct driving posture 34
Driving position memory 174
Head restraints 181
Power easy access system 161
Seat position memory 174
Front side marker lights 236
Light switch 236
Replacing light bulbs 487
Welcome light illumination control 128
Front turn signal lights 229
Replacing light bulbs 487
Turn signal lever 229
Fuel 251
Capacity 548
Fuel gauge 99
Information 557
Refueling 251
Type 548, 557
Warning light 502
Fuel consumption
Average fuel consumption 107
Average fuel consumption after refueling 107
Current fuel consumption 107
Fuel filler door 251
If the fuel filler door cannot be opened 254
Refueling 251
Fuses 480

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

G

Garage door opener 407
Gauges 99
Glove box 370

H

Head restraints 181
- Active head restraint 182
- Adjustment 181

Headlight cleaner 250
Headlights 236
- Adaptive Front-lighting System (AFS) 237
- Automatic High Beam system 240
- Light switch 236
- Replacing light bulbs 487
- Wattage 556

Headlight aim 485
Heaters
- Front automatic air conditioning system 340
- Heated steering wheel 389
- Outside rear view mirrors 362
- Rear air conditioning system 355

Height control
- Electronically modulated air suspension 287

High-voltage components 81
Hill-start assist control 289
Hood 440
- Open 440

Hooks
- Cargo hooks 377
- Coat hooks 405
- Retaining hooks (floor mat) 32
- Shopping bag hooks 377

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Horn 235
Hybrid battery (traction battery) 81
Hybrid battery (traction battery) air vents 82
Hybrid system 76
Emergency shut off system 82
Energy monitor/ consumption screen 112
EV drive mode 223
High voltage components 81
Hybrid System Indicator 103
Hybrid system precautions 81
Hybrid vehicle driving tips 324
If the hybrid system will not start 524
Overheating 538
Power (ignition) switch 218
Starting the hybrid system 218
Vehicle proximity notification system 77
Hybrid System Indicator 103
Hybrid transmission 225
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P 526
S mode 226

I

I/M test 436
Identification 547
Engine 547
Vehicle 547
Ignition switch (power switch) 218
Illuminated entry system 367
Immobilizer system 88
Indicators 97
Initialization
Engine oil maintenance data 448
Maintenance 430
Moon roof 197
Power windows 192
Tire pressure warning system 461
Initiators (tire pressure warning system) 468
Inside door handle lights 364
Inside rear view mirror 185
Instrument panel light control 101
Instrument panel ornament lights 364
Interior lights 365
Front interior light 365
Rear interior light 365
Interior lights list 364
Intuitive parking assist*

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

J

Jack
- Positioning a floor jack 441
- Vehicle-equipped jack 514, 523

Jack handle 514, 523

Jam protection function
- Moon roof 196
- Power trunk opener and closer 153
- Power windows 192
- Rear door sunshade 403

K

Keyless entry 127
- Smart access system with push-button start 127
- Wireless remote control 143

Keys 122
- Electronic key 122
- Engine switch 218
- If the electronic key does not operate properly 531
- If you lose your keys 124, 126
- Key number plate 122
- Keyless entry 127, 143
- Mechanical key 123
- Power switch 218
- Replacing the battery 478
- Warning buzzer 132
- Wireless remote control key 143

Knee airbags 42

L

Lane-keeping assist (LKA) 275
- Operation 277

Language (multi-information display) 109

LATCH anchors 68

Lever
- Auxiliary catch lever 440
- Hood lock release lever 440
- Internal trunk release lever 153
- Shift lever 225
- Turn signal lever 229
- Wiper lever 246

Lexus Climate Concierge 339

Lexus Enform Safety Connect 414

Lexus parking assist monitor*

Lexus night view 319

License plate lights 236
- Light switch 236
- Replacing light bulbs 487
- Welcome light illumination control 128

Light bulbs
- Replacing 487
- Wattage 556

*: Refer to "NAVIGATION AND MULTIMEDIA SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Lights
Automatic High Beam system....240
Fog light switch....245
Headlight switch....236
Illuminated entry system....367
Interior lights....365
Interior lights list....364
Personal lights....366
Replacing light bulbs....487
Trunk light....153
Turn signal lever....229
Vanity lights....380
Wattage....556
Welcome light illumination control....128
LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist)....275
Operation....277
Load capacity....215
Lock steering column....220
Luggage security system....152

M

Maintenance
Do-it-yourself maintenance....437
General maintenance....432
Maintenance requirements....429
Malfunction indicator lamp....500
Master warning light....502
Meter....99
Indicators....97
Instrument panel light control....101
Meters....99
Multi-information display....105
Warning lights....95
Micro dust and pollen filter....349
Mirrors
Inside rear view mirror....185
Outside rear view mirror defoggers....362
Outside rear view mirrors....187
Vanity mirrors....380
Moon roof....195
Door lock linked moon roof operation....196
Jam protection function....196
Operation....195
Multi-information display....105
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range....259
Energy monitor....113
Lane-Keeping Assist....279
Language....109
Switching the display....106
Trip information....106
Warning message....509

N

Navigation system*
Noise from under vehicle....8

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

O

Odometer 99
Oil
- Engine oil 549
- Front differential oil 552
- Rear differential oil 553

Opener
- Fuel filler door 253
- Hood 440
- Trunk 151

Outer foot lights
- Location 364
- Replacing light bulbs 487

Outside rear view mirrors 187
- Adjusting and folding 187
- BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) 309
- Linked mirror function when reversing 189
- Mirror position memory 174
- Outside rear view mirror defoggers 362

Outside temperature display 99
Overheating 538

P

Parking brake 230
- If the parking brake cannot be released 527
- Operation 230
- Parking brake engaged warning buzzer 232

Parking lights 236
- Light switch 236
- Replacing light bulbs 487
- Welcome light illumination control 128

PCS (Pre-Collision System) 296
- Function 296
- Pre-collision braking off switch 298
- Warning light 501

Pelvic support seat with seat vibrator 168
Personal lights 366
- Front personal light 366
- Rear personal light 366

Power control unit 81
Power control unit coolant 451
- Capacity 551
- Checking 451
- Preparing and checking before winter 326

Power easy access system 161
Power outlets 386
Power steering (Electric Power Steering system) 290
- Warning light 500

*: Refer to "NAVIGATION AND MULTIMEDIA SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Power switch 218
Power trunk opener and closer 151
Power windows 191
Door lock linked window operation 193
Jam protection function 192
Operation 191
Window lock switch 191
Pre-Collision System (PCS) 296
Function 296
Pre-collision braking off switch 298
Warning light 501

R

Radar cruise control (dynamic radar cruise control) 259
Radiator 452
Rear air conditioning system 355
Rear Cross Traffic Alert 316
Rear door sunshades 402
Rear seat
Adjustment 164
Climate control seats 392
Seat position memory 179
Rear seat entertainment system*
Rear seat relaxation system 169
Rear side marker lights 236
Light switch 236
Replacing light bulbs 487
Welcome light illumination control 128
Rear sunshade 399
Operation 399
Reverse operation feature 401
Rear turn signal lights 229
Replacing light bulbs 487
Turn signal lever 229
Rear view mirror
Inside rear view mirror 185
Outside rear view mirrors 187
Rear window defoggers 362
Refueling 251
Capacity 548
Fuel types 548
If the fuel filler door cannot be opened 254
Opening the fuel tank cap 253
Regenerative braking 78
Remote Touch 332
Remote Touch screen 332

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Replacing
Electronic key battery....478
Fuses....480
Light bulbs....487
Tires....513
Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners....582
Resetting the message indicating maintenance is required....430
Retractable table....397
Road accident cautions....85
Run-flat tires....522

S

Seat belt reminder light....502
Seat belts....36
Adjusting the seat belt....37
Automatic locking retractor (ALR)....38
Child restraint system installation....69
Cleaning and maintaining the seat belt....427
Emergency locking retractor (ELR)....38
How to wear your seat belt....36
How your child should wear the seat belt....38
Pre-collision seat belts....38
Pregnant women, proper seat belt use....39
Reminder light and buzzer....502
Seat belt extender....38
Seat belt pretensioners....37
SRS warning light....500
Seat cushion airbag....43
Seat position memory....174, 179
Seating capacity....215

*: Refer to "NAVIGATION AND MULTIMEDIA SYSTEM OWNER'S MANUAL".

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Seats....158, 164
Adjustment....158, 164
Adjustment precautions....163, 172
Child seats/child restraint system installation....66
Cleaning....426
Climate control seat....391
Driving position memory....174
Head restraints....181
Pelvic support seat with seat vibrator....168
Power easy access system....161
Properly sitting in the seat....34
Rear seat position memory....179
Rear seat relaxation system....169
Seat position memory....174, 179
Sensor
Automatic headlight system....238
Automatic High Beam system....244
Camera sensors....299
Driver monitor sensor....299
Inside rear view mirror....186
Lexus night view....323
LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist)....275
Radar sensor....269, 298, 312
Rain-sensing windshield wipers....248
Service plug....81
Service reminder indicators....94
Shift lever....225
Hybrid transmission....225
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P....526
Shift lever light....364
Shift lock system....526
Shopping bag hooks....377
Side airbags....43
Side marker lights....236
Light switch....236
Replacing light bulbs....487
Welcome light illumination control....128
Side mirrors....187
Adjusting and folding....187
BSM (Blind spot monitor)....309
Linked mirror function when reversing....189
Mirror position memory....174
Side turn signal lights....229
Replacing light bulbs....487
Turn signal lever....229
Smart access system with push-button start....127
Antenna location....130
Entry functions....127
Starting the hybrid system....218
Snow mode....227
Snow tires....329

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Spare tire 513
Inflation pressure 554
Storage location 514
Spark plug 551
Specifications 546
Speedometer 99
Sport mode 285
Steering lock 220
Column lock release 220
Steering wheel 184
Adjustment 184
Heated steering wheel 389
Power easy access system 161
Steering wheel position memory 174
Stop lights
Replacing light bulbs 487
Storage feature 368
Stuck
If the vehicle becomes stuck 543
Sun shade
Rear 399
Rear door 402
Roof 196
Sun visors 380
Switches
Automatic High Beam switch 240
Brake hold switch 233
BSM (Blind spot monitor) main switch 309
Climate control seat switches 391
Cruise control switch 255
"DISP" button 106
Door lock switches 147
Driving mode select switch 285
Driving position memory switches 174
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range 259
Emergency flashers switch 490
EV drive mode switch 223
Fog light switch 245
Garage door opener switches 407
Headlight cleaner switch 250
Heated steering wheel switch 389
Ignition switch 218
Lexus night view switch 319
Light switch 236
LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) switch 277
Moon roof switches 195

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Outside rear view mirror switches ... 187
Parking brake switches ... 230
Power door lock switch ... 147
Power switch ... 218
Power trunk lid ... 151
Power window switches ... 191
Pre-collision braking off switch ... 298
Rear door sunshade switch ... 402
Rear seat position memory ... 179
Rear sunshade switch ... 399
Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers switch ... 362
Snow mode switch ... 227
"SOS" button ... 414
Tilt and telescopic steering control switch ... 184
Tire pressure warning reset switch ... 462
Trunk closer switch ... 152
Trunk opener main switch ... 152
Trunk opener switch ... 151
Vehicle-to-vehicle distance button ... 262
VSC OFF switch ... 291
Window lock switch ... 191
Windshield wipers and washer switch ... 246

T

Tachometer ... 99
Tail lights ... 236
Light switch ... 236
Replacing light bulbs ... 487
Welcome light illumination control ... 128
Theft deterrent system
Alarm ... 90
Immobilizer system ... 88
Tire inflation pressure ... 470
Maintenance data ... 554
Tire inflation pressure display function ... 108
Warning light ... 503
Tire information ... 560
Glossary ... 566
Size ... 562
Tire identification number ... 561
Uniform Tire Quality Grading ... 564
Tire pressure warning system ... 461
Function ... 461
Initializing ... 461
Installing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters ... 461
Registering ID codes ... 463
Tire pressure warning reset switch ... 462
Warning light ... 503

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Tires 459
Chains 328
Checking 459
If you have a flat tire 513, 522
Inflation pressure 554
Information 560
Replacing 513
Rotating tires 460
Run-flat tires 522
Size 554
Snow tires 329
Spare tire 513
Tire inflation pressure display function 108
Tire pressure warning system 461
Warning light 503
Tools 514, 523
Top tether strap 72
Total load capacity 215
Towing
Dinghy towing 217
Emergency towing 492
Towing eyelet 495
Trailer towing 216
TRAC (Traction Control) 289
Traction battery (hybrid battery) 81
Traction motor (electric motor) 76
Trailer towing 216
Transmission 225
Driving mode select switch 285
Hybrid transmission 225
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P 526
S mode 226
Trip information 106
Trip meters 99
Trunk 151
Internal trunk release lever 153
Jam protection function 153
Luggage security system 152
Power trunk opener and closer 151
Smart access system with push-button start 129
Trunk closer switch 152
Trunk easy closer 153
Trunk features 377
Trunk grip 152
Trunk lid light 153
Trunk light 153
Trunk opener main switch 152
Trunk opener switch 151
Wireless remote control 143
Trunk light
Trunk lid light 153
Trunk light 153
Wattage 556
Turn signal lights 229
Replacing light bulbs 487
Turn signal lever 229

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

V

Vanity lights
Vanity lights 380
Wattage 556
Vanity mirrors 380
Variable Gear Ratio Steering (VGRS) 289
Function 289
VDIM (Vehicle Dynamics Integrated Management) 290
Vehicle data recordings 10
Vehicle Dynamics Integrated Management (VDIM) 290
Vehicle identification number 547
Vehicle proximity notification system 77
Vehicle Stability Control (VSC) 289
VGRS (Variable Gear Ratio Steering) 289
Function 289
VSC (Vehicle Stability Control) 289

W

Warning buzzers
Approach warning 266
Brake system 499
Downshifting 228
Key reminder 132
No-handed driving warning 280
Open door 502
Open moon roof 198
Pre-collision braking 297
Seat belt reminder 502
Warning lights 95
ABS 500
Brake hold operated indicator 501
Brake system 499, 501
Charging system 500
Electric power steering 500
Low fuel level 502
Malfunction indicator lamp 500
Master warning light 502
Open door 502
Parking brake indicator 501
Pre-collision system 501
Seat belt reminder light 502
Slip indicator 501
SRS 500
Tire pressure 503

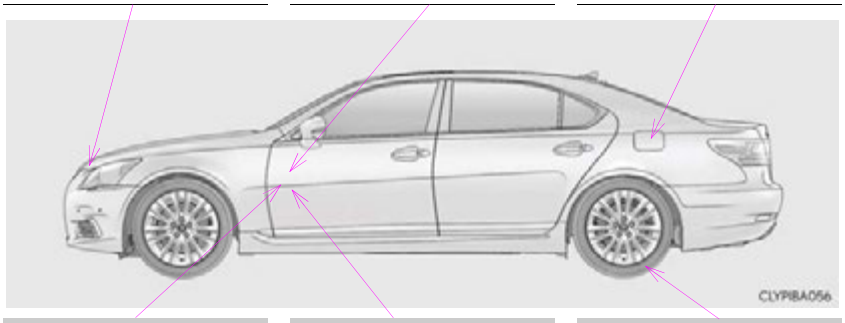
DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

Washer 246
Checking 454
Preparing and checking before winter 326
Switch 246
Washing and waxing 422
Weight
Cargo capacity 215
Load limits 215
Weight 546
Welcome light illumination control 128
Wheels 473
Replacing wheels 473
Size 554
Window glasses 191
Window lock switch 191
Windows 191
Power windows 191
Rear window defogger 362
Windshield wiper de-icer 363
Windshield wipers 246
Winter driving tips 326
Wireless remote control key 143
Locking/Unlocking 143
Replacing the battery 478

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

GAS STATION INFORMATION

Auxiliary catch lever	Trunk opener	Fuel filler door
P. 440	P. 151	P. 253



Hood lock release lever	Fuel filler door opener	Tire inflation pressure
P. 440	P. 253	P. 554

Fuel tank capacity (Reference)	22.2 gal. (84 L, 18.4 Imp. gal.)	
Fuel type	Premium unleaded gasoline only	P. 548, 557
Cold tire inflation pressure		P. 554
Engine oil capacity (Drain and refill – reference)		qt. (L, Imp. qt.)
	With filter	9.5 (9.0, 7.9)
	Without filter	8.9 (8.4, 7.4)
Engine oil type	"Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent Oil grade: ILSAC GF-5 multigrade engine oil Recommended viscosity: SAE 0W-20	P. 549

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Owner's Manual:
Publication No. OM50F12U
Part No. 01999-50F12
Printed in Japan 01-1509-00 Z
LS 600h L（北米U）

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS